THE RELIGIONS OF TIBET
THE RELIGIONS OF TIBET

GIUSEPPE TUCCI

Translated from the German and Italian by

GEOFFREY SAMUEL

ALLIED PUBLISHERS PRIVATE LIMITED
Bombay  New Delhi  Calcutta  Madras  Bangalore
Allied Publishers Private Limited
13/14 Asaf Ali Road, New Delhi 110002
15 J.N. Heredia Marg Ballard Estate, Bombay 400038
17 Chittaranjan Avenue, Calcutta 700072
751 Mount Road, Madras 600002
5th Main Road, Gandhinagar, Bangalore 560009

First published as Die Religionen Tibets in Die Religionen Tibets und der Mongolei by Giuseppe Tucci and Walther Heissig
This translation first published in 1980 by Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd
London, Boston and Henley
English translation © Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd 1980

Printed in Great Britain
CONTENTS

Preface vii

Note on transcription and pronunciation xii

1 The first diffusion of Buddhism in Tibet 1
   1 The beginnings 1
   2 Co-existence and conflict among the various tendencies at the time of the first introduction of Buddhism into Tibet 5
   3 Ordination of monks, foundation of monasteries, donations to monasteries 8
   4 The Indian and Chinese currents 12

2 The second diffusion of Buddhism 16
   1 The revival of Buddhism 16
   2 Rin chen bzung po and Atisa 20
   3 The foundation of the great monasteries 26

3 General characteristics of Lamaism 29
   1 Fundamentals 29
   2 The most important schools 33
   3 The conflicts between the schools and their significance for the political history of Tibet. The office of Dalai Lama 39
   4 The figure of the religious teacher (bla ma) 44

4 The doctrines of the most important schools 47
   1 Assumptions common to all schools 47
   2 The vehicle of the Mantra 50
   3 Investiture and consecrations 57
   4 The Tantric process of transcension: mental body, maya-body, body of transcendent consciousness 58
   5 Sems and light 63
At the beginning of 1958, when Dr G. M. Schröder asked me to write the volume on Tibetan religion for the collection edited by him, 'Die Religionen der Menschheit', which in its totality constitutes a remarkable body of material on the history of religion, I hesitated before I accepted. The writing of a book on the subject of Tibetan religion is not a task to be taken on lightly. The main reason for this is that we still know little about Tibetan religion in comparison with other religions; the vast literature which it has produced, and which illuminates its history, is still far from having been made fully accessible or edited, and is in any case so enormous that a single human life is not enough to master it. In addition there is a deep division between monastic Lamaism and religion as it is lived by the people; the former, too, is fragmented into many schools, while the latter shows numerous variations from place to place.

While I was writing it became progressively clearer to me that an account of Lamaism presupposed a presentation of its theoretical foundations; for these, as always in Buddhism, condition the actual religious experience, and give the individual schools their particular character. This however makes it necessary to refer continually to the theory of Indian Buddhism. On the other hand my task was precisely to uncover and ascertain what in Tibetan Buddhism had been created in the meeting between old forms of religious experience and new ideas and motives that was new and individual. A further difficulty, perhaps the greatest of all, has still to be mentioned; no agreement has yet been reached on the precise translation of the religious terminology, of the technical terms, that is, which are used in Tibetan religion and gnosis. One wavers between the two extremes of a comparatively literal rendition, as has mostly been used for Indian Buddhism (although there too there has been a similar lack of unanimity), and the recent fashion of adopting the vocabulary of the more modern philosophical schools of the West as a terminological basis for this area, which is so different in its nature. This latter procedure is certainly the more dangerous of the two, for it misrepresents or even
falsifies Tibetan modes of thought. I became convinced of this when I showed Tibetans who knew English well certain translations which had recently appeared of particular works or of commentaries on the doctrines they contained. The Tibetan scholars found it difficult to make any sense of these translations, since Buddhist thought was expressed in them in a mode other than that in which they were used to understanding it. Besides this, many Tibetan concepts and doctrines refer to interior and mystical experiences, and their transposition into rational concepts and expressions is extremely problematic. The corresponding Tibetan words are symbols, which can evoke living experiences which the word as such can only suggest but not define. We are faced here with an extremely difficult, almost impossible task: to coin equivalent technical terms for experiences which take place within the spiritual realm, and which can radically modify our psychic and spiritual reality. I have tried to translate Tibetan expressions in such a way as to avoid both of the extremes mentioned above, those of over-literalness and of arbitrariness, and have struggled throughout to render the Tibetan _termini technici_ with words of meaning close to that which the Tibetan masters appear to give to them. I am not sure that I have always succeeded, but I believe that I have done my best to make accessible to Western readers the complex speculative structure which constitutes the foundation of Tibetan religion. At the same time I recognize that in this field there are real limiting cases. To give an example: the word _sems_, a pillar of the Lamaist doctrinal edifice, is sometimes translated in English as ‘mind’, ‘mind-stuff’ and so on; in the German edition of this book it was rendered as _Geist_. All the same it is evident that the terms _Geist_ and _sems_ do not entirely coincide. The meaning of the term _sems_ will only become clearer to the reader when he has attained an overview of the whole region of signification which this word has, after acquainting himself with the entire contents of the book. For this reason I have, to avoid misunderstanding, almost always retained the Tibetan form _sems_, so as to lead the reader gradually to connect the word with the corresponding concept or range of concepts.

In the writing of this book I was able to call upon both my personal

---

* Some writers have used ‘spirit’ and related terms in English; thus W. Rahula renders the Sanskrit word _suśra_ (= _Tib. sems_) as _esprit_ in his translation of the _Abhidhammatanatpanna_, and in T. C. Dhomthog’s recent _The New Light English-Tibetan Dictionary_ the English word ‘spirit’ is translated by _sems_. (G.T.) ‘Spirit’ in English however (unlike _Geist_, and _esprit_ and _spirito_, used in the French and Italian translations) nowadays refers almost exclusively to the transcendent and external, and I have generally felt it less confusing to use ‘mind’ and ‘mental’. Wherever possible, however, the Tibetan form _itself_ is used. (G.B.S.)
experiences and a critical review which I had recently carried out of
the literature, both that which was known and which was previously
unfamiliar to me. The reader will find many of these texts in the
bibliography at the end of the work, which however makes no claim to
be comprehensive. I have only included those works which have
become familiar to me through constant usage. In the text references
are given only where it has appeared necessary to indicate the sources
and explanatory material concerned. Considering that my intention
was to give in this work an overview of the Tibetan religious world,
such indications had to be kept to a minimum, in other words primarily
to isolated facts and references to sources. Taken all in all my presenta-
tion may serve as a summary of past researches, and at the same
time as an anticipation of future, more conclusive studies; it is in short
an attempt at a bringing to account of the results of an involvement
with Tibetan Buddhism which has lasted many years.

What is said above will scarcely seem surprising if it is remembered
that we have not yet succeeded in completing a comprehensive and
convincing account of the Indian world of thought, and particularly
of the religious conceptions of India, although today the sources are
more easily accessible than in the past, and for many years now
accounts of the individual philosophical and religious schools have
constantly been appearing. I myself have attempted such a synthesis
in my Storia della filosofia indiana (Bari, 1957), although I did it more
with the aim of clarifying my own ideas in this field than to present
those of others.

In my work I have been greatly aided by the counsel, always freely
given, of Geshe (Lha ram pa) Jampel Sanghie, a scholar initiated into
all the doctrinal problems and details of the reformed school of Tsong
kha pa and of its offshoots, and also by the assistance of Professor
Namkhai Norbu, formerly a sprul sku of Gönchen monastery, who is
closely familiar with all the philosophical doctrines of the rNying ma pa
school, and also served as a pre-eminent source of information on the
folk traditions. Both these two Tibetan religious scholars have lived in
Rome for ten years as collaborators of the Istituto Italiano per il
Medio ed Estremo Oriente (IsMEO). Professor Norbu teaches Tibetan
language at the Istituto Universitario Oriental in Naples. He is also
responsible for the drawings which accompany the book, which were
prepared in a form suitable for publication by Mr Fiorentini of
IsMEO. I am deeply indebted to both gentlemen for this valuable
co-operation.

I owe much gratitude also to Dr Giovanna Vallauri Galluppi of
Rome, who during my absence of a year (in connection with the
archaeological excavations entrusted to me in the Orient) maintained
contact with Dr C. M. Schröder, assisted me with valuable advice,
and also helped untiringly with the correction of the proofs.

This English version includes certain modifications and additions made in the Italian translation. These include two summaries which clarify the meditative stages of the two processes which are open to the neophyte; (a) the gradual method of the Prajnaparamita, as systematized by Nagarjuna and his followers, and presented in the Abhisamsulyalamkara; and (b) the method of the Tantra (rgyud) which naturally starts off from the previous method, which forms an indispensable preliminary training, but is more complex, in particular in that it proposes experiencing in this very life the concatenation of the three phases of the path (lam) of salvation: (i) the initial phase, (ii) the path itself, (iii) the phase of the result or effect.

The English translation, as the most recent, has the advantage of some further additions or reconsiderations which I think should facilitate the reading of a book which is certainly not easy. Since Dr Samuel is a Tibetanist himself his work in several places has been not merely that of a translator but also of a knowledgeable advisor. Thus the arrangement of chapters and of some appendices has been altered from that in the other editions at his suggestion, with the intention of making the flow of the argument easier to follow. I am particularly grateful for his many suggestions and for the careful corrections of some errors which had escaped me, the worst corrector of proofs. Thus this English edition has the advantage of being the most readable. Naturally I am already thinking of adding some further chapters and of changing some sections if further editions are made; I certainly do not have the presumption to believe that the first version of a work can be perfect, but it may get there if it is chiselled and filed with revisions and modesty. In short I have no great dislike for being my own zhu chen, especially if in the course of the years I can avail myself of the good advice of a kalyanamitra.

During the preparation of the book I was continually aware of a difficulty which I was not in a position to deal with consistently; in describing Tibetan religion I sometimes use the present tense, sometimes the past. This inconsistency of verbal forms is brought about by the singular situation in which Tibet is placed today; it is hardly necessary to say that Tibet is today no longer the same country, from an economic, social and religious point of view, as before becoming an ‘autonomous region’ of the Chinese People’s Republic. Many things have been radically changed. Along with the conditions of life in general, religion too has undergone a violent upheaval. The lamas, like all the other Tibetans who fled to India and other countries, have been able to preserve their beliefs, but their new environment is not like that in which almost their entire previous existence took place. They have been forced to put down new roots in a completely different
milieu; but above all the natural links have been broken which until then had bound together men of the same thoughts and concepts, of the same heritage of religious fears and hopes. Tibetan Buddhism as it lives in the sacred scriptures and in ancient traditions—and with it the spiritual world in which these refugees have grown up and been educated—has found its last homeland, beyond all worldly change, in their souls. Their country of origin has meanwhile become the scene of profound upheavals, as a consequence of which much contained in the present pages may seem to belong to the past.

The present crisis of Tibet is not only political; it is also religious. A centuries-old total social structure has been overthrown, to give place to a completely different one. This is the reason for the 'duplicity' of my mode of expression, which now slips from past to present, now falls back from present into past. If I were required to renounce the ambiguity I would rather use the past tense exclusively; although the ideological and theoretical premises, thanks to their universality, remain the same, their echo in the soul is different today, and will be different again in the future. Along with it the basic religious situation will also alter more and more. Such transformations are taking place before our eyes also in all the other religions, progressively exposed to new ways of thinking and of conceiving; throughout the whole world their strength and their powers of resistance will be put to a hard test.

Giuseppe Tucci

Rome, August 1969—February 1978
NOTE ON TRANSCRIPTION
AND PRONUNCIATION

In the text diacritical marks on Sanskrit words have been omitted. They can be found in the index. Tibetan words are transliterated, following the Tibetan spelling, according to the Wylie system (T. V. Wylie, 1959, ‘A standard system of Tibetan transcription’, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, vol.22, pp.261-7). This system uses no diacritical marks, so the forms in the text are complete. (Some letters only used in words borrowed from Sanskrit form an exception; the only one of these letters to occur at all frequently here is ṃ, in pha chen and maṇi.) It should be noted that ' is a letter in the Wylie transcription, and that g'y (as in g'yag) and gy (as in rgyal) are two distinct combinations of Tibetan consonants. The complete alphabet is as follows: k kh g ng c ch j ny t th d n p ph b m ts tsh dz w zh z' y r l sh s h a.

The clusters of initial consonants in Tibetan words are generally much simplified in actual pronunciation. bKa' brgyud pa becomes Kagyüpa or Kajüpa; khri 'rong lde'u brtson is pronounced as Trisong Detsen. The rules governing such transformations are quite regular, though they vary somewhat between dialects. They are, however, too complicated to be summarized here. A brief account may be found in Anagarika Govinda’s Foundations of Tibetan Mysticism (pp.286-92 of the paperback edition, London, 1969). Approximate pronunciations for proper names and for the main technical terms used in this book are given in the index (following the system used in R. A. Stein’s Tibetan Civilization, London, 1972).

Readers who do not know the Tibetan language should perhaps be warned also that it employs a large number of short particles (e.g. kyi, kyis, gi, pa, po, du) which are frequently omitted in literary compounds and abbreviations. Thus mam par shes pa (= Skt. vijnana) can be reduced to mam shes, and shes rab kyi pha rol tu phyin pa (Skt. Prajnaparamita) can become shes rab phar phyin, or be abbreviated even further to sher phyin. Several terms occur in the text in both extended and abbreviated forms.

G.B.S.

xii
ONE

THE FIRST DIFFUSION OF
BUDDHISM IN TIBET

1. The beginnings

The dates of the first penetration of Buddhism into Tibet, and of the commencement of large-scale conversion, have already been discussed many times, as have the accompanying events. Of course there is no problem for the Tibetans themselves. For them only the traditional account is valid, and it is believed as an act of faith. According to this traditional account, Buddhism was introduced into Tibet during the lifetime of Srong btsan sgam po, who died in 649, and is held by all schools to be the founder of the Tibetan royal dynasty. Occasional voices, admittedly, go back in time beyond this legend. With the aim of giving their native country a stronger claim to religious pre-eminence, they assert that there was a first encounter with the Buddhist teachings during the time of Lha tho tho ri, a distant ancestor of Srong btsan sgam po. At that period Buddhist scriptures and symbols fell from the sky for the first time. Other commentators, wishing to give a rational foundation to the legend, point to the arrival of certain religious teachers from Central Asia and from India at that time. In any case, the adoption and first diffusion of Buddhism is attributed to Srong btsan sgam po.¹ His conversion was said to result from the influence of his two wives, a Nepalese princess and a Chinese princess. While there are doubts, in my opinion well-founded,² concerning the first marriage, the second marriage is confirmed by the chronicles. Whatever the truth may have been, the Chinese wife (rgya bza) was said to have brought with her the image of Sakyamuni known as the Jo bo and to have installed it in the temple of Ra mo che³ which she founded. To the Nepalese wife, on the other hand, is attributed the merit of having brought in her dowry the image of Mi bskyod rdo rje and of having erected the temple of 'Phrol snang.

Certainly one cannot deny the possibility of an earlier, sporadic penetration of Buddhist teachings into Tibet by various routes, from Central Asia, from China or from Nepal, before the reign of Srong btsan sgam po. However, the question of the 'prehistory' of Tibetan Buddhism
needs to be understood correctly. The orthodox tradition cannot be taken as literally true. There can be no question of a conversion of King Srong btsan sgam po, or of an extensive diffusion of the faith carried out by him. Even the edicts of the later kings Khri srong lde brtsan and Khri lde srong btsan, as preserved in the history of dPa’o gtsug lag (provided always that we are not dealing here with later interpolations), speak of King Srong btsan sgam po only in very obscure terms. They confine themselves to attributing to him, in the first edict, the foundation of the temple of ‘Phrul snang, without mentioning the Nepalese princess, while the Chinese princess is mentioned as founding the Ra mo che temple. The second edict ascribes to Srong btsan sgam po the second temple of Pe har in Ra sa.4 Certainly, in view of the links between Tibet and China, the existence of cult centres on a small scale is perhaps already possible at that time. The Tibetans would have tolerated them with that respect, mixed with fear of invisible, mysterious powers of whatever kind they might be, which is natural to them. However, the chronicles do not appear to offer proof of a real conversion of King Srong btsan sgam po to Buddhism, or even of his profession of faith in it or active support for it, such as the orthodox tradition maintains. Events of this kind first happen in the time of Khri srong lde brtsan (756-97?), well after the period of Srong btsan sgam po, and culminate in the founding of the monastery of bSam yas.

At the same time, one can hardly imagine that king Khri srong lde brtsan’s pro-Buddhist policy was the result of a spur-of-the-moment decision. It must have been the fruit of a gradual process of maturation. Despite the uncertain and contradictory character of our sources, the assumption of earlier occasional infiltrations of Buddhist elements into Tibet is an obvious one to make. We are perhaps concerned here more with Chinese and Central Asian influences than with those from India. Such influences must have become steadily stronger after the arrival of Princess Wen-ch’eng (Tibetan Kong chu, Kong jo). The fact also cannot be ignored that Khri srong lde brtsan was not the first Tibetan king to show an interest in Buddhism. His father, King Khri lde gtsug brtsan (704-55), had already made efforts in this direction, as Khri lde srong brtsan’s edict at Karchung reports, but he was frustrated through the forceful and decisive opposition of some ministers. The hostility of these ministers towards Buddhism persisted during the time of Khri lde gtsug brtsan. In addition, even after the acceptance of Buddhism, there are signs of indecision between the Chinese and Indian traditions. This indecision can only be explained on the assumption that two currents of thought had already come into conflict, one proposing adherence to China and the other inclining towards Indian Buddhism. Two personalities played an outstanding role at this point in time; gSal snang of sBa, and a Chinese, called Sang
shi in the chronicles, who according to the tradition had been a playing-companion of the young Khri shrong lde btsan. In this case too we have in the sources both the echo of real events and, simultaneously, a fantastic overgrowth of elements from the cycles of legends which later grew up about these characters. These legends originated in particular families or at particular religious centres, with the aim of authenticating their various interests or claims, or of glorifying personalities connected with them. Cycles of this type include that concerning sBa gSal snang (which stands at the centre of a famous work, the first part of the sBa bzhan⁶), and the cycles of Sang shi, Padmasambhava and Vairocana. Fragments and reworkings of this literary genre are preserved in later writings; they comprise a mixture of historical and religious elements, of folk history and family chronicles. All the same this literature gives us an idea of the extremely complex situation in Tibet at that period, and of the opposing forces which were at work.

Given these political and cultural relations with China, some social strata were disposed to a close collaboration with Chinese culture. Thus there came about the adoption of some characteristic motives from Chinese Buddhist hagiography. For example, the golden statue of Sakyamuni brought to Tibet in the dowry of Srong btsan sgam po’s Chinese wife recalls the golden statue which according to some Chinese traditions was the first sign of Buddhism in China. Again, the episode concerning the monk Huwa shang, who left behind one of his shoes when forced to leave Lhasa by anti-Buddhist ministers, reminds one of the shoe which was found in the empty tomb of Bodhidharma. Another factor which needs to be taken into consideration is the rivalry which existed between the families who had the duty of supplying from among their numbers the ministers (ZHANG, ZHANG BLON, BLON CHEN, BLON; ZHANG are the ministers belonging to families from which the kings customarily chose their wives, such as Tshes srong, sNa nam, mChims, ’Bro). These families were to have a decisive role throughout the whole of the dynastic period of Tibetan history, as the effective directors of policy. The kings themselves possessed relatively limited authority. Their office was surrounded by religious prestige, but in practice the priestly class of Bon, and the aristocracy, hindered their exercise of sovereignty. The great families from which the BLON CHEN were descended, and the families of the queen mother’s clan (often the family of the queen and that of the BLON CHEN were one and the same), made their influence felt in all directions. All this harmed the king’s authority critically. Srong btsan sgam po’s father and grandfather had broken with this tradition, but the leading families had not however given up their privileges. The long-lasting and deep opposition between the king and his followers on the one side, and his opponents
on the other, divided Tibet into two parts, one faithful to the king and the court, and the other preoccupied with keeping their personal privileges. One or another of these great alliances alternated in controlling the country.

The inner struggles can be deduced from the large number of kings and princes assassinated by their own mothers or step-mothers. Khri srong lde brtsan himself expressed his inclination to Buddhism from an early age, which doubtless indicates that he was supported by a powerful group working in this direction, that of the Mang and the 'Bal. The first assault by this pro-Buddhist party was unsuccessful. The opposing group, headed by Ma zhang Khrom pa skyes, temporarily seized the upper hand. The families favouring the adoption of Buddhism then resorted to violence to secure the success of their policy, and the leaders of the opposing party were exiled or removed (Ma zhang Khrom pa skyes was murdered). Even this, however, did not bring victory. Tibet was struck by grave natural disasters, which one of the aristocratic factions, incited by the Bon po, used for its own purposes. The Bon po saw their privileges threatened, and hoped to win all with the aid of the group of nobles who supported them. Thus they sought to make the introduction of the new religion responsible for all the misfortunes. The renowned Indian religious teacher Santaraksita, who had just arrived in Tibet, had to leave the country, and it was several years before he could return again, and before the king was able to publish his edict and the foundation of the monastery of bSam yas could take place (775). We possess only scanty documentary reports and brief descriptions of all these events, although there are numerous legendary accounts from later periods, adhering more or less closely to the real events. It is clear anyway that the conflict between the opposing groups of forces must have been very violent. Other powers were certainly at work in addition to the two parties in direct contest. China had watched the rise of Tibetan power with anxiety, seeing in it a threat to her own expansion into Central Asia. She could scarcely remain indifferent to the events in Tibet. China sent a series of missionaries to Tibet, who were probably not exclusively concerned with matters of religion. So it came about that Tibet in the second half of the seventh century, after having conquered extensive territories in Central Asia, began to succumb more and more to the enchantment of Chinese culture. Members of the Tibetan aristocracy went to China to study, and there became acquainted with new, more sophisticated ways of living, with more appropriate administrative techniques and political institutions, and with a maturity of thought which had previously been inaccessible to them. Thus there took place in Tibet at this time a phenomenon analogous to what was happening simultaneously in Japan.
2 Co-existence and conflict among the various tendencies at the time of the first introduction of Buddhism into Tibet

To the complexity of the political background described above must be added far-reaching conflicts among the supporters of Buddhism themselves. They agreed in demanding official recognition for the Buddhist teachings, but not on the form of Buddhism which was to be adopted. From the very beginning two tendencies were clear, one favouring Indian Buddhism, the other Chinese. We will first give an overview of the historical events, and then present the ideas which lay beneath them.

*gsal snang* of *sBa* (it may be presumed that this is the same person who in the following period adopted the religious name *Ye shes dbang po*) went to India and Nepal, and arranged for an invitation to be issued to Santarakṣita. *Sang shi* on the other hand, who was the author of translations from the Chinese, was sent to China (on one occasion in company with *gsal snang*, though this was after the first arrival of Santarakṣita). Santarakṣita had no success at first and therefore advised that Padmasambhava should be sent for as the only person who would be able to overcome the demons hostile to Buddhism.

The details given seem to indicate the existence of two opposed groups, each wishing to gain pre-eminence for its own teachings. In this contest even suicide and murders carried out for religious motives were not unusual.9 China supported her official missionary, the *Huashang*, who attempted to introduce the school of Ch’an,10 not without a degree of success according to some reports. Santarakṣita’s second visit, and the coming of Padmasambhava, seem to show that success was not denied to the pro-Indian group either (the group of *Ye shes dbang po*). Admittedly the sources disagree concerning both the mission attributed to Padmasambhava and his stay in Tibet. If we follow some accounts, he would seem to have stayed in Tibet until the consecration of the monastery of *bsam yas*, while according to others he would have left the country before this, after overcoming the demons. According to this latter version the building of the monastery of *bsam yas* was supervised by Santarakṣita, and after his death he was replaced as abbot by *gsal snang* (*Ye shes dbang po*). *Ye shes dbang po* occupied this post, however, for only a short time, and was succeeded by *dPal dbyangs*.11

*Ye shes dbang po* had evidently gone too far in his demands. He had claimed for the abbot of *bsam yas*, and so, indirectly, for the religious community, a position superior not only to that of the aristocracy but also to that of the ministers. As the advocate of the Indian school, he aroused the opposition of the pro-Chinese group, who favoured Ch’an. The opposition against *Ye shes dbang po* was again led by a represen-
tative of the aristocracy, *Myang Ting nge 'dzin*. It can be presumed that he was moved to act not only by the resentment which he shared with other high dignitaries at the pretensions of the religious leader, but also by his inclination to the Ch'an sect. There were probably connections between the revolt of *Myang Ting nge 'dzin*, the more or less forcible banishment of *Ye shes dbang po*, the naming of *dPal dbyangs* in *Ye shes dbang po*’s place, and the sudden rise to prominence of the *Hwa shang* Mahayana, who defended the Ch'an tradition and challenged the school of Santarakṣita to battle. Nor can one neglect the fact that *Myang Ting nge 'dzin*, whom King *Khri srong lde brtsan* had chosen as the guardian of *Khri lde srong brtsan*, continued for a long time after to exercise a considerable influence on the political and religious affairs of Tibet, and that the *rDzogs chen* school regard him as one of their patriarchs.

*Ye shes dbang po* fought back, giving a response which suggests too the general arousal of tempers. He followed the counsel which Santarakṣita had given him before his death, and called Kamalasila from India. However, even the subsequent council at *bSam yas* (792–4), in which according to the Tibetan sources the *Hwa shang* was defeated, could not bring the strife to an end. It seems that Kamalasila was murdered. Vairocana, a follower of Padmasambhava, whose teachings were related to those of the Indian Siddha schools, was banished. These events once more show the turbulent history of the beginnings of Buddhism in Tibet. It was not a question of a conversion to a new doctrine brought about by purely spiritual factors. Everywhere there were also political motives involved, which had also economic implications, in view of the donations to the monasteries. Such conflicts between particular material interests went hand in hand with conflicts of a doctrinal nature. In short, the beginnings of Tibetan Buddhism did not follow the straight-line path which the orthodox tradition describes. Only a systematic examination of the history and origins of the *rDzogs chen* will enable a judgment to be made upon how far the tradition regarding these events must be subject to revision.

It can also be inferred from the sources that Padmasambhava played a smaller role than that ascribed to him by later tradition. As already mentioned, he had little or no part in the construction of *bSam yas* according to some sources. Other reports admittedly maintain that he was involved in the building of this monastery, but they speak of him variously as staying in Tibet for some months or for many years. They agree only in connecting his departure with threats or attacks against him. In short, everything in the tradition concerning Padmasambhava seems contradictory or obscure. A legendary halo soon grew up about his personality as well, a cycle of stories which
came to include also King Khri srong lde brtson and the introduction of Buddhism into Tibet in general. Some parts of this cycle were added only much later, perhaps in the fourteenth century, together with embellishments, chants of praise and so on. All this provided the basis for well-known works such as the *Pad ma thang yig*, bKa’ thang sde lnga and other gter ma (cf. p. 38).

It was only after the second diffusion of the Buddhist law that the figure of Padmasambhava the miracle-worker grew to gigantic proportions, and that he was spoken about as if he was a second Buddha, along with extravagant exaggerations of all kinds. This provoked the attacks of the dGe lugs pa sect. In the earlier literature the references to him, as mentioned above, are extremely modest. The *sBa bzhad* says of Padmasambhava that he was recommended by Santarakṣita as a great exorcist who would be able to overcome the local demonic opponents of Buddhism. These details attest that even then, in the Tibetan environment, suppositions and elements could crystallize about his person which were suitable for the foundations of an epic literary cycle on themes of religion and exorcism.

However, that may be, Tibet opened its doors to new forms of thought and life. Behind this there stood significant missionary activity from both India and China, and also the Tibetan conquests in Central Asia, which led to Tibetans living together with peoples of a considerable level of culture. As a result a steady expansion of Buddhism began to take place. Of course this process must be understood correctly. There can be no question here of an all-embracing penetration which encompassed the entire population. Rural and nomadic groups are, as is well-known, the most resistant and conservative in matters of religion. The missionaries who came from India, China and Central Asia (including the Tantric masters) were for the most part highly educated men, thinkers, dialecticians, grammarians.

It could be objected that we only know these elements, since the literary sources say nothing about what was happening in the lower levels of the population. There is no doubt that the original interest in Buddhism lay with the upper, the more educated classes, both for the reasons mentioned, and in view of the difficulty of an adequate and generally accessible understanding of the doctrines of Buddhism. The rest of the population remained faithful to their rites of conjuration, their ceremonies and their exorcists. The impetus for the whole movement came from above, and the re-education due to the new religion brought about a significant raising of the cultural level of the new converts.

The scriptures introduced in the early days can be classified into two groups. In the first there are the texts translated by specially chosen and appointed persons (*lotsava*), working in collaboration with
Chinese, Indians and Central Asians, and which were intended for the education of the monks after the foundation of the various religious communities. Second, there were general compendia intended for the conversion of the public at large, such as the *dGe bu’i mdo*, *rDo rje good pa*, *Sa lu’i ljang pa*, books which it seems introduced by *Sang shi*, and other short summaries of the teachings similar to those cited in the edicts of *Khru srong lde brtsan*. According to these edicts, in the version cited in No.85 (ja, pp.108b, 110a), it appears that Buddhism at the time of its first diffusion was restricted to the essential doctrines: veneration of the Buddha, of Bodhisattvas, Pratyekabuddhas and Sravakas; rebirth in the hells or into unfavourable destinies for those who do not honour the Three Jewels (the Buddha, his Law, the monastic community); the doctrine of karma; the doctrine of the twofold accumulation of merit (virtue and knowledge); the practice of the ten moral commandments; the Four Truths; the law of moral causation (*pratityasamutpada*); special emphasis on the teachings of Nagarjuna. A true picture of the Buddhist literature accessible to the Tibetan community can be drawn from the catalogues of the royal libraries—which admittedly date from various times and, it must be accepted, are not free from later alterations. They include even works on logic. These catalogues also reveal a gradual decrease of works translated from the Chinese.

3 Ordination of monks, foundation of monasteries, donations to monasteries

Within Indian Mahayana Buddhism speculative thought and ritual had already become indissolubly linked, and thus it came about that the ritual side of Mahayana Buddhism began to prevail in Tibet, thanks also to the tendencies to magic already present within Indian ritual. In a society already very receptive to such things, this led to the wide diffusion of writings of an exorcistic nature, although according to one source (included in No.85, ja, p.105) there was at the beginning a tendency to translate Chinese works of a different kind, and to show some mistrust towards the Tantras, especially those whose liturgy prescribed sexual acts and the use of alcoholic drinks.

The religious orders now began to be introduced, and, perhaps in 779, the first monastic ordinations were celebrated. This made it necessary to form religious communities on a large scale, and to found monasteries as cult centres, schools of religious education, and centres for the translation of the Buddhist works which were to be made available to the new adepts. These monasteries represented a new factor in the political structure of Tibet. Until then the political
organization of the country had been primarily military in character. The state was responsible for defence and offensive action, and all subjects were liable without exception for taxation, for military service and for labour obligations, in accordance with their various qualifications and abilities. There now arose, however, an entirely new institution, in the form of the monastery, which developed outside the state structure. It was provided with special donations by the king.

King Khri srong lde brtsan made 150 families, along with their estates and property, responsible for supporting the temple of bSam yas and the performance of the prescribed rituals. A further hundred families were responsible for the maintenance of the monastery as such. The produce of the estates and pastoral land had to provide everything necessary: 75 measures (khal) of barley annually (according to other sources monthly) for the abbot, who had also to receive 1,500 ounces of butter, a horse, paper, ink and salt. The monks devoted to meditation, the sgom chen, were entitled to 55 measures of barley and 800 ounces of butter, the Indian masters (acarya) living in the monastery to 55 measures of rice and 100 measures of butter, those not obliged to live permanently in the monastery (bandhya) to 800 measures of barley, and to paper and ink, the pupils to 25 measures of barley and pieces of cloth.22

Thus it can be seen that the monastery formed a self-governing economic unit. Its spiritual organization also became steadily clearer. At its head stood the chos ring lugs,23 representative and guardian of the Buddha’s Law, who was chosen by the king and exercised the function of abbot (mkhan po). He was given quite substantial powers. The creation of these spiritual dignitaries provoked ever more bitter conflicts between the court, which immoderately favoured the religious community now coming into being, and the traditional political organization.

The same sources report on a branch establishment of the monastery of bSam yas. This was mChims phug,24 ‘the cave of mChims’, which was reserved for the sgom chen, the followers of the ascetic schools. A college and seminary (chos grwa) was also formed to educate the newly converted further and to introduce them to the study of the sacred texts. Also associated with the monastic community were monks and ascetics without special duties (rang ga ma).

The Pad ma thang yig (No.3) demonstrates the co-existence of monasticism and Tantric tendencies: Different rules applied to the followers of the two streams. The non-Tantric monks had to be vegetarians, to live in the monastery, to abstain from alcoholic drinks and to follow the rites prescribed in the Sutras.25 The others did not have to observe these precepts; their ceremonial was centred about the mandala; they lived in the meditation-cells or sgrub khang. The
precept of chastity applied to both groups of monks.26

Numerous documents confirm in detail the growth of a new juridical person, the monastery, which possessed estates and moveable goods. In addition it possessed a number of servants of the religious community, lha 'bangs (called later, and up to our own day, lha bran); these are mentioned not as individual persons but as heads of families (khyim pa). As a result we can no longer establish the exact number of persons dependent upon the monastery.

These particulars emerge clearly from the documents found in Turkestan.27 In Central Asia at the time of Tibetan domination the monasteries possessed property and servants, they carried out business transactions, and so on. Particularly noticeable for their activity are the bandhe (called bandhya in the charters), monks not directly linked to a monastery, forerunners of the later wandering lamas of the rNying ma pa sect.

The example set by the king must have been extensively imitated. The principle of virtuous action, continually inculcated in the sacred writings, places the virtue of generosity, of munificence, in the foreground as the first of the perfections (phar phyin, Skt. paramita). Practised with understanding and piety, it is said to lead gradually to the level of Bodhisattva, or to entry into one of the paradises. It promotes and reinforces the positive factors in the process of maturation of karma. The figure of the donor (sbyin bstag, Skt. danapati) acquires a more and more definite outline in Tibet too. Donations to the Samgha, the Community; the erection of consecrated buildings; contributions to each of the three receptacles (sten) or supports of the sacred (sku, gsung, thugs = body, speech, mind) in the form of donations of images, copies of books, and temples—all these bring about an accumulation of merit indispensable for the attainment of deliverance. Deliverance is the result of two inseparable factors; the method used, the practice (thabs, Skt. upaya) and 'higher cognition' (shes rab, Skt. prajna). The attainment of Buddhahood is the most difficult of all; less hard to attain is the state of Bodhisattva, or of exaltation into a paradise.

The means to attain these latter aims (to be discussed later in more detail) represent the easier way, a way of gradual purification and preparation for that radiant clarity which shines out during the transition from the temporal plane to the timeless plane of nirvana. The means (thabs) is the practice of the six perfections, of which generosity is the first. It is not the sublime sacrifices of the Buddha which are in question here, such as when in his past lives he was Prince Visvantara (the subject of a sacred drama of Indian origin which regularly moves spectators to tears in Tibet) or Ksantivadin. It is rather a matter of generosity towards the Buddhist community, a practice more easily accessible to ordinary men. When the Tibetan
makes a donation, his generosity represents an easy way of acquiring merits.

When the followers of the Chinese Ch'an school also began to spread in Tibet and to raise their influential voice in the person of the several Hwa shang, the reaction of the Indian religious teachers working in Tibet, and of their followers, was inspired not only by doctrinal reasons but also by practical considerations. If Enlightenment could be brought about through a sudden, momentaneous ictus, if it could be born from a sudden act of deliverance in which the Buddha-nature of each individual was revealed, then practice (thabs) lost its value. The world, and everything achieved in the world, including those acts intended to bring about a gradual accumulation of merit, became of no significance. Such an attitude had serious consequences; one could arrive from these premises at an individualistic position which threatened the existence of the Samgha at the root (though in time the followers of Ch'an organized themselves in monasteries too, so as to derive a prosperous revenue from the generosity of those sympathizing with them and their path). In any case the monastic rules ('dul ba, Skt. vinaya) first reached Tibet only at a time when many of these precepts were becoming meaningless in India itself. For example, the rule of monastic poverty (renunciation of material possessions) had already lost its incontestable validity. The growth of the monastic institution led to contact with the world becoming ever closer; the monastery became, as a result of the donations it received, an economic entity which could supervise its property adequately and guard its own interests.

It is forbidden for the monk of the Small Vehicle to possess gold or silver, but for the monk who is a Bodhisattva (byang chub sems dpa'), that is who has renounced nirvana, it is no sin, for he is striving for the good of his fellow men. (No. 77, 4a.)

Tibet had at the beginning an economy closed in on itself, hunting, pastoralism and agriculture, which could develop only slowly through a system of irrigation which was perfected with difficulty. The conquests in Central Asia, and the wars against China, extended not only the political and cultural horizons, but also the economic horizon. The penetration of Tibet into Central Asia, which owed its prosperity principally to trade, awoke new economic interests and brought about new social orientations.

The monastery did not only own property; it was also involved in trade. The bandhe occupied themselves with business and commercial relations.28 Beginning with the foundation of the monastery of bSam yas, and continuing during the reign of King Ral pa can, a steady growth of donations can be seen; the number and wealth of the
monasteries constantly increased. Thus there grew up within Tibetan society a new power, which opposed the old feudal families ever more strongly. The persecution of the Buddhist community which was unleashed by King Glang dar ma (838-42) arose not merely from religious motives. Just as in China, there were many important interests at play here. The attitude of Glang dar ma was doubtless in part formed by the concern he must have felt at the growing economic power of the monasteries, at their privileges and their arrogance. The steady extension of the religious community brought the existence of the state into serious danger. In addition there was the monasteries’ freedom from taxation, the continual increase of their property through the assignment to them of estates and pastures, and the growing proportion of the population working for them in agriculture or as herdsmen, and therefore exempted from military obligation and compulsory labour. Also, donations did not only go towards the building of a temple; in addition they had to support the monastic community belonging to the temple, so as to secure for all time the performance of the ceremonies directed by the donor or testator in accordance with his will. This development deprived the state of considerable resources in both men and revenue, and this too at precisely the time when the threat from China was steadily growing as the Tibetans lost their Central Asian territories. The story of Glang dar ma’s opposition to Buddhism, which the orthodox tradition explains as the result of a demon having taken possession of the king, thus had a very real political and economic foundation.

4 The Indian and Chinese currents

The Indians who came to the Land of Snow did not all belong to the same school, and they did not all teach the same things. There were already profound differences between Santaraksita and Padmasambhava. The former was a great dialectician, though certainly as was appropriate for every Mahayana follower he was experienced in Tantric practice, if not to such a degree as to be a match for an exorcist. Padmasambhava was in the first place an exorcist, and after him other followers of the Siddha tradition also came to Tibet. The school of the Siddha, the ‘Perfected Ones’, was then at its apogee in India; the miraculous powers its followers boasted brought them disciples in Tibet too. The difference between the Siddha tradition and the Ch’ an school lay not so much in their respective doctrinal positions as in the characteristic emphasis placed by the Siddha on the practices of yoga and magic. There were no insurmountable contradictions between their theoretical assumptions. Santaraksita
and Kamalasila, on the other hand, began from doctrines as fundamentally opposed to those of the Siddha as they were to the teachings of Ch’an.

The decisive difference here lay in the fact that Santaraksita considered the achievement of Buddhahood to be the end-result of a long drawn-out process, which necessarily went through different stages before the conclusion was reached, while the Chinese school of Hwa shang preached the uselessness of ‘means’, and therefore of actions such as donations and so on, which are obligatory for the school founded upon the Prajnaparamita teachings (of which more will be said later).

Some Mahayana schools had affirmed that the Buddha and all living beings were identical in essence. Our essence, they held, is luminous spirit, defiled by transitory impurities. These impurities, which have arisen from a primeval impurity existing ab initio (comparable to the avidya of the Saivite schools), represent an original, congenital ignorance which increases further through our successive lives. If, then, in the depths of our being, this light of consciousness, which is identical to absolute being, shines, what need is there (the school of the Hwa shang asks) for such an enormous expenditure of effort? If our nature is pure in essence, then it will be defiled by any concept, good or bad. A white cloud will obscure the sun as much as a black one. Thus progressive purification is unnecessary; the infinitely long career of the Bodhisattva can be dispensed with. A spontaneous, direct awareness of our essential purity, of the light which we are, is enough. A re-cognition, an anagnosia, of our innermost being will suffice to eradicate all that is not luminous, all deception, ignorance and error. This overturning of the planes of existence does not result from the performance of any routine. It is rather the gift of an instantaneous flash of insight.

These are the principal characteristics of the two points of view, those of Kamalasila and of the Hwa shang, which clashed during the Council of bSam yas, called by King Khri srong lde brtsan in order to decide which of these points of view, the Chinese or the Indian, was correct.

It is of course scarcely to be supposed that the king and his ministers were able to understand the subtleties of these speculations in detail. At that time few Tibetans indeed would have been able to grasp the nuances of these doctrinal positions. According to the Chinese tradition, the king would seem to have decided in favour of the Chinese. However, there are contradictions between the reports given in Tibetan and Chinese sources. We are led to distrust the Tibetan tradition more than the Chinese since the Tibetan reports originate from a relatively recent period, and were evidently first compiled when Buddhism in Tibet had already taken on the form it
was to preserve in its essentials to the present day. In addition, Khri srong lde brtsan’s declaration that the teachings of Nagarjuna were to be followed is not enough to characterize his attitude unambiguously. Nagarjuna’s ideas form a cornerstone of the Mahayana edifice, and no explicit inference can therefore be drawn from this declaration of the king.

From the time ofRal pa can (Khri gtsug lde brtsan, 815-38) onwards a significant decrease in the followers of Ch’an can be detected. In the catalogues of books in the royal libraries, books on Ch’an become ever rarer. The Indian school has visibly gained the upper hand; in this the influx of new teachers must also have helped. This does not mean however that the defenders of the Ch’an school have vanished completely.22 In addition to the religious teachers living both in the houses of the translators and in the monasteries, there had also come to Tibet representatives of the Siddha school, which had, as already mentioned, points of contact with Ch’an, at least at the level of theory.23 The rapid way of salvation ascribed to the Siddha, accompanied with miracles, and not far distant from magic, must have exerted a significant attraction upon less educated people and the broad masses of the populace. In short, it seems that Tibetan Buddhism, which was certainly far from homogeneous from its outset, already by the time of King Glang dar ma carried within it the seeds which in the further course of history would produce the profusion of doctrines later to be found.

Within the Jo nang pa and rDzogs chen sects a significant part of the heritage of the Hua shang’s ideas, combined with those of the Siddha, was able to come to maturity, be consolidated, and then be transmitted on in further adaptations.

Myang Ting nge ‘dzin, who has already been mentioned, was counted as one of the patriarchs of this movement24 and is recognized by rNying ma pa monks to this day as one of their religious teachers. The rNying ma pa consider King Khri srong lde brtsan to be one of their protectors and patrons. Some books (gter ma) of this school are composed in the form of responses which Padmasambhava gave to the questions of King Khri srong lde brtsan on the occasion of a great ceremony at bSam yas.

The close relationship which existed between the rDzogs chen sect and the teachings of the Ch’an school is confirmed by a significant fragment preserved in the bKa’ thang sde lnga (No.110). Among the several Ch’an teachers here mentioned, some are also known from the Tun-Huang documents.25 Hua shang is given as the seventh patriarch of the school, the first being Bodhidharma. This document, like the Chinese sources, has the disputation of bSam yas result in the victory of the Hua shang. The rNying ma pa also seem to have continued certain
aspects of the Ch’an teachings in their doctrines, thanks to one of the first Tibetan monks to be ordained (sad mi), Nam mkha’ snying po from gNub, who is known to have been a Ch’an teacher.

One must guard against oversimplifying forms of religious experience and doctrinal statements. They do not develop in straight lines, least of all in times of considerable social upheaval, and of contacts with other cultures on many levels. The Buddhism entering Tibet came not only from India (by which is to be understood not only India proper, but also its border regions Nepal and Kashmir) but also from present-day Afghanistan and Gilgit, from the cities along the caravan routes of Central Asia (then known as the Silk Routes), and from China. Buddhism has never refused to accept, rework and transform the ideas of other peoples. In the territories bordering on Tibet there existed numerous religious forms in a picturesque juxtaposition which favoured exchange and reciprocal borrowings. The Chinese translators of Nestorian and Manichaean texts borrowed technical expressions from Taoist and Buddhist terminology, and indeed they borrowed more than just terminology. Vajrayana (gnostic) Buddhism developed hand in hand with Saivism. It is probable that in these ways, through the mediation of Buddhists influenced by other streams of thought, or for that matter directly, ideas foreign to Buddhism could be introduced within it, and gradually be merged into a developing doctrinal structure.

In any case Buddhism must have already, from its first entry into Tibet, undergone much modification and weakening. It cannot be denied that the local cults and beliefs persisted to a large degree, and that there were powerful centres of Bon resistance throughout the country.

Equally, it is certain that the Buddhist communities were forced to adopt some of the ancient rituals, which were indigenous and deep-rooted, and therefore ineradicable; even if these were furnished with new forms, in a similar way to the old gods of the country who were incorporated into the Buddhist Olympus after their conversion by Padmasambhava (cf. p.164). Similarly Khri srong lde brtsan’s inscription mentions g.yung drung, the svastika of Bon, and gnam chos, the law of heaven, characteristic concepts of the Bon religion. Local demons came to be accepted as Buddhist divinities who acted as avengers of broken vows. In the peace treaties too, for example in that between Ral pa can and China, the rituals which accompanied the concluding of the treaty and guaranteed its endurance were performed with animal sacrifices, and in an unmistakable context of Bon.
THE SECOND DIFFUSION OF BUDDHISM

1. The revival of Buddhism

The persecution carried out by Glang dar ma, who died in 842, dealt a devastating blow to the Buddhist community, which not only lost the protection of the court, but was also deprived of all its property. Its estates were confiscated and its possessions seized. The Buddhist religion was outlawed, and its entire organization shattered. With Glang dar ma's death the political unity of Tibet began to crumble; an era of decay and dissolution commenced. The state of anarchy lasted for two centuries, and led to Tibet being split up into a number of little states. The intellectual contacts with India were broken off. Even the royal tombs were desecrated.

Nevertheless, the destruction of the organization of the Buddhist community did not mean the end of Buddhism as such. Certainly Buddhism was no longer directed from religious centres, it became subject to arbitrary interpretations, and the controlling authority of the monasteries and religious communities no longer stood over it. The Buddhism that remained deviated more and more from the line of orthodoxy. In such circumstances a tacit agreement with Bon and with the folk religion had to be arrived at, all the more so because the religious attitude of the Tibetans still remained basically the same. A revival of the earlier religious ideas, not fixed through scriptures and varying from place to place, was inevitable; the klu, the sa bdag, the spirits of the soil, of the mountain, of the air continued to be venerated and feared as real powers.

The description given in the sources of the state of Buddhism immediately after the collapse of the dynasty and the end of Glang dar ma's persecution cannot be too far removed from the truth.

A letter attributed to Byang chub 'od, an eleventh-century ruler in West Tibet (No.81, p.393) shows how literally the followers of the Tantric schools at that time were accustomed to take some of the ambiguous teachings in these scriptures. The Tantras contained arguments of the following kind (No.82, Kha, p.3a): Since the
Buddha-nature exists in everyone, we are all capable of attaining permanently a state beyond good and evil, provided that we can recognize this reality present within us. Consequently none of our subsequent actions, of whatever kind, will be sinful. This led to the triumph of the doctrine of the five makara (Skt.), the ‘five ma’: meat (mamsa), Paredra (mudra),1 alcoholic drink (madhya), fish (matsya), sexual union (maithuna). These were taken in a grossly exoteric and literal sense, not according to the esoteric interpretation (cf. the gSang ba'i 'dus pa, Skt. Guhyasamaja Tantra). The gods were worshipped through offerings of sperm, blood and excrement. Understandably Byang chub 'od felt disgust at practices of this kind, which offended both religious sentiment and morality.2

The revival of Buddhism took place only gradually. In their desire to demonstrate always an unbroken connection between the old communities and those of a later period, the sources frequently disagree concerning the details of the revival. The connection can be maintained only through the ordination of monks carried out in accordance with the precepts of the Vinaya, and therefore recognized as fully valid.

According to the chronicles, Rab gsal of gTsang, g.Yo dGe 'byung of Bo dong, and dMar Sakyamuni of sTod lung came to know of the persecutions of Glang dar ma during their meditation at dPal chu bo ri. They took up the Vinaya texts which they always kept at hand, and set off on a dangerous pilgrimage. Having miraculously escaped the Qarluq,3 they travelled through the territory of the Hor and eventually reached East Tibet. There, among the nomad pastoralists of rMa chu, they came across a young man who bore the unmistakable signs of an innate inclination to the true faith (mos pa, Skt. adhimukti). Their example and their words spurred him to yet higher fervour. First he asked for the ordination of a lay disciple (dge bsnyen, Skt. upasaka), and then demanded to be given the full monastic ordination. According to the prescriptions of the Vinaya, to carry out this ceremony the presence of at least five monks is necessary: the instructor (mkhan po), the teacher (slob dpon, Skt. acarya), the master of esoteric secrets (gsang ston) and two assistants. Since this minimum number was not available, the youth could not receive a proper ordination. He then travelled to dPal gyi rdo rje, the monk who had murdered Glang dar ma. There could be no question of him participating in the ritual of consecration, however, because he was defiled by the murder. Nevertheless he enabled the novice’s wish to be fulfilled by obtaining the services of two Hwa shang monks as the required assistants. Together with the three masters already named this gave the prescribed total for the ordination. The youth, who had taken the name of dGe rab gsal as a lay disciple, from the names of his most important religious teachers, dGe 'byung and Rab gsal, later became famous under his monastic name of
dGongs pa rab gsal (832-915?). He could be considered as being the official representative of the faith in mDo kham (East Tibet). However, a revival of Buddhism was beginning to take place in the Central Tibetan provinces of dBus and gTsang also. Five young men from dBus and the same number from gTsang, who had heard of the events already described, came to East Tibet and asked Rab gsal of gTsang for full ordination according to the precepts, so that they could act as apostles of the Buddhist revival in the Land of Snow. Rab gsal refused at first, saying that he was too old; then they went to dGongs pa rab gsal, who however could not fulfil their request, because the five prescribed years had not yet passed since his own ordination, and he was not therefore qualified to invest novices. However, in consideration of the special circumstances the old master authorized an exception to this rule. In this way the five youths from dBus and the five from gTsang were ordained in proper form. Then the group dispersed to create new religious centres in various places. Each centre took on the name of the religious teacher founding it, as for example 'Dar tsho, 'the masters of 'Dar', founded by Sa kya yon tan of 'Dar, and so on. Thus runs the account transmitted by Bu ston (No.113). Its accuracy is certainly open to doubt. Bu ston and his predecessors had reason to draw a picture not entirely corresponding to the actual course of events. Their labours were directed towards validating the installation of the masters to whom the existence of the new centres of the Buddhism which Glang dar ma's persecutions had not totally destroyed was traced back. Thus Rig ral, for example, whom Bu ston cites for polemical reasons, describes the events in a rather different light. He inserts an intermediate period between the time of the first diffusion of the faith, which ended with Glang dar ma, and the second diffusion, which began with the revival of the religion and reached its climax with Rin chen bzang po, rNgog lotsawa, Atisa and Mar pa (No.113, p.211). During this intermediate period the doctrine was not studied or preached properly, but was spread only in a falsified form. Also, the narrative reproduced above shows certain discrepancies. It is scarcely plausible, for example, that three monks meditating in solitude would have taken with them only the bulky volume of the Vinaya text (the book of discipline). In general, monks devoting themselves to meditation are not only interested in questions of discipline. The group of ten young men in all from dBus and gTsang seems equally questionable, with its symmetrical division into two fives; behind this there evidently stands the intention of dividing the priority equally between these two provinces, which have always had an open or hidden rivalry. The intervention of dPal gyi rdo rje too is to be judged with a certain caution. Taking into account the difficult times, and the exceptional situation which presented itself, one could counter his
refusal to take part in the ordination with the Mahayana Buddhist argument that murder is in some cases necessary, not only for the sake of the doctrine, but even for the salvation of the man to be killed, for he will be prevented through his death from committing even worse sins. In any case, the ordination of the five youths from gTsang and dBu by dGongs pa rab gsal was itself in violation of the rules. All in all, the narration of Bu ston appears to us to be almost certainly an attempt, accepted by posterity as a historical account, to demonstrate an unbroken continuity between the first and second diffusion of Buddhism in Tibet (the snga dar and the phyi dar). The ordinations performed between the first and second period could thus be judged as fully valid from the point of view of the doctrine. In this way too the orthodoxy of the little monastic centres which arose in the intermediate period, and which were linked to the old tradition by dubious connections, was confirmed.

Leaving aside these details, which are of purely formal interest for us, though they would have been of fundamental importance for Bu ston, there can be no doubt that the persecution carried out by Glang dar ma did not lead to the total destruction of Buddhism in Tibet. At most it caused a decline. From what has been narrated here in brief, and from other records, it is clear that in the Eastern provinces conditions were favourable for a revival of Buddhism in accordance with its authentic tradition, and rejecting the deviations and distortions previously mentioned. dGe rab gsal could be consecrated because in Khams the essential number of monks for the ordination could be gathered together. In Tsong kha, too, Buddhism put up a successful resistance in the tenth and eleventh centuries. In the Eastern provinces the school of the teacher Vairocana, who had been exiled there, had gathered numerous disciples. In Khams itself (in Jyeckundo) Smrti, who came from Nepal, had brought a school into life. He was the teacher of Brom ston, the founder of the monastery of Rwa sgrangs (Reting, 1057, cf.p.35). On the western borders of the country Rin chen bzang po and Atisa were both at work; more will be said of them below. In the frontier regions, contact was never entirely broken with neighbouring countries, which had a long Buddhist tradition even if it was now being placed in question by the changed historical situation.

After the expulsion of the Tibetans from Turkestan it is certain that there was a massive return to Tibet of Buddhist lay people, merchants, officials and so on, and surely also monks. If therefore the tradition insists on the continuity of Buddhism in Tibet, despite the events during and after the reign of Glang dar ma, we can acknowledge it as on the whole correct, with the above reservations. Buddhism survived this period of crisis in two different forms, one lay and the other monastic. The lay or semi-lay form had a mainly magical orientation,
and was characterized by a subjective reading of the texts, particularly of the Tantric scriptures which were now taken literally, and not according to the esoteric tradition of interpretation established in India and later transmitted to Tibet. Along with this, old ritual customs which had little or nothing to do with Buddhism were often put into circulation again in Buddhist dress. This brought about a growth of immoral practices such that one could speak of ‘bandit monks’.

This movement was followed, at a slightly later date, by a revival of monasticism, thanks to the founding of little temples (lha khang), around which gathered the spiritual heirs of a religious teacher whose name the community bore: feeble sparks gradually shining up once more. These lha khang were probably chapels like those which one can still come across today in Western Tibet; they have for the most part been destroyed in Central Tibet, as a consequence of the more violent history of that region. They consisted of a rectangular cella, at the centre of which was an altar with the image of the god to whom the shrine was dedicated. In many cases there ran about this cella a corridor intended for ritual circumambulation (in a clockwise direction). In front of the building there was an atrium.

2 Rin chen bzang po and Atisa

A further impulse towards the so-called second diffusión (phyi dar) of Buddhism took place in West Tibet, in the province of mNga’ ris, which covers the regions of Ladakh, Zangs dkar, Pu hrang and Gu ge.

According to the tradition, these Western regions, which had been under Tibetan rule from the earliest years of the dynasty, had at this period fallen under the control of certain families descended from the former kings of Tibet. As my researches in North-West Nepal have shown, a new dynasty, the Malla, belonging to the Khasia tribe, had already come to power there at an early period, at least in the region around Pu hrang. This dynasty established its capital at Semja in Nepal, and from there extended its control over Pu hrang. Even if the point in time at which this dynasty originated is uncertain, it can be accepted that it was already ruling in North-West Nepal by around the tenth century. Although this princely house showed itself to be extremely tolerant in its Nepalese domain, favouring the local cults everywhere and even showing Saivite leanings, after its conquests in Tibet it became a supporter of Buddhism. The kings of the first dynasties were probably led to favour Buddhism by political considerations as well as by their inclination to the faith of their ancestors. They found themselves in the middle of a conquered and partly
THE SECOND DIFFUSION OF BUDDHISM

hostile country, a region from which several influential Bon po teachers had originated or where they had taught, a country in which the indigenous religious traditions maintained themselves stubbornly. The pro-Buddhist policy of the Malla kings arose then, apart from religious convictions, from motives not unlike those which had formerly led King Khri srong lde brtsan to propagate Buddhism. The most significant figures of this dynasty are Ye shes 'od and Byang chub 'od. Ye shes 'od chose several youths and sent them to Kashmir to study the Buddhist teachings. One of these youths was later to become prominent under the name of Rin chen bzang po (958-1055). Kashmir was an appropriate place not only because of its nearness, but also because the last splendour of the Buddhist schools then held sway there, and famous religious teachers preserved both the speculative and logical tradition, and the practice of Tantra and ritual. At the end of their education, the youths returned from Kashmir to their homeland, along with teachers and also some artists, and they began to propagandize their faith over a wide region under the protection of the court.

Rin chen bzang po operated on two parallel levels: the erection of numerous chapels (lha khang) in the lands under the rule of the King of Gu ge and in neighbouring regions (the tradition speaks of no less than 108 chapels (lha khang)\(^9\)), and an intensive work of translation. In all Rin chen bzang po, alone or along with collaborators, translated and revised 158 texts, both long and short, which were included in the bKa' 'gyur and bsTan 'gyur.\(^\text{10}\) A school formed itself around him. Buddhism expanded through West Tibet, and made a breach in the Bon community. The king wished to invite a luminary of the doctrine from India to his country. His choice fell on Atisa, one of the four directors of the great University of Nalanda.

The powerful stimulus which Rin chen bzang po and Atisa brought to the revival of Buddhism in Western Tibet is an indisputable fact. Precisely at a time when dark clouds were gathering over Buddhism in India, Indian teachers from Kashmir and Nepal began to flow into these regions of Tibet.

The largest of the temples built in Western Tibet at that time, that of mTho gling, was erected, according to the tradition, on the model of Otantapura in India (of course this refers only to the dkyil 'khor lha khang, used for initiation; the whole complex of religious buildings is the result of a long development). In these circumstances it goes without saying that it was not only sacred texts and Buddhist teachers that came to Tibet. The Buddhist temple is unthinkable without its decoration. In order to perform the ceremonies, a chapel also had to possess statues of wood, bronze and stucco, and the liturgical instruments required for a form of ritual which was carried out strictly in
accordance with precise rules. The frescoes decorating the walls illustrated the liturgical acts carried out in the Tantras, or portrayed the offering goddesses (mchod pa'i lha mo)—a hypostatization and transposition into human form of the most important components of the ritual, flowers, lights, even smiles and so on. The paintings on linen or cotton base, which already had a long history in India, and were especially favoured by the Buddhists, would not have been lacking either. These were called pata in India, in Tibet sku thang (or thang ka, generally known as ‘Tibetan banners’, or Tibetan temple standards).

The religious fervour soon spread to Central Tibet too. In this connection the continuous stream of Tibetan pilgrims to India was of great importance, and in particular the lotsana or translators who were part of it. These men visited the sacred places of Buddhist tradition in India in order to collect books, to study in the schools of Indian teachers, to be initiated by them into Tantric liturgy and to be instructed in the oral tradition of the mystical, ascetic and yogic texts, and in Tantric practice. However, Indian teachers also were now crossing the Himalayas more frequently in the opposite direction, as a result of the revival of Hinduism in India, and the Muslim invasions. They brought with them, of course, their books, and their protective deities.

So it came about that Atisa too came to the heartland of Tibet, to Nethang (sNye thang), only a few kilometres from Lhasa. He died at Nethang in 1054. His work had included not only the diffusion of the doctrine which had already been codified, but in particular a new emphasis on the cult of the goddess Tara, to whom he was especially devoted. He wrote concise texts to serve as introductions leading on to a more profound study of the Buddhist doctrine of salvation.

During the period of transition, Buddhism had become a religion in which the laity were taking a more and more central role. It was in view of this that the masters of the ‘second diffusion of the teaching’ emphasized the necessity of a solid tradition of teaching, which could remove the possibility of arbitrary interpretations of the sacred texts. The authority and validity of the doctrine had to be guaranteed through direct transmission from master to student. When 'Brom ston asked Atisa which was more important and more basic (gtso), the text of the scriptures (bka’, Revelation, and bstan bcos, Skt. sastra, the books written by Indian masters), or one’s teacher’s instructions (bla ma’i gdamgs ngag), Atisa replied that direct instruction from one’s teacher is more important (No.78, p.160). So it came about that the first two schools of Buddhism to appear in Tibet, those which trace their origins back to Atisa and Mar pa, both bear the name bka’ brgyud (Jo bo rje’i bka’ brgyud, No.78, p.185b). These schools, at least with respect to
the esoteric tradition, recognize the same Indian teachers. The school which *Mar pa* founded still retains the name of *bKa’ brgyud*, while the followers of Atisa, the *bKa’ gdam pa*, also called themselves *bKa’ brgyud bka’ gdam pa*. The direct instruction (*gdam ngag, zhal gdam*) of the disciple by the master was held to guarantee both the correct interpretation of the scriptures, and the right understanding of the spirit concealed behind their words, thus enabling the Buddha’s word to fulfill its mission of salvation. It is clear from the *bKa’ gdam pa* literature that the objective of the first teachers was to create a solidly based school, to gather round them tested disciples who would be capable of transmitting the tradition to later generations. The teaching was mostly in the form of discourses, which were based on such condensed presentations as those of Atisa (No.78), *Brom ston* and *Po to pa*, or sometimes on the responses which these masters had given on various occasions to students or inquirers. The teaching made use of illustrative stories (*gtam*). Its essential features were classified into groups (*tshan*) of three, five, six or seven topics, which were in their turn again sub-divided, evidently for ease in memorizing and to provide a framework for discussion (cf. No.78, p.185b).

The teaching aimed in the first place at the purification of the mind (*blo sbyong*), at the realization of the ethical and esoteric principles of Buddhism. Much less time was devoted to Buddhism’s highly-developed theoretical side. Essentially this instruction was limited to leading the disciple to a better understanding of his own mind and to the achievement of insight into ‘voidness’ as the limiting state of things (*mthar thug*), together with compassion. The thought of Enlightenment from the point of view of ultimate reality is equated with ‘voidness’, while compassion results from the same thought when considered from the standpoint of conventional truth (No.78, pp.161, 167). ‘Voidness’ is the ‘body of essence’, compassion the ‘body of form’.

A number of these *bKa’ gdam pa* masters were given the title *dge ba’i bshes gnyen* or *dge bshes* (also spelled *dge shes*), corresponding to the Indian *kalyanamitra*, that is one who is able, owing to the profundity of his doctrine and of his wisdom, to lead others on the way of salvation. The esoteric tradition (*sngags*) too was in no way neglected. The renovators of Buddhism in Tibet would have been led to take the Tantras into consideration both through their own educational background, intellectual and spiritual, and through the correspondence of these teachings to the Tibetans’ characteristic propensity towards the magical and esoteric (No.79, p.12b). The Nepalese teacher *Tsan du hang ngu* used to say that the Tibetans did not pay sufficient attention to his explanations of the Prajnaparamita teachings (*Tib. Pha rol tu phyin pa, Phar phyin*), but whenever he expounded the secret mantras
their astonishment knew no end. At any rate the function of the master, the Lama, became more and more indispensable, and his superior status was no longer open to question. His qualities, the relationship between him and the student, the spiritual advantages derived from this relationship, were described ever more insistently. However, it should be noted that the spiritual life of Tibet was not simply attached to the Indian tradition in a nominal way. A discipline was imposed upon the revived Buddhism of Tibet, and its validity had from now on to be continually tested through comparison with the Indian tradition. This was especially necessary for the Tantric practices which these masters reintroduced into Tibet, for here the danger of misunderstandings and false interpretations had already become obvious. In fact these practices were from this time on to be restricted to initiates; their transmission took place more orally than through commentaries or exegetical writings. All the same, the existence of exorcists, or adepts of esoteric schools, is attested by the bKa' gdamspa sources themselves, where several masters are designated by the term yogin (Tib. rnal 'byor pa).

Starting from these premises, and considering the particular spiritual nature of the Tibetans, it is understandable that the monastic community, and each individual monk, came to be considered as sacred. It was the ordination, or in the case of the Tantric schools the initiation (dbang), which conferred this quality upon them. The initiation was thought, as will be seen later, to confer supernatural power, and to place its bearer outside of the realm of the ordinary. The initiated did not only achieve special experiences, they also often acquired powers which would have recalled to the believers the power (mthu) which had been ascribed in a high degree to the exorcists. Here there came into play expectations and beliefs which form the common heritage of Tibetan religion, whether Bon po or Buddhist. In addition, the monks of the little reconstituted communities represented, in their place in the chapel (lha khang), the mental body ( thugs rten) of the Buddha. Thus they became imbued with the aura of sacredness which radiates from the physical body of the Buddha (represented by his image) and his verbal body (in the form of the sacred scriptures).

Texts attributed to the Buddha himself, as well as the commentaries of the masters, had praised the blessings which resulted from the construction of religious buildings, temples or stupa, and the beneficial influence which was assured for anyone who commissioned ritual paintings or images, or who caused the sacred scriptures to be copied, recited or read out in public. Such meritorious acts were able to influence the course of karmic acts for the better and even to guide them on to another path. A stupa, a statue, a book, the reading of a
sacred text: all these set into motion automatically a quantity of merit, effective beyond and in addition to the actions accomplished in daily life. Ideas of this sort had already come to maturity in India. They arrived in Tibet in the form of already codified rules, and found there soil particularly suited for their growth. Observance of these precepts, and generosity towards monks and religious dignitaries in general, was regarded as especially beneficial for both the spiritual and material well-being of the donor. They created a kind of guarantee, a sort of talisman against the dangers threatening from all directions. It is clear that from the beginning there had been a close reciprocal alliance between the religious community and the lay world. The monastic community was supported by the lay world; it conferred on it its own spiritual support and protection, and received from it in exchange its necessary material security and the assurance of future prosperity. In this way the basis was created for the reconstruction of the monastic communities as institutions of economic power, and therefore as decisive factors in Tibetan history. It is not by chance that the new propagandists for Buddhism joined caravans of merchants (No.113, p.203). From the start of the revival, all appropriate attention was given to the commercial aptitudes of the adepts (loc.cit: ‘Ding [‘Bring], as he is skilful in transacting business, is to be the custodian of the place’). The reviving community in Central Tibet enjoyed the aid of a prince, or rather a landed nobleman of bSam yas, just as Rin chen bzang po and the movement emanating from him was encouraged by the favour of the kings of Western Tibet.

Alongside the specifically monastic movement, the little communities undertaking the discipline (Vinaya), created with the support of kings or local potentates, there grew up the movement of the ‘Perfected Ones’ (grub thob), linked with the Siddha school of India. These grub thob were Tibetan ascetics who rejected all the orthodox and conventional forms. These monks did not feel themselves bound to any discipline. They preferred a wandering life, and were not obliged to be celibate. They taught that only the practice of yoga, and hatha yoga in particular, brought about the consubstantiation, the sameness of essence, with the radiant Mind of the Buddha. This emphasis on the technique of yoga did not in general exclude a theoretical preparation, as will be shown in Chapter 4. The Tantras, which lie at the base of these currents, recognize the necessity of a doctrinal training following the basic outlines of the system of Nagarjuna, or of the cittamatra teachings (cf.p.31). In practice, however, the special and arbitrary methods for the achievement of ecstasy which are peculiar to this school, along with the oddness of the ways of behaving which it prescribes, led to a deep antagonism between the two tendencies, the logical and doctrinal, and the gnostic,
and this opposition also found its expression in a fundamentally different outlook on life.

This asceticism of the Siddha or grub thob school spread after the second diffusion of Buddhism. It is enough to recall the masters of two schools of this kind who had significant success in Tibet; Mar pa, representative and interpreter of the initiatory tradition going back to the Indian teachers Tilopa and Naropa, and head of the Tibetan school of the bKa’ brgyud pa, and Pha dam pa Sangs rgyas, to whom the gCod school traces its origins. As elsewhere, there existed in these schools also a spiritual transmission from master to disciple, which soon, however, became institutionalized into monastic organizations. In the course of this process, the master gradually became the supreme head of a religious community. Financial interests were not absent in this process; indeed one can truly speak of greed in the case of some of these ascetics (grub thob). Following the example of the Indian masters, they did not dispense their initiatory teachings without an appropriate payment. This, however, was not demanded as a payment—spiritual things, it is said, have no price. It was to be seen, rather in the manner of the daksina\textsuperscript{12} in India, as an obligatory expression of thanks on the part of the student, or as a sign of his willingness to make sacrifices. The biographies of Mar pa and the other lotsava are very enlightening in this respect. Before they set out for India on the search for their master, their guru, for initiatory consecrations or books, they had had to accumulate gold and riches. After their return to Tibet, they naturally expected the same treatment from their disciples. Thus riches accumulated about the masters. Their property brought about the need for an organization. Certainly, as in India, there were exceptions to this rule; Tibet too could show examples of unselfish teachers, who shunned any contact with the goods of this world.

3 The foundation of the great monasteries

The foundation of the monastery of Zha lu took place in the year 1040, that of Rwa sgrengs (Reting) in 1057, that of Sa skya in 1073. Thel, which was later generally known under the name of gDan sa Thel (or Thil), was brought into existence in 1158 by Phag mo gru pa, a disciple of sGam po pa, himself a student of Mi la ras pa. Other monasteries founded at about this time include 'Bri gung (or khung), 1167, whose monks were long rivals of the Sa skya pa, Tshal, 1175, also in rivalry with Sa skya, and mTshur phu, 1189. All of these monasteries had important religious figures for founders or patrons. Each master emphasized his own tendency, doctrinal, mystical or yogic. The continually increasing
secular power of the religious communities created antagonisms much more violent than theological differences of opinion. It released to a growing extent a militant attitude which aspired to hegemony in the temporal world as well as in the spiritual.

After centuries full of unrest and social disorder, a whole new situation came into being. The great religious communities arose out of a symbiosis of sacred and secular power. From now on the history of Tibet would be created by the abbots, as in the case of the Sa skya pa, or by the great landowners who, as the ‘helpers’ and secular protectors of important religious teachers, founded monasteries in their names. Since these powerful families concentrated their attention upon their particular monastery, their interests came to merge with that of the monastic community into an indissoluble unity.

Thus we arrive at the time of the creation of the first Mongol empire, that of Chinggis Khan. When the danger of the Mongols approached the borders of Tibet, there was called, according to ancient custom, a kind of assembly, at which it was decided to parley with Chinggis Khan. Jo ga and Kun dga’ rdo rje of Tshal were entrusted with negotiating the Tibetan submission. By this time the Sa skya pa monks had already achieved great authority, but the other most powerful monasteries were also competing for the favour of the Mongols. The Sa skya pa emerged from this competition as the winners. Links of a special kind were formed between the court of the Yüan dynasty (the Mongol rulers of China) and Tibet. ’Phags pa of Sa skya conferred on Qubilai Khan the initiation of Kye rdo rje (Skt. Hevajra), and in exchange the emperor granted to him sovereignty over Tibet. Emperor and abbot entered into a firm arrangement, resembling that between some emperors and some popes in European history. The territory of Tibet was divided into thirteen districts (chol kha), and these were subdivided into myriarchies (divisions of 10,000, Tib. khri skor). A census of the population was carried out for the purpose of tax collection, corvée, tribute assessment and troop recruitment. This system of administration continued to exist also under the Phag mo gru pa rulers (cf. Chapter 3).

To check the power of the abbots, officials called dpon chen were appointed, military commanders responsible to the Yüan emperor for security and peace in the country. They were also answerable for the keeping of amicable relationships between the monastic communities and the secular nobility, who often engaged in violent feuds among themselves. The myriarchies put into operation once more, although with new content, the military organization which had existed at the time of the kings. The myriarchs were appointed by the Mongol emperor, but these nominations in general only confirmed the situation already in effect. The investiture was of a purely formal character; the
intervention of the Yüan dynasty and of the following Chinese dynasties was restricted to conferring the titles of appointment from time to time, and receiving the gifts of particular chiefs on specified occasions. Nevertheless the fundamental confirmation of Tibetan rulers here in question was to have important consequences for the future.
THREE

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF LAMAISM

1 Fundamentals

Lamaism had reached its definitive form, and its doctrinal structure and ritual had been irrevocably determined, by the end of the fifteenth century (Tsong kha pa died in 1419). All of the schools and doctrinal movements had taken part in this evolution, which had lasted for several centuries, and in its course they too had reached their full maturity.

First of all, it should be remembered that the Tibetan expression of Buddhism, commonly called Lamaism, absorbed many ritual elements and magical attitudes, as well as a whole series of local spirits, all of which had been established in the Land of Snow long before the entry of Buddhism. Thus the divergence between some of the liturgical forms and concepts of Lamaism and the Buddhism found in Indian literary texts is entirely understandable.

At the same time, we should not lose sight of the fact that we are acquainted with Lamaism primarily from its still living ritual forms. What we know of it is based not only on literary accounts (although these exist in great abundance) or on the biographies of its most important figures (although these give us a tangible idea of how Lamaism was lived by men of different times). It comes above all from the direct observation of religious practice within Tibetan society and within the monastic communities which the Buddhist tradition regards as sacred.

By contrast, we know Indian Mahayana Buddhism in its late and extreme forms (as transmitted to Tibet) only in some of its doctrinal aspects and in its basic liturgical forms, and even for these we are limited to the schematic treatments which have come down to us in Sanskrit, or in Tibetan or Chinese translations. If we were in a position to reconstruct the gnostic and magical Buddhism of the Indian Vajrayana in the form in which it was understood and practised by, for example, the general public of Uddiyana (Swat) or Bengal between the eighth and eleventh centuries, then we would surely be
able to establish many more analogies with Lamaism than we can see at present. The rich magical heritage transmitted in the Tantric literature, derived from many sources, fell in Tibet upon extremely fertile soil, in which it could continue to prosper.

In discussing Lamaism then we have first to distinguish between Buddhism, and the pre-Buddhist beliefs, myths, rituals and invocatory formulae of Tibet, which Lamaism has skilfully reworked, and embodied into its own religious world. This magical–religious heritage which was received by Lamaism was certainly not introduced in its entirety from India, though it was often codified into Indian-influenced ritual schemes. It will be dealt with in a later chapter (Chapter 6), devoted to the folk religion; it is this side of Lamaism which provides the Tibetan people with their support and defence against the powers of evil.

On the other hand monastic Lamaism, both in its teachings and its ritual procedures, has always to be considered in relation to the Buddhist tradition. This does not mean that Lamaism should be seen merely as a kind of appendix to Indian Buddhism, or that one should regard it as consisting only of the expositions of Indian Buddhist teachings. Such an oversimplified approach is certainly inadmissible. There is no doubt that the Indian tradition of thought lies at the base of the Lamaist interpretation of the relationship between the world of appearances and the world considered to exist in reality. Lamaist thought, however, is individual in many respects, and particular aspects of speculative thought and of practice have received special emphasis in the course of the development of its various schools. It is precisely these individual cases of emphasis or convergence that are of special interest to us here. If in the present account of Lamaism we, too, are often forced to repeat things that are well known to those familiar with Buddhism in general and Indian Buddhism in particular, we wish, however, to try to illuminate certain problems to which Tibetan Buddhism has devoted particular attention. We will have to be concise, although the extremely complicated details of the way to salvation, of the homologies between the stages of contemplation and ecstasy on the one part, and the corresponding steps of ascetic purification on the other, deserve a more detailed treatment.

In considering this restriction, it must always be emphasized that the Indian Buddhism of which the Tibetan Buddhist teachings represents the continuation and development was that professed by the Buddhist communities of India, Central Asia and China, on the eve of the collapse which occurred in the first two regions as a result of historical events (the Muslim invasions) or inner decay. What this implies is that Buddhism, at the time of its entry into Tibet, brought with it not only mutually divergent doctrinal statements, but also
heterogeneous, if often parallel, concepts, of a more or less clearly formulated nature. It also carried with it a many-layered liturgical structure, interpreted through the most subtle symbolism, mystical and yivic practices for the easier acquisition of special modes of experience, and a notable heritage of magic, extremely varied in its forms and fed from sources lying far in the past. Such a system was, as already indicated, well able to meet the expectations of the less educated masses of the people.

The monastic ordination, and the monastic regime as a whole, was defined in all its details by a whole armoury of regulations. An immense literature contained minute prescriptions for these matters. The rules of discipline (Vinaya, Tib. 'dul ba), formed a part of the scriptures, and had to be accepted without question. This was true also of the mdo (Skt. Sutra) and rgyud (Skt. Tantra), in other words those scriptures in which the revelations of the Buddha or of his disciples are contained and transmitted.

On questions of doctrine, however, discussion was permitted. Doctrine was dominated by a relativistic view according to which nothing has real independent existence, all is 'void' (stong pa, Skt. sunya), everything conceivable in empirical experience is held to be without an individual essence, all that appears superficially real can be shown to be without substance at the level of absolute truth. This was the position of the Madhyamika school (Tib. dbu ma), the system developed by Nagarjuna, who was the central figure of the doctrine in Tibet also. An alternative way which was open was that of Cittamatra, of 'thought-only' (Tib. sens tsam!) ascribed to Asanga and Vasubandhu. According to this, apparent reality is nothing more than a representation made by our mind (sens, Skt. citta), which produces all representations from out of itself, yet is in its own nature also pure radiance.

The Tibetan schools waver between these two positions, and avoid fixing themselves definitely upon one system to the exclusion of the other. However, the following can be said; while Nagarjuna always remains the central figure of the doctrine in Tibet, the bKa' brgyud pa and rNying ma pa schools tend to emphasize Cittamatra more strongly, while the dGe lugs pa hold more strictly to Nagarjuna and the Madhyamika position.

Logic (mtshan nyid, Skt. nyaya) can be considered as an auxiliary to the understanding of the doctrine, and therefore as a tool assigned for the goal of salvation. It had been developed to the height of perfection by Dinnaga and Dharmakirti, and the dGe lugs pa, followed in part by the Sa skya pa, affirmed its indispensability as the foundation of the teachings. The other schools however regarded it as only a preparatory study.
When considering the practices through which the goal of salvation, as defined in the Buddhist teachings, is to be realized, the problem can be defined as the choice between the immediate way and the gradual path. Is liberation brought about in an instantaneous moment of awakening, or is it the result of a progressive conquest? As mentioned in Chapter 1, the dispute on this subject had already broken out at the time of King Khri srong lde brtsan, between the Chinese teacher, or Hwa shang, who followed the Ch’an school, and the disciples of Santarakṣita and Kamalasila. It was concerned with a fundamental question: is luminous intuition, blazing unexpectedly from out of our nature, by itself sufficient to bring about salvation, or must this saving vision be prepared for by a specific practice, that recommended by the Prajñāpāramitā teachings? The discussion involved, then, the two fundamental concepts of Buddhist mysticism, ‘higher cognition’ (shes rab, Skt. prajña) and the ‘means’, the practice (thabs, Skt. upāya). These are traditionally seen as working closely together with each other, as indissolubly intertwined. Another problem was closely connected to this. This was the problem of our identity, in other words the question of whether there exists an identity between the Buddha and all living beings. Does this inexpressible essence, this luminous mind, in each of us, shine out directly like a lightning flash and free us from error? Or can the attainment of salvation be the fruit only of a long-lasting process of both spiritual and ethical purification? This question inevitably led to a discussion of mind (sems, Skt. citta), and the problem of its connection with the light to which it is identical in essence (sems = ’od gsal), and to the void (stong pa); it also brought up the problem of the relationship between the mind which is imprisoned through its actions in the world of experience, and that radiant mind or ‘void’ which has independent existence.

The Tantra offered countless different paths, emphasizing variously gnosticism, liturgy or yoga. These paths are expressed through symbologies and rituals differing from one Tantric cycle to another. The single basic form of the meditation is subject to infinite variation in detail. In it, the individual deities, represented through their symbols, are brought into existence, that is made visible to the mystic, either externally, in an objectification in front of him, or within his own body. These divine forms are evoked not only for the attainment of salvation, but also for liturgical or magical reasons. Four, or sometimes five, magical actions (Skt. karma) are distinguished, usually �鹃 (calming offended deities), ṛgyas (increasing wealth), dbang (driving out hostile powers) and drag (acquiring the power of inspiring terror). Each deity is described in a prescribed text (ṣgrub thabs, Skt. sādhaṇa) which gives its form and attributes, and thus enables the meditator to evoke it and cause it to merge with him. Its ‘essential voidness’ must
be recognized following the evocation, since nothing exists apart from pure radiant mind. Mind is without any form, though all forms emerge from it in their apparent manifestations. Here we are in the realm of a freedom of mystical experience on which no limits can be imposed. Out of it new formulae of meditation and invocation constantly arose and proliferated; for each meditator left his state of ecstasy in the certainty that he had been granted the revelation of a unique divine manifestation. The methods of evocation (sgrub thabs, Skt. sadhana) used to create the state of ecstasy flourished in Tibet on the fertile soil of the ascetics’ aptitudes to visions.

2 The most important schools*

Divergences were acceptable between various interpretations of the revealed word and the commentaries, as long as the limits of the faith were not transgressed. Tibetan authors of theological treatises often mention the classical Indian grouping of Buddhist schools of thought into eighteen, but this classification is of dubious value and of mostly historical interest, and it can scarcely be justified with respect to Tibetan Buddhism. In reality the schools of thought within Lamaism can in no way be traced back to these eighteen schools.

One has to bear in mind always the profound division between mdo (Skt. Sutra) and rgyud (Skt. Tantra), and between their corresponding doctrinal systematizations. Of course Sutra and Tantra are not mutually exclusive, and frequently meet. The Sutra teachings always form the speculative framework, as we have already emphasized: Madhyamika relativism (in its two particular forms, Svatana and Prasangika), and Cittamatra (in which only sems exists). Speculative thought never extends outside the boundaries of these two principal positions.

With respect to the Tantric teachings, a distinction has to be made between the orthodox Tantra, and those Tantric texts considered by other schools to be dubious, or entirely inauthentic. These latter are the Tantras (rgyud) accepted by the rNying ma pa school, as contrasted with the ‘new’ rgyud (rgyud gser ma) newly introduced, or revised, after the second diffusion of the teachings, and which could be validated through recognized Sanskrit originals, and interpreted in accordance with a tested Indian tradition.

An adequate sub-division of the Lamaist schools would require yet further criteria. The Tibetans classify them according to the mon-

* This section is primarily directed to Tibetanists; non-specialists can go on to the next section.
asteries in which particular traditions of interpretation were cultivated, or on the basis of the religious teachers to which particular schools can be traced back, or according to the religious or exegetical tradition preferred within a particular school. In the division proposed by No.82 (4,1) for example, Sa skya pa, Jo nang pa, Shangs pa and 'Bri gung pa are terms derived from the names of places or monasteries, Kar ma pa and Bu lugs pa (= 'disciples of Bu ston') are named after teachers, and bKa' gdam pa, rDzogs chen, Phyag chen and Zhi byed pa refer to the school's secret initiatory doctrines or to its emphasis on particular traditions or types of experience.

The teachers representing each of these schools are extremely numerous. There is little point in enumerating them in detail, especially as their originality is mostly very limited. Some are distinguished through their organizational talent, or because the impulse for the founding of famous monasteries, or the creation of important schools of exegesis, is ascribed to them, or for their activity as writers and commentators. Very rarely is it a question of a creative mind who has attempted to break through the framework of a tradition regarded as sacrosanct in order to open up new avenues for speculative thought, or to impose new disciplinary forms upon the religious community. Tsong kha pa (1357-1419) was an exception of this kind. Others again possessed considerable political authority, as with the first Sa skya pa abbots, who during the period of their pre-eminence, which lasted somewhat less than a hundred years, were involved everywhere in the struggles then taking place in Tibet.

If we restrict ourselves then to the most notable figures, then in the Sa skya pa school the so-called 'Five Greats' can be mentioned. The first of these was Kun dga' snying po (1092-1158), whose studies concerned primarily the Tantric cycle relating to Hevajra, the patron deity of the Sa skya pa. bSod nams ris mo (1142-82) worked on a systematic ordering and classification of the Tantric literature, and also provided summary expositions of the teachings. rJe btsun Grags pa rgyal mtshan (1147-1216) was the author of numerous works of Tantric and doctrinal exegesis, as well as of medical treatises. Sa skya Pandita (1182-1231) turned his attention primarily to problems of doctrine and logic (Tshad ma rigs pa'i gter), basing himself upon the Pramanavarttika of Dharmakirti; he was also interested in rhetoric. Phags pa (1235-80?), finally, was an extremely prolific writer who discussed all conceivable doctrinal, Tantric and liturgical topics, and also addressed numerous letters to Mongol princes in which he summarized the basic elements of the Buddhist teachings.

Bu ston rin po che (1290-1364), of the monastery of Zha lu in gTsang (founded by lCe in 1040) undertook a thorough revision of the entire doctrinal and liturgical literature. His particular achievement was to
establish and arrange, in a virtually definitive form, the writings of the Indian interpreters and commentators, in the pages of the bsTan ’gyur, for which he also supplied a catalogue. He undertook the immense task of exegesis and commentary on all the fundamental texts of Buddhism, both those on disciplinary precepts (’dul, Vinaya) and the revelation proper (mdo and rgyud, Sutra and Tantra). This huge enterprise, in which he revised the entire religious literature and arranged it in a systematic form left permanent traces, which can also be seen in the arts; the wall paintings of the mchod rten of Gyantse, and those of many other monuments, were undoubtedly influenced by his precise descriptions of the various mandala and of the individual Tantric cycles. His descriptions formed an indispensable foundation for the iconographical schemes (bkod) which inspired the painters. The school of the Bu pa (named after Bu ston), also called Zha lu pa after the monastery where his activity took place, goes back to this master. The differences between this school and the Sa skya pa are insignificant.

The bKa’ gdams pa (cf.p.23) trace themselves back to Atisa, who came to Tibet in 1042 and died at sNye thang in 1054, and to Rin chen bzang po, in other words to the ‘second diffusion of the doctrine’. The school was given a significant impetus by ‘Brom ston rGyal ba’i byung gnas (1003-63 or 64), the most important disciple of Atisa. It can also boast other well-known religious teachers: Po to pa Rin chen gsal (died 1105), the founder of the monastery of Po to, Blo gros grags pa, founder of the monastery of sNar thang, Phu chung pa gZhon nu rgyal mtshan (1031-1100) and sPyan snga Tshul khrims ’bar, founder of the monastery of Lo (1095). While not rejecting the Tantric exercises of the Vajrayana, this school developed them intelligently, opposing the aberrations and heresies into which the followers of Tibetan Buddhism had fallen. One of the Tantras particularly cultivated by them was the Tattvasamgraha, and it is the cycles of gods of this Tantra, dedicated to a particular form of Vairocana (Kun rig, cf.p.197) among others, which predominate in the chapels founded by Rin chen bzang po in West Tibet. This school exerted a significant influence upon the development of the teachings in Tibet, for its masters enjoyed great prestige, and in consequence followers of the other sects studied with them attentively. At this time there took place the editing of the great collections of the bKa’ ’gyur and the bsTan ’gyur, massive compilations of all the texts translated into Tibetan. The original redactions of these collections, which contained the translations of India’s literary and spiritual heritage to Tibet, were made at Zha lu and sNar thang.6

The bKa’ brgyud pa school gives particular emphasis to Tantric exercises, and to the practice of yoga (or mahamudra, cf.p.71). This school is connected with the Indian Siddha Naropa through his
student Chos kyi blo gros of Mar, better known as Mar pa, or as the lotsava of Mar (1012-96).

In general, the Tibetans divide the students of Mar pa into three groups: those entrusted with the interpretation and explanation of texts (bshad bka’ ’dzin), the ascetics (grub bka’ ’dzin), and the students whose task it was to transmit the esoteric practices for transferring one’s consciousness into other beings, particularly into dead bodies (’grong ’jug bka’ ’babs). Mar pa’s son Dar ma mdo sde received this secret teaching from his father, but taught it to no one in his turn, and it was lost at his death. Mar pa’s most important student was Mi la ras pa (1040-1123), whom the master initiated into his mystical exercises. The poems of Mi la ras pa were composed on the model of the Dohakosa, in which the Indian Siddha wrote down the doctrines of their school and the technique of their mystical exercises in allusory language which is often difficult to understand.

The most important students of Mi la ras pa were Ras chung rDo rje grags pa (1084-1161) and sGam po pa (1079-1153). Ras chung was sent by his master to India to penetrate more deeply into the yoga which has the so-called ‘Six Laws of Naropa’ for object. sGam po pa was the composer of a kind of Summa of Buddhist thought (No.116), which anticipates the later work of this kind written by Tsong kha pa, and gives a careful and extremely clear introduction to Buddhism. The treatise ‘The Six Laws of Naropa’ by Mar pa’s teacher enjoys special fame; there is no school among which it is unknown, not even that of the dGe lungs pa, since it summarizes the fundamental principles of Vajrayana soteriology in concise form, and has therefore particularly attracted the interest of commentators. A very significant literature thus crystallized about these ‘Six Laws’, of great psychological interest.

The bKa’ brgyud pa school split up later into numerous branches, among whom the ’Bri gung pa deserve special mention; as already noted they entered the political arena in order to contest with the Sa skya pa for pre-eminence. They owe their name to the monastery of ’Bri gung, which was founded by a student of Phag mo gru pa, himself a disciple of sGam po pa. This monastery however had its greatest success at the time of the ’Bri gung rin po che (1143-1217). In addition one should mention here the sTag lung pa, so named after the monastery of sTag lung. sTag lung bKra shis dpal (1142-1210) counts as the most important leader of this school. The ’Brug pa represent another branch, named after that country where they particularly took root, Bhutan (’Brug yul in Tibetan); they were founded by Gling ras pa Pad ma rdo rje (1128-88). One of the most notable polymaths of Tibet, Pad ma dkar po (1526-92) belonged to this school. Also to be mentioned are the Kar ma pa, a school which traces its origin to a disciple of sGam po pa named Chos ’dzin dge ’phel Dus gsum mkhyen pa (1110-93), the founder of the
famous monastery of *mTshur phu*. This school, which came to be of great importance, was itself divided into two branches frequently in conflict with each other, which were called red hats (*zhwa dmar*) and black hats (*zhwa nag*) after the colour of the hats worn by the heads of the schools. Another sect also attached to the *bKa’ brgyud pa* is that of the *Shangs pa*, founded by ‘*Ba’ ra pa* *rgyal mtshan dpal bzang* (born 1310). This school traces its origin to a *Bon* follower converted to Buddhism, *Shangs khyung po rnal ’byor pa*, who had studied with numerous Indian masters.

The *Sa skya pa* sub-divided too, giving rise to the *Ngor* school, so called after a monastery in the province of *gTsang*. This school goes back to *Kun dga’ bzang po*, who founded the monastery in 1429.

The *bKa’ gdam pa* school flowed into that of the *dGe lugs pa*, whose followers also bore the name *bKa’ gdam pa gSar ma* (‘new *bKa’ gdam pa’). This movement culminated in the synthesis brought about by *Tsong kha pa* (1357-1419), with whom the history of the reformed school (*dGe lugs pa*, *dGe legs pa*), also known as the ‘Yellow Sect’, begins. In his work *Lam rim chen mo* (which was formally conceived of as a commentary to a short work of Atisa, the *Byang chub lam rim sgron me*) *Tsong kha pa* provided the *Summa* of Lamaist doctrine as he saw it. He made this text the basis of the ‘Yellow Sect’, and it has become a kind of Bible for them, to which they constantly refer in the form of excerpts, explanations and commentaries. In his *sNgags rim*, *Tsong kha pa* presented a survey of the Tantras recommended to his students, along with an account of the liturgy and of the correct interpretation of the gnosics which brings salvation. *Tsong kha pa*’s work was continued by his two most important students, *Dar ma rin chen*, better known as *rgyal tshab* (1364-1432), and *mKhas grub rje* (1385-1483). Along with their master, these two form an indivisible triad, known as the *yab sras gsun* (the ‘father’, i.e. the master, and his two ‘spiritual sons’; they are always presented as three). This triad brings the development to a final end. While there were a vast number of prolific writers after the time of these three masters (it is enough to recall the literary activity of the Fifth Dalai Lama, *Blo bzang rgya mtsho* (1617-82), which verges on the miraculous), the exegesis of this later period does not have the same definitive character; it is more concerned with the clarification of already assured positions than with enriching the intellectual heritage and opening new ways for thought.

The *Jo nang pa* school, founded by *shes rab rgyal mtshan* (1292-1361), placed its major emphasis on the *Kalacakra Tantra* and on the doctrine of the *Tathagatagarbha*. Its followers were often regarded with suspicion, because they advocated certain opinions which as we will see, were considered as heterodox by the other schools (cf. p. 69). The most important figure of this school was *Taranatha* (born 1575).
The ‘Old Ones’ (rNying ma pa) still remain to be considered. They were so called to distinguish them from the ‘New Ones’ (gsar ma), that is the followers of the ‘new Tantras’, improved and selected after the second diffusion of the doctrine—the Tantras, that is, of the time after Rin chen bzang po and Atisa, and which had been declared valid by the great Sa skya pa commentators and by Bu ston.

The most eminent figure in the rNying ma pa tradition is Padmasambhava (Tib. Pad ma ’byung gnas, cf.p.5-7), a master regarded by them as a second Buddha. Many books were attributed to him, and were alleged to have been hidden by him or by his students in order to be rediscovered and diffused in later, more favourable times. This literary genre, which is extraordinarily rich in works, is called gter ma.

These extremely numerous gter ma were put into circulation at different periods. Each of them was supposedly found by one of a series of discoverers, on whom are bestowed the title of gter ston, ‘revealer of gter ma’. Often these discoverers claim not only to have found the texts, but also to have translated them into Tibetan. In these cases the texts in question were writings on rolled-up yellow leaves (hence the name thang yig, thang, rolled-up writing, scroll) in non-Tibetan languages, such as Sanskrit or the language of Uddiyana (Swat, the homeland of Padmasambhava). One of the most famous gter ston was Ori gnyan gling pa, to whom is ascribed the discovery, in Shel dkar, of the Pad ma thang yig, a book which contains a testament of King Khri srong lde brtsan (cf.p.7), and the narrative of the successive incarnations of Padmasambhava, along with his adventures in Tibet, and numerous prophecies. Ori gnyan gling pa also discovered the bKa’ thang sde lnga, a book consisting of five chapters. This latter work in particular is of great significance as it contains elements which are indubitably ancient, if much reworked. The Pad ma thang yig, on the other hand, was constantly revised, and therefore exists in various versions. It is not without interest that the most important gter ma, such as the two books mentioned, were ‘discovered’ and put into circulation at the time of the first Phag mo gru pa king (Ori gnyan gling pa is a contemporary of Byang chub rgyal mtsahan, died 1373, the founder of the political power of this family, cf.p.40). These texts cannot be separated from the cultural renaissance of which the Phag mo gru pa were creators and promoters, nor from the political aspirations of the region of Yar klungs where their power was centred. The distribution of the gter ma (which were believed to contain the teachings of Padmasambhava and of his divine and human assistants) naturally lent new prestige to the rNying ma pa sect, and an authority which corroborated its teachings, to such a degree that at this time the rNying ma pa Tantric texts were codified in a vast collection (the rNying ma rgyud
GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF LAMAISM

This collection represents a Tantric tradition independent from that regarded as valid by the other sects. This tradition too, and its introduction to Tibet, was ascribed to great Indian masters, contemporaries, collaborators or students of Padmasambhava.

This literature, including the gter ma, contains much inauthentic material, but also original texts and liturgical and magical elements to which parallels and analogues exist in the writings of the other schools, for they move in a circle of ideas which is similar although not the same as that of the other schools.

Apart from the gter ma, the most important basic text of the rNying ma pa is a famous Tantric scripture, the gSang ba snying po, in a translation made during the first period of the introduction of the doctrine. The rNying ma pa sect reached its apogee in the rDzogs chen school, whose most significant representatives were Nyang ral Nyi ma’od zer (born 1136), Gu ru Chos dbang (1212-73), and Klong chen pa (1308-63). The last of these is the translator of one of the most famous texts of the rDzogs chen, the commentary on the sNying thig, a text which was allegedly revealed at the time of Khri srong lde brsān by Vimalamitra to Myang Ting nge ’dzin.

The Zhi byed school, ‘the pacifiers’ or, better, ‘those who pacify suffering’ (sduṅ sngal zhi byed), originated with an ascetic from South India, Pha dam pa Sangs rgyas (died 1117), who visited Tibet no less than five times (in the course of his fifth journey he also visited China). One of the objectives of this school was the liberation of living beings from suffering in all its forms. The Zhi byed school produced a remarkable literature in the course of its development, but it eventually merged with the other schools. However, another school, known as gCod, which originated with the same master, survived successfully. Its teachings, which are based on the Phar phyin, were taught by Pha dam pa Sangs rgyas to sKyo ston bSod nams bla ma. It divided into two branches, ‘male good’ (pho good) and ‘female good’ (mo good). The latter was founded by a woman, Ma gcig Lab sgron ma (1055-1145), who owed her training to the same sKyo ston school; she was met by Pha dam pa on the occasion of his third journey to Tibet. Word of some scriptures of this school reached rDo rje gdan (Vajrasana), Bodhgaya in India; the books were said to have been brought there by Indian masters and translated into Sanskrit.

3 The conflicts between the schools and their significance for the political history of Tibet. The office of Dalai Lama

We have outlined above the most important tendencies within Tibetan Buddhism. The schools representing these tendencies were concerned
to continue in Tibet the tradition which had come from India, even if they were prepared to make compromises between the indigenous liturgical and mythological heritage and the ritual systems of India. These schools, as a totality, constitute the world of Lamaism, in all its various aspects. They were, however, also capable of intervening in the political life of the country in a decisive manner, and thus determining its history.

The entire story of Tibet is characterized by a contest between centrifugal forces on the one side and strivings for unity on the other. The divisive tendencies rest upon the antagonisms between the great families who possessed the estates and pastoral lands. A first attempt to unify the country was made by the dynasty which collapsed with Gl’ang dar ma; after it Tibet fell back into new division. The Sa skya pa school’s attempts at a second re-unification had some success, thanks to the favour which the Sa skya pa abbots enjoyed with the Yüan dynasty, but this was more an apparent hegemony than a case of real domination, since there were equally powerful forces at play opposed to the Sa skya pa, for instance the ’Brī gung pa. The myriarchies which the Mongols created were opposed to any centralized control or ambitions at overall power, and thus contained the seeds of a further dissolution. Monastic organizations took the place of the land-holding aristocracy, or allied themselves with them. In this way there came into being communities of interest, and also conflicts whose causes are not always to be sought only in odium theologicum; indeed religious differences were often only a pretext. The power of the abbots perceptibly came to replace that of the hereditary feudal nobility as a driving factor in the history of Tibet. The monasteries of the various sects became organizations both economic and political in nature, sometimes opposed to each other, sometimes united in temporary unions for specific ends, although always in reality guarding their independence. This development necessarily led to the aristocracy becoming, in an increasing degree, the secular arm of these powers, to whom they were bound by common interests. A new impulse towards hegemony is bound up with the name of Byang chub rgyal mtshan (died 1373), of the family of Phag mo gru pa. He began with a revolt against the Sa skya pa, who had lost their patrons and protectors with the fall of the Yüan dynasty. The Phag mo gru pa were originally bKa’ brgyud pa, but they were extremely eclectic with respect to religion, and were closely connected to the bKa’ gdam pa and the Sa skya pa also. They rapidly developed into a major power. However, they created the basis for a new fragmentation by assigning the hereditary office of governor (rdzong dpon) of the territories they had conquered to certain families who had assisted their rise to power. The Phag mo gru pa were dominant on both the secular and the
religious plane, and with them a double succession was customary, with the religious power being inherited on one side and the secular on the other. The two powers were, however, quite often united in the same person. Their hegemony was in fact restricted to only part of the country, to dBus (Central Tibet), the area where the dynasty which brought about the original unification of Tibet had emerged, and where the Phag mo gru pa too now centred their dynastic power. gTsang (West-Central Tibet), however, remained outside the realm of their power. Indeed it opposed the Phag mo gru pa’s strivings for dominance, placing itself behind the rulers of bSam grub rtse and siding with the Kar ma pa. The feud between dBus and gTsang, Central and West-Central Tibet (East Tibet stayed as yet outside this conflict) characterized the events of Tibetan history for two full centuries. During this period a steadily growing circle of leading families was led by deceptive hopes, or under pressure, to favour one or another faction. In the meantime the Yellow Sect was able to consolidate its position; at the time when bSod nams rgya mtsho (1543-88) converted the Mongol followers of Altan Khan, the office of Dalai Lama came into being.

The title of Dalai Lama was originally conferred by Altan Khan on bSod nams rgya mtsho, who then raised his predecessors dGe 'dun grub (1391-1475) and dGe 'dun rgya mtsho (1475-1542) retrospectively to the same dignity. These Lamas were regarded as successive rebirths of the same person, according to a theory further discussed in Chapter 5 (pp.134-5). The successive Dalai Lamas were also regarded as incarnations (sprul sku) of the Tantric god Avalokitesvara, thus building upon the Ma ni bka’ bum, a gter ma text dating probably from the fifteenth century in which Avalokitesvara is described as a kind of patron deity of Tibet, who had already appeared in incarnate form in Tibetan history, for example as King Khri srong lde brtsan. The fifth Dalai Lama, Blo bzang rgya mtsho (1617-82), was not only concerned with acquiring the widest possible recognition for his sect; he was also attempting to bring about a settlement of the internal strife that was devastating the land, and to re-establish its political unity, not indeed any longer under secular rule, but under the supremacy of the Dalai Lama himself.

In view of the weakness and internal disruption of the Phag mo gru pa regime, the Dalai Lama called in the help of the Qosot Mongols. This led to the murder of the king of gTsang, and the re-establishment of Tibetan unity through foreign assistance. The way had thus been opened for the interference of foreign powers in the fate of Tibet.

The prestige of the dGe lugs pa school (also called dGa’ ldan pa) received a new impulse in the time of the fifth Dalai Lama through the appearance of a second supreme spiritual dignitary alongside the Dalai Lama. This was the Pan chen (from the Sanskrit term Maha-
pandita, ‘great scholar’); his monastery was bKra’ shis lhun po. The Pan chen are re-incarnations too, in that the divine presence of 'Od dpag med (Skt. Amitabha, the god of Infinite Light) takes up his earthly dwelling in them. The theory of the Pan chen incarnations was introduced by the fifth Dalai Lama in order to raise the rank of Blo bzang Chos kyi rgyal mtshan (1570-1662). In this case too, retrospective validity was conferred upon the theory, and the series was held to begin with mKhas grub rje, so that Blo bzang Chos kyi rgyal mtshan became the fourth incarnation. As already indicated, this evolution indicated a noticeable growth of the prestige of the dGe lugs pa school, who now claimed as their own three supreme religious dignitaries: the Dalai Lama, the Pan chen and the Khris rin po che (dGa’ ldan khris pa) or grand abbot of dGa’ ldan. In the course of political events, however, dissensions frequently occurred between the Pan chen and the Dalai Lama, since the Pan chen were often not inclined to fall in with the political directives of the Dalai Lama, and preferred to guard their autonomy in the territory of gTsang, where they resided and enjoyed greater authority.

Sporadic and futile attempts at resistance took place now and again in subsequent years in this formerly so disrupted land, but in the period following the fifth Dalai Lama a sovereignty which could be described as theocratic became more and more consolidated. The highest governmental power (although restricted as a result of the long-lasting Chinese interference) was vested in the Dalai Lama. Numerous monasteries of other sects were confiscated. The aristocracy retained the privilege (and the obligation) of service in the government; the country was divided into prefectures, which were generally headed by two officials in each case, one civil and one religious. The centrifugal tendencies were stifled for ever, and all power concentrated in the Dalai Lama, at whose side there might, but did not necessarily, stand a kind of regent (sDe srid) and an advisory organization. All the same it can be stated that this development by no means led to a general climate of intolerance. While the dGe lugs pa school naturally enjoyed the greatest privileges, the other sects were allowed to live in peace, and their monasteries too continued to grow or to decline according to the degree of support from their adherents. If certain sects, like the rNyung ma pa, were to enjoy less popularity in the future in many parts of Tibet, everyone was nevertheless free to follow the school corresponding to his own convictions.

In this connection, one should not forget that the differences between particular schools were not always very deep. They resulted for the most part from particular features of the method for attaining salvation, from differing theoretical premises, from a preference towards a particular Tantra or from differences in interpreting the experiences
revealed by the Tantra in question. In some cases too there were emphases characteristic of particular schools and these only, as with logic (mtshan nyid), which was a principal discipline in religious education among the dGe lugs pa but did not, however, play the same role in other sects.

With respect to the numerous texts contained in the bKa’ ’gyur and the bsTan ’gyur, however, one cannot say that the same development took place in Tibet as in China, where various texts gave birth to quite different schools, each of which gradually took on a more and more clearly characterized independent existence, taking into themselves significant parts of Chinese thought. The texts preferred by the Tibetans were almost always the same. Tibetan exegesis was influenced in particular by the following: Prajna, Madhyamika, the works of Nagarjuna and of various followers and of Asanga and Haribhadra (who was not translated into Chinese), logic (in China only an elementary text by Dinnaga was translated), and other texts related to Prajna. Those schools concerned particularly with yoga, ascetic practices and mahamudra, like the rNying ma pa and bKa’ brgyud pa, devoted their attention especially to all the classes of Tantra.

In spite of such differences in detail, the most respected masters of most schools willingly agreed that disagreements of such kinds could never affect the unity of the faith. The multiplicity of opinions was to be understood as the co-existence of equally valid paths, one easier to negotiate while another is harder, one straight while another is indirect. All, however, lead to the one goal worthy of pursuing: ‘liberation from suffering’. Each individual in his particular life chooses the path which is the best and the most suitable (at least as it appears to him) but everyone is guided in such a choice by karmic conditions, which determine one’s greater or lesser spiritual maturity, one’s higher or lower ability to understand and to actualize the supreme truths taught by the Buddha.\textsuperscript{12}

Viewed in this light, the co-existence side by side of monasteries of different schools (chos lugs), which is fairly often found, makes sense, although those schools, such as the rNying ma pa and the Jo nang pa, which were considered as deviant by the dominant orthodoxy, were all the same excluded. In Gyantse the Sa skya pa, Zha lu pa and dGe lugs pa shared in the same sacred precinct, and similarly in Tsethang. Individual masters had no misgivings about visiting the most prominent scholars of other schools, who had made a name for themselves as highly valued representatives of a particular tradition of interpretation or of religious exercises. Tsong kha pa’s case can be taken as typical; he owed his doctrinal and spiritual training to visits to the most famous masters of his time, without any sort of prejudice with respect to their school.
GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF LAMAISM

4 The figure of the religious teacher (*bla ma*)

The preaching of the doctrine in Tibet was the work of numerous individuals originating from the most diverse parts of Buddhist Asia. Individual preachers were bound at that time by no control from a church or religious authority accepted as generally binding. Each considered himself the interpreter of a particular school of thought or liturgical method.

The considerable prestige of some teachers led to the development of various modes of tradition and oral transmission (*brgyud*), each expressed in a series of texts or specified exercise. The great number of interpreters who arose in this way was increased yet further by the individualistic tendency dominant throughout Mahayana Buddhism. The highest authority, as has already been said (cf. p. 22), is that of the master; he alone is in a position to make the teachings of the sacred texts accessible and to allow them to become operative. One glance at the Tibetan historical work *Deb ther sngon po* (No. 115) is enough to convince one of what has been said.

Lamaism, in its continuation and emphasis on the Indian tradition, places the figure of the master, *bla ma*, at the centre point. It should be noted here that not all monks, indeed relatively few in view of their great number, count as real *bla ma*. In the Indian tradition, in those schools which can be designated as magico-gnostic, whether Buddhist or Saivite, the master (Skt. *guru*) forms the pillar supporting the whole mystical experience. If Siva becomes angry (so the Saivite texts teach) 'then the guru can pacify him, but if the guru becomes angry, then no one can pacify him'. Similarly in Mahayana and Vajrayana Buddhism the *guru* (Tib. *bla ma*) is enabled, through living, direct contact, to transmit the letter and the spirit of the teaching, and to awaken the sparks out of which blaze forth the fire of mystical experience. The bond between master and disciple is a father-son relationship of a spiritual kind (*thugs sras*), and as such incomparably more important than the bonds of blood relationship. Master and disciple are called *yab sras*, father and son. This spiritual continuity linking master and disciple is called *sampradaya* in India, *brgyud* in Tibet; through it both become links in a chain which guarantees the continuing existence of the doctrine and of the mystical experience. Word (*lung*) and power (*dbang*) are transmitted from the one to the other in their indissoluble unity. Words and experiences are passed on like living things, in accordance with the norms of _govatsanyaya_ holding among Indian ascetics, that is, like the 'vital link between the cow and the calf nourished and raised on its mother's milk'.

An instruction based simply on the written word, without the participation of a *bla ma*, is not only ineffective; it can even lead one...
away from the right path and be destructive.

If this chain is broken, then the teaching, now contained only within the texts, loses its efficacy; it has become like a corpse, and no power in the world can assist it to new life and to new validity. In the figure of the master, of the bla ma, two functions then are joined, although both aspects are rendered by the same word and can be united in the same person. On the one hand the bla ma transmits the word (lung), he passes on the teaching; on the other hand the bla ma is the master who confers power (dbang) through initiation or consecration (also dbang). In India too we meet alongside the siksa-guru, the master of the teaching, the diksa-guru, the master of the initiation.

In certain special cases the revelation can take place in a dream, or by direct communication on the part of a deity. We should not be surprised at this; the dream has a special significance in the mystical experience of every religion, and most particularly in Hinduism and Buddhism.

In Lamaism then there are always two sides to be distinguished. One is the world of religion, of monasteries and hermits, interested according to school or inclination in doctrine or liturgy, in ascetic practices or yoga, subject to fixed rules, practised in the teachings and the rituals, introduced through the initiations into mystical experiences. On the other side, outside such a communal life, stands the lay world. Outside it, but linked with it in the closest possible manner; it breathes the same religious and spiritual air. Of the three sets of vows (sdom) which can be taken, those of monastic discipline (so thar), of the Thought of Enlightenment (byang chub sems), and of the initiatory formulae (sngags), the first is reserved to the monk. In so far as the layman (ji ge ri pa) lives in the midst of the world, he is not able to obtain and develop that particular religious experience accessible only to those who have chosen the monastic life and received ordination. The life of the layman is therefore a preparation for the life to come, or for the attainment of paradise. He should be preoccupied above all with the accumulation of merits, merits obtained through the worship of the 'Three Jewels' (dkon mchog gsum; Buddha, Doctrine, Community) and the taking of refuge in them, and also through the vow to strive for supreme Enlightenment—the necessary prerequisite to be able to count as a follower of the Great Vehicle.

Certainly the dividing line which results from the taking of initiatory vows, and compliance with traditional disciplinary procedures (so thar, Skt. pratimoksa), always remained between the layman and the monk. If however these consecrations separated the layman from the monk (for all the diversity of the monastic community (rab 'byung) itself) the observance of the ethical norms sanctified by Buddhism of old brought about a certain softening in the everyday life of the
Tibetan. These precepts, consisting of the five ‘abstentions’ (not to kill, not to steal, not to speak falsely, not to commit adultery, not to become intoxicated) are valid without exception for both the lay follower (dge bsen, Skt. upasaka) and the monk in the older tradition.

In the following period, the more tolerant Mahayana rules gradually prevailed. The Mahayana places the main emphasis on the vow to strive for Enlightenment, and it is therefore also defined as the Vehicle of the Thought of Enlightenment (byang chub thugs). The Mahayana precepts establish three basic moral norms: the vow of abstention from evil, the accumulation of good works (dge ba chos sdom), and activity for the welfare of all living beings (sems can don byed). These norms are valid for the layman as well as for the monk. For the monk, these three norms are merged with those of the monastic discipline. According to the Esoteric Vehicle (sNgags thugs), the Vajrayana, these norms are actualized simultaneously in individuals of a superior disposition, through a spontaneous, free acceptance (Indrabhuti is cited as the classical example); in those of a lower nature they are achieved more gradually. Thus it comes about that the vows of chastity and of abstention from meat and alcoholic drinks are not imposed even on the monks themselves in all schools.
FOUR

THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

1 Assumptions common to all schools

In spite of the difference which we have referred to, the schools are entirely in agreement on many points. Which are these?

The existence of suffering,¹ and man’s consequent desire to overcome this suffering and to reach the state referred to as ‘liberation’ (thar pa, nam par thar pa), is the point of departure, and a fundamental premise. Liberation coincides with omniscience, which represents a limiting state (mihar thug), because only he who has attained omniscience has overthrown the plane of illusory existence and thereby found himself on that other plane where omniscience, truth and reality merge into one. This goal, however, cannot be reached as long as the ‘means’ leading to liberation are not known, or are not applied correctly.

The world of our perceptions and experience (in this connection it is all the same whether it is conceived of as real or, after deeper investigation, seen as ‘void’ (stong pa) and without any essence of its own) can be reduced to elementary factors, point-moments called chos (skt. dharma), separate from one another, but connected to the momentary content of the process of perception. Their true nature, which is that they are an ephemeral illusion, is revealed only to ‘higher cognition’ (shes rab, cf. pp. 62-3). Higher cognition is the penetrating to, and cognizing of, the true nature of these appearances, of these forms created by our discursive knowledge, these products of a false dichotomy (nam par rtog) between subject and object. Only this higher form of cognition can eliminate the defilements or imperfections (nyon mong) which obstruct the way to liberation, whether they be inborn or acquired, of a moral or of a spiritual nature. The most important basis for this process of liberation is the Doctrine, the Law (chos) revealed by the Buddha. This Law, however, is not just to be accepted simply as it is, but to be thought through and argued out in one’s mind, so that each person who takes this Law upon himself must be clearly aware of its true
meaning. The dialectical process which leads to the liberating state of cognition is based upon the sacred texts (lung) on the one hand and critical examination (rig) on the other. The cognitive state must be combined with a particular mode of life and of action. This practical aspect of the path is defined by two complementary factors: that which is to be accepted and followed (blang) and that which is to be renounced or abandoned (’dor). Thus the way to liberation starts off from several basic factors: a particular way (lta) of seeing and understanding things, and a way of behaving (spyod) appropriate to the goal to be achieved, in other words the meditation (sgom) through which that goal is to be transformed into lived experience. All this requires a method, a ‘path’ (lam) to be followed, which is able to bring together in a harmonious form the individual ethical, cognitive and meditative elements which lead to the desired goal. Each system (grub mtha’) and each school has the task of bringing together in an organic whole, of testing and examining these individual elements, of investigating their mutual relationships, of evaluating their validity and accuracy by reference to tradition and the words of the Buddha; in short, of creating a conclusive interpretation. The final objective remains the awakening of that higher cognition, that shes rab, Skt. prajna, in the adept’s consciousness, which enables him to survey the ultimate nature of all things with the clarity of direct insight; in other words, the transcending of the subject–object dichotomy.

What then is the special nature of the Tibetan Buddhist view of the world? It has four main elements. (1) Everything is connected to everything else, nothing has individual permanence. (2) All things and all concepts (except those arising from the Doctrine) are causes and consequences of suffering, and are indissolubly bound up with suffering. They continually give new nourishment to suffering, in that they cause and promote the continuation of existence. (3) All the things and concepts that we think of as real, before we attain spiritual and intellectual maturity, are without true existence, are mutually bound to each other, and therefore ‘void’ (stong pa). (4) There exists a state beyond suffering and beyond the world of appearance which has fallen to our lot and to which we remain attached for as long as we do not perceive our true nature. This state beyond the world of appearance is nirvana. This term refers to a situation which is beyond description, beyond both ordinary existence (srid) and that state of peaceful detachment (zhi) attainable in certain moments of meditation (srid zhi gnys mtha' dang brag). It is the supreme, irreversible identification with that state which is called Buddhahood.

When we have acquired this fourfold certainty, our whole life must be transformed in accordance with it. As will be recalled, the taking of refuge in the Buddha, the Teaching and the Community stands at the
beginning of this path. This taking of refuge divides the Buddhist from the non-Buddhist. This must be followed by the awakening within oneself of constant energy (brson ’grus), and its application for the fulfilment of the obligations which have arisen from the recognition of the fourfold truth; obligations both concerning what must be done (blang) and what must be renounced (’dor). As a third step there follows the decision (nges par ’byung) to overcome the world of relativity, suffering and impermanence, and along with this decision the taking of the vow to strive for Enlightenment (byang chub sms bskyed). This solemn promise has the power to bring about, in the distant future, the transformation of the believer into a Bodhisattva, into a potential Buddha, provided that the believer continues to think and act in accordance with the obligations arising from the vow. Above all, the vow does not allow him to be concerned only for his personal salvation (rang don) as is characteristic of the Lesser Vehicle (theg dman, Skt. Hinayana); he must work also for the salvation of others (gzhon don). This is the path unique to the Great Vehicle (theg chen, Skt. Mahayana), and which distinguishes it fundamentally from the Lesser Vehicle. The latter did not find a favourable environment in Tibet and never spread there. The Great Vehicle represents the second revelation of the Doctrine, especially in its condensation in the Phar phyin scriptures (Skt. Prajnaparamita). This stage is followed, but only for the most mature individuals, by the revelation of the gnostic–magical vehicle, the Tantra (rgyud), the vehicle of sNgags (Skt. mantra), also called rDo rje theg pa (Skt. Vajrayana), the Diamond Vehicle. This division into vehicles is based on the construction of the path of the Teachings in successive stages in accordance with the moral, intellectual and karmic qualifications of the initiates.

The assumption of a clear or correct view (yang dag lta) is characteristic of the Great Vehicle. This view is that of the Madhyamika system (dbu ma). The principle of a correct view, implicitly contained in the Phar phyin (Prajnaparamita) scriptures, was placed by Nagarjuna at the centre of his doctrinal system. It states that all that can be thought and known is relative and 'void', is not Being-in-itself; this inability to qualify the apparent world is itself its transcendence. This certainty becomes an experience unfolded in five phases or 'paths': (1) The path of the 'accumulation of virtue' (tshogs lam), forming an indispensable preparation, the overcoming of the moral and intellectual defilements which are inborn in us and grow steadily in the course of our lives. A purifying ethical practice and intellectual understanding are required to counterbalance these defilements. (2) The phase of practice (sbyor lam), of the putting into practice of the truth postulated by the Mahayana, of reflection over the previous path and on the path to be entered upon in order to achieve Buddhahood, that final stage to
which the thought of Enlightenment should lead us. A precondition
for this is the inner realization of the Bodhisattva state by means of
successive and always more complete purifications, the so-called
‘Earths’ or ‘ascensions’. This practice takes place in two parallel
phases which are however indissolubly united: (3) The phase of vision
(mthong lam) and (4) The phase of meditative refinement (sgom lam),
by means of two modalities which finally coincide, peaceful detachment
(zhi gnas) and higher vision (thag mthong).

Aside from these four phases, and beyond them, there exists a
further phase, (5) The state of he who no longer needs to learn (mi
slob), of the Buddha. This is the path which gradually leads to the
tenth ‘Earth’, at which all defilements are dissolved, including the
most subtle (defilements are divided into two groups, heavy, gross
(rag) and subtle (phra)), and the attainment of the state of Buddhahood
is thus prepared for. Thus far we are taken by the Phar phyin scriptures
and by their doctrinal commentary (Madhyamika, dbu ma) and the
practical handbooks of meditation based upon them. As already
mentioned, the growing spread of the Tantric schools of the various
streams of Buddhist thought introduced a further problem. How was
the Tantric–gnostic experience to be incorporated into the doctrine?
The Buddha, it was said, had preached the doctrine not only at
Bodhgaya (Lesser Vehicle) and at the Vulture Peak, Ghadrakuta
(Great Vehicle); there exist also many other preachings, some on this
earth, others in the paradieses, in which the Buddhas, whether
Sakyamuni, rNam par snang mdzad (Vairocana), Kun tu bzang po
(Samantabhadra) or many others, have revealed the doctrine of
salvation.

2 The vehicle of the Mantra

Thus to the revelation granted in the Phar phyin (Prajnaparamita)
followed that of the esoteric formulæ (sngags, Skt. mantra), in other
words of the Tantras. The concept of Tantra includes a literature and
a totality of experiences described in detail in the books bearing this
title. In my writings I have referred to these currents, whether they be
Buddhist or Hindu, as ‘gnostic’, for they present numerous traits in
common with the gnostic schools, for example the bringing into being
of an esoteric wisdom which is not intellectual cognition, but rather
an ecstatic, blissful consciousness, the actualization of which is aided
by liturgical ceremonies having the power to release the emotional
impulses which are to renovate and transform the individual. Thus
the individual attains step by step to a higher plane of existence. This
process, thanks to the actualization which has been referred to, takes
place within the individual himself and exclusively on the basis of his own powers and his own will, without any assistance from divine acts of grace. The literature concerning this process, and the actions prescribed within it, are surrounded by secrecy and closed to the non-initiate. There arises therefore the imperative need for an initiation, and of an overcoming through this initiation of inborn or acquired ignorance, of an ever more perfect conquest of every dichotomy. The Tantras, all the Tantras, offer their assistance in this process, thanks to a revelation of the Buddhas, transmitted through direct teaching from master to master. In schools of this kind extremely ancient mythical elements are called into service to indicate in symbolic form the various phases of the ascent; throughout the preparatory or liturgical procedure there occurs the momentary apotheosis of mystical states, or even of individual factors in the ritual. If we hold the opinion, on these and other grounds, that Tantrism can be considered as forming part of the gnostic movement, we are not in this way maintaining that it is a kind of offshoot of the gnostic currents of the West, although it is difficult to deny the possibility, even the fact, of mutual influence between Western and Eastern gnosticism. Essentially it is a question rather of homologous attitudes, of the effort, in both East and West, to substitute a lived experience of salvation for purely rational processes, to transcend the spatio-temporal experience through a flight into absolute space, and absolute time, an *ex cessu mentis* into the indefinable 'Void' which contains all. It should however be born in mind too that the content of the Tantra has by no means been exhausted by what has been said. There are also purely magical elements to be found in the Tantra, as in much Western gnosticism also (e.g. *Pistis sophia*), elements that indicate the close links between Tantrism on the one side, and popular traditions uninfluenced by orthodox theological schools on the other side. Such aspirations have been particularly active at times of political and social crises, at times of breakdown of traditional values, when the longing in men for contact with the divine and for faster paths to salvation becomes manifest. The Tantras of the 'superior class' are above all addressed to men in whom non-religious impulses, especially those of a sexual nature, are at their most powerful. These practices have the goal of bringing about a 'transfer' of emotions, of becoming free of passion through passion, through a psychological technique anticipating the latest achievements of psychoanalysis. The ordinary man is born from desire ('*dod chags*) and bound to desire, yet desire can become a means to liberation. With the help of the Tantra the passions can be changed into forces assisting in the work of salvation (No.101, p.13b).

It should be held in mind that the path of the *Phar phyin* (Prajnaparamita) and of the Tantra differ in two ways. In the first place, there...
THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

is an external difference, concerning the lesser or greater difficulty of the training, and consequently the shorter or longer duration of the corresponding path (lam). While the followers of the Phar phyin require two or three incalculably long aeons (Skt. asamkhyeya) to attain the state of Buddhahood, he who chooses the way of sNgags can achieve it even within a single life. There is also an internal distinction; many commentators define the Phar phyin as the Vehicle of the Cause, in other words as a propaedeutic vehicle, in that it explains the necessary premises to achieve the ‘fruit’, revealing that they consist of the four supreme purities corresponding to the Earth of the Buddha. However this vehicle does not offer the possibility of enjoying the ‘fruit’ while one is traversing the ‘path’, in other words in this individual existence (gzhi). The vehicle of Tantra or Mantra (also called the Vehicle of the Means, thabs, or the Diamond (rdo rje) Vehicle) is by contrast the Vehicle of the Fruit (’bras). But this vehicle in its turn is also the cause, in that it leads to the immediate enjoyment of the ‘fruit’, which is represented in the form of the four supreme purities attainable at the end of the ascent, during the journey, in other words during the meditation practice in this very existence.

It still remains to explain what these supreme purities of the Earth of the Buddha consist of, what is meant by the ‘fruit’ to be attained, and also by what means these purities can be experienced during the process of purification through the help of the Tantric vehicle. First it should be said that there are three essential phases in the process of purification: the phase or state in which the meditator is reflected in his ordinary nature (gzhi dus); the phase of the ‘path’, or of the meditation process, in which the meditation proceeds according to the prescribed methods (lam dus); the phase of the ‘fruit’ (’bras dus), of the state to be achieved as a result of the experience. Here we speak of a ‘meditation process’, because we are concerned with situations which are realized within the meditating subject himself. It must however, be kept in mind that from the standpoint of the experience realized as a whole, these situations can no longer be localized either in space or time, because space and time belong to the apparent world, which does not exist. These situations are destined to dissolve into a non-temporal transcendence. Both the experience granted in the phase of the ‘path’ and in the phase of the ‘fruit’ consist of a coinciding with pure consciousness, in respect of which none of our categories of thinking can be applied. In this essential reality there is no duality between a Here and a There, between a Now and a Later; such a dichotomy is only a fleeting, unreal rippling of waves over the immobile radiance of that consciousness without content. The dichotomies are always unreal appearances (snang), but they manifest themselves in infinite gradations and qualities, from the dichotomies
of the world in which we exist to those which manifest themselves progressively on the path of ecstasies.

With respect to the two groups of problems still to be discussed the following can now be said:

A  The four purities

The four supreme purities are the following: (1) purity of the Earth of the Buddha, realized through transcendent consciousness (ye shes), consciousness which illuminates itself; (2) supreme purity of the maya-body (sgyu ma’i sku, sgyu lus, cf. pp. 56, 58): coincidence (zung ‘jug) of the plane of things having form (gzugs) with the spiritual plane (sku thugs gnyis su med). This is not a physical body belonging to the sphere of the material (gzugs, Skt. rupa), but an image; (3) supreme purity of co- fruition (longs sphyad), the peak of bliss (bde), transcendent consciousness free from impurity (zag med ye shes); (4) supreme purity, supreme excellence of action, thanks to which one is continually pre-occupied with the good of others whose salvation is thus made possible.

B  The experience of the four purities

(1) First purification must be attained by traversing the common path (thun mong) which the Phar phyin also recognizes. Then the yogin (Tib. rnal ’byor pa), who is now traversing the Tantric path (sNgags), must progress through a multiplicity of experiences, always following the methods and the successive stages of the Tantra chosen by him as guide. This choice of a particular Tantra is not made at random, but in conformity with the master’s decision and the master’s testing of the intellectual and spiritual maturity of the disciple. The mystic perceptibly frees himself from the illusory appearances, creations of discursive and dichotomizing cognition, which are at work in the empirical world (the world (snang) which erroneously appears as real), reflected in infinite combinations which bring about ever deeper entanglement with it. The neophyte purifies himself by virtue of the certainty which he has attained through experience: that every possible aspect of thought, whether it be of the external world, or of the world of creatures that live within that world (snod bcud) is nothing but ‘voidness’ (stong pa). This ‘voidness’ is the essence of wisdom, it is the non-duality ‘of the profound and the radiant’. Its forms are the purified worlds that can be seen and enjoyed in the meditation process, the supreme purification of the ‘bliss-bringing Buddha-Earths’: in them the Buddhas preach to choirs of the blessed. Such purification, which is otherwise achieved as the ‘fruit’ or result, is here
anticipated and lived during the phase of the ‘path’; these ‘Earths’ are contemplated in the glory of paradise, as for example the paradise of bDe ba can (Skt. Sukhavatī) and many others, according to their traditional descriptions.

(2) In the next stage the yogin sees the dissolution of his present body (gzhi dus), the result of karmic maturation, into the ‘Void-Light’ (’od gsal, stong pa nyid).

Thus the yogin already experiences Buddhahood in a transitory way while going along the ‘path’; the same Buddhahood, recognizable through its characteristic marks, its ten associated powers and so on, which is then attained in the ‘fruit’ phase. Pursuing his meditation further, the mystic takes part in another exalted state of insight, in which he recognizes three certainties within himself: with respect to his body, the certainty that it is capable of transformation into the deity; with respect to his speech, the certainty that it is the sacred formula, the Mantra (Tib. sNgags) of miraculous power, conclusive in its sonority and infinite in its power; with respect to his mind, that it is infinite spiritual potentiality. By virtue of these certainties he lives during the ‘path’ phase that which he will attain in the ‘fruit’ phase, the limiting state of bodily existence: for example the body of ’Od dpag med (Skt. Amitabha), which is the synthesis of two limiting states (mthar thug), the purity of the maya-body with its appropriate signs and marks in the clarity of the sams, which in its essential nature is the same as the light (don gyi ’od gsal).

(3) The mystic dissolves into the ‘void’ the real or imagined ritual objects and instruments. After he has changed himself into a god, he emanates these objects from his mind until they fill the whole of space. In this way these ritual accessories reveal themselves as what they are, in other words a form of transcendent consciousness, through which an unlimited capacity for ‘bliss’ is released. Although this power represents the condition and end-result of the process, it is here already experienced during the ‘path’ phase.

(4) Finally the yogin radiates from his deified self an infinite quantity of light which spreads out through space and alleviates the sufferings of living beings. Indeed the beings themselves are transformed into gods and goddesses which emanate from his transcendent consciousness (ye shes tsha and tsha mo). Then the mystic reabsorbs the rays of light into himself again, dissolving them into his heart. This stage is very important, because it is thanks to its repeated exercise that the mystic achieves the supreme purity of ‘action’, the fullness of which opens to living beings the path of liberation. The purity of ‘action’, which otherwise comes to maturity as a ‘fruit’ of the state of Buddhahood, is here experienced as a stage of the ‘path’.

If we take into account what was stated above (p.52), we can state
that the experience of the four supreme purities during the 'path' phase does not only represent an anticipation of their actualizing in the 'fruit' phase. Through prolonged and continuous practice, rather, this experience becomes a preparation and preliminary training for the 'fruit' phase, in that it brings to life a new level within the neophyte. Here we are dealing with a fundamental feature of the Mantra (Tib. \textit{sNgags}) vehicle. It uses meditative, contemplative, psycho-physical and yogic techniques to evoke in its disciples a state of ecstasy and of transcendence thanks to which the state of consciousness proper to Buddhahood is experienced, if only in a temporary way. At the same time it is also a kind of confirmation (or better preliminary testing) of the goodness of the 'fruit', a participation in the supreme glory and power that is proper to the Buddha realized within this life-realized while still on this side of that outermost limit, beyond which exists the inexpressible luminous essence, the Alpha and Omega of all things.

The advantage of the Mantra (Tib. \textit{sNgags}) path over the way of rationality emerges clearly from what has been said; while the latter requires an extremely long period of time for the attainment of the goal, the former offers the shortest path for the achievement of Buddhahood.

Schematic summary of the two paths

\textbf{A Path of the Prajnaparamita (phar phyin)}

The Prajnaparamita, the fundamental text on which is based the Madhyamika (Tib. \textit{dbu ma}) elaborated by Nagarjuna, is centred upon the lack of essential nature in itself of all things related to others and of the dichotomizing process of our thought. Other central concepts: the person as made up of five components (\textit{phung po}); sense-organ, sense-perception, sense-object, organ or activity of apperception or of apprehending (\textit{manas}, Tib. \textit{yid}), vow to achieve enlightenment, Buddhahood. It is meritorious, however, to remain a Bodhisattva because in that way one can contribute through example or preaching to the conversion of others, and to propagate the Buddhist Doctrine.

Observance of 6 or 10 'perfections' (Skt. \textit{paramita}): generosity, patience etc.; method of meditation, contemplation and concentration which gradually ascends becoming more complex and complete, allowing he who follows it with vigilant and attentive mind to pass gradually from one to another of the ten states called Earths (\textit{bhumi}, Tib. \textit{sa}); each of which represents a state of purity and spiritual achievement superior to the preceding one; with the achievement of
the tenth Earth the omniscience of the Buddha, the essence of the Buddha, the Dharma is actualized; the meditation which brings about such an ascent is very complex, but is carried out through a bhavana (Tib. sgom), a continued meditative exercise which produces a gradual, progressive and gradually more refined spiritual and mental cultivation through a dialectical process centred about two principal phases: samatha (Tib. zhi gnas) 'spiritual serenity' and vipasyana (Tib. lhag mthong) 'superior vision'.

B Path of Mantra

A

Individual in his psycho-physical reality located in a particular time and place (gzhi dus).

1 material body (rag pa'i lus): sens + 5 components of the personality, sense-organs, related perceptions, mental functioning, faculty of cognition (yid, Skt. manas).

2 subtle body (phra mo): channels (rtsa, Skt. nadi) through which move the power of vibration (rlung, Skt. prana) and the subtle (phra mo) sens.

3 most subtle body and sens (shin tu phra pa'i lus and sens) called the innate body (gnayug ma'i lus) and the innate sens (gnayug ma'i sens).

4 body of mental cognition, yid lus (in state of dreaming or of intermediate existence (bar do), a modification of body and sens in a more subtle (phra pa) state).

B

Path (lam) towards the process of exaltation achieved in part by the method of evocation (bskyed rim) and in part by the method of achievement (rdzogs rim).

1 isolation of the body (lus dben) followed by the five stages of the method of achievement (rdzogs rim)

2 isolation of the sens; at this stage one attempts to discover what the sens actually is (ngo bo); together with meditation on the Light (sens); its real nature is not revealed, but rather its reflex (or better its germinal state, dpe 'od gsal).

3 meya-body (sgyu lus), transformation of the innate power of vibration (gnayug ma'i llung) and the innate sens.

4 (a) body of transcendent consciousness (ye shes pa'i lus); ye shes = sens shin tu phra mo, extremely subtle sens; such a body is awareness of its own true nature, transcendent consciousness. (b) light in its absolute reality (four degrees); don gyi 'od gsal.
THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

5 convergence (zung ’jug) of the maya-body (sgyu lus) and of light in its absolute reality (don gyi ’od gsal), pure maya-body (dag pa’i sgyu lus), diamond body (rodo rje sku), light in its absolute reality (don gyi ’od gsal).

C

Effect or fruit

Chos sku, body of infinite spiritual potentiality.
longs sku, body of co-fruition in the paradises etc., as with the five Buddhas of the pentad preaching in their various paradises.
sprul sku, apparent body, in the phenomenal world as with Sakyamuni.

3 Investiture and consecrations

Before the process summarized above is discussed in detail, we still have to describe how the practice of Tantra or sNgags is actually performed. It is absolutely necessary to have previously undergone the preparatory school of the vehicle of the Phar phyin, which is addressed, as seen above, primarily to the intellectual faculties. To this must still be added two things of decisive significance: an appropriate spiritual investiture, which can be described as a consecration (dbang), and a body of rules (dam sdom) resulting from that investiture.

The neophyte obtains the investiture through a ritual performance centred around the symbol of a particular god. From this moment on it is his duty to meditate on the visible aspect (sku) of this god as specified by the tradition, and to follow strictly the path corresponding to this special meditation, striving throughout in all ways to actualize the appropriate mystical experiences (dngos grub). The various ‘consecrations’ can be reduced to four principal types. They concern the defilements and contaminations accumulated in us through the three ‘doors’ of body, speech and mind (lus, ngag, and jid), which make up the psycho-physical totality on the un purified level (on the purified level they are described by the corresponding ‘honorific terms’, sku, gsung, thugs). These three kinds of defilement in their turn can be seen as particular aspects of defilement itself. In this way we can speak of four defilements, which correspond to the four principal consecrations. Each of these gives to the consecrated person the ability to purify himself from the corresponding defilement, an ability which he did not previously possess. These consecrations are called bum dbang, gsang dbang, shes rab ye shes kyi dbang and tshig gi dbang: investiture through the ‘vessel’, investiture through the secret, investiture of transcendent consciousness through higher cognition (this is a con-
juncture of the first two investitures in the sense that the second is actualized at a higher level, while the first has not yet attained its limiting scale) and investiture through the word.

The investiture through the ‘vessel’ purifies the defilements adhering to the body. This consecration confers the power for carrying out the process of evocation (bskyed rim, cf. pp. 94-5) during the ‘path’ phase, it sows a seed, creates a receptivity for the obtaining of the body of manifestation (sprul sku, Skt. nirmanakaya), which is actualized in the result phase, and thanks to which the Buddhas can carry out their mission of teaching in the world—as in the epiphany of Sakyamuni.

The second investiture conveys the ability to eradicate the defilements adhering to the power of speech. During the ‘path’ phase it makes one able to meditate on the maya-body (Tib. sgyu lus, cf. below), an attainment acquired through the ‘method of achievement’ (rdzogs rim, cf. p. 75); the seed is thus sown for the body of co-fruitation (longs sbyod sku, Skt. sambhogakaya), which appears in the result phase and becomes a reality in the paradises, where the Buddhas silently, eternally reveal the doctrine of salvation to the elect.

The third investiture brings about the ability to overcome the defilements attaching to the mind (yid). During the ‘path’ phase it gives the power of meditation on the radiant light (’od gsal = ye shes). This meditation takes place in the ‘method of achievement’ and sows the seeds of the body of infinite spiritual potentiality (chos sku, Skt. dharma kaya), which again is actualized in the ‘fruit’ phase.

The fourth investiture confers the ability to eliminate defilement as such, in other words to remove the contamination per se which is at the base of the three named types of defilement. During the ‘path’ phase it becomes the meditation on the ‘method of achievement’ (rdzogs rim) which culminates in the convergence (zung ’jug) of light (’od gsal) and of the maya-body, and thus brings about the seeds of that Body into which the other bodies dissolve (ngo bo nyid kyi sku). This is the absolute realization of convergence, the ineffable identity of which was spoken, the consciousness of Being-in-itself which becomes reality in the ‘fruit’ phase. This signifies that the four consecrations create a disposition for the attainment of the three existential states and for their dissolution into the indissoluble unity of Consciousness and Light.

4 The Tantric process of transcendence: mental body, maya-body, body of transcendent consciousness

Our repeated reference to the maya-body (sgyu lus) leads us here to consider a very important point: the existence of a body of very fine
substance, distinct from the material body composed of the five psycho-physical components (phung po etc.), but inherent within it, which represents the continuity between the different possible forms of existence of the individual.5

Within the material body, in which the vibration of life and the *sems* are present in their coarse state, is present an innate body, the gnyug ma'i lus, which the material body supports and sustains. This innate body is not of coarse material nature, but is a psycho-physical complex sui generis, consisting of a breathing or fine vibratory power (rlung) which tends to expand outwards into the realm of objective things; it is the vehicle of a mental energy (gnyug ma'i sems) which perceives objects, unleashing the dichotomizing faculty I—Not I. Although rlung and sems are of the same nature (ngo bo), in that they inhere in one another, they have different effects; their relation is like that between fire and flame, or fire and warmth.

These two principles (sems and rlung) are the true shapers of human destiny; of the two, sems is the more important. Sems is described as the creator (byed po) of samsara, of the unending cycle of successive births and deaths, but it is also the creator of that which is beyond (‘das) samsara. This is because it is on the one hand the instrument of objectification, but on the other has the capacity to transcend itself, in other words to change into transcendent consciousness (ye shes) and in this way through the attainment of pure consciousness to transcend duality (No.84, p.11a).

This transcendent consciousness emanates from a mental body (yid lus), which in its described structure travels from life to life, driven by its karmic inheritance (las) and by the defilements (nyon mong) which burden it. In terms of its nature it cannot be distinguished from the innate mind (gnyug ma'i sems). The yogin can transform this yid lus into a body of transcendent cognition (ye shes lus) through his meditation, experience and practice. The distinction between the two can be compared to that between earth and a vessel; the vessel, made from earth, having earth as its material basis, is however not identical with earth, it has a different function and destination. Besides, the yid lus is ‘contaminated’ (zag boas), it experiences pleasant and painful sensations, and also it owns as a body numerous demonic beings, or rather conditions of being endowed only with this corporeality (such as the demons ‘dre and the gods lha). By contrast the body of transcendent consciousness (ye shes lus) is free from any kind of defilement (zag med), and it is not perceptible to an ordinary man. Although the wish to work for the benefit of one’s neighbour, as prescribed by the Mahayana, can be present within the yid lus, it is not free to give itself up to this impulse, for it is bound and hindered by the force of karma. The body of transcendent consciousness (ye shes lus) by contrast is free to
accomplish good, as in the case of the great ascetics. As we will see, it abandons the body to its fate at the moment of death, for it is able to ascend to the Pure Lands (zhing khams, Paradises) or alternatively to descend to the Impure Places, into the hells, in order to accomplish its task of the salvation of beings.

For a better understanding of this complex of ideas it should be noted that in light sleep and at the moment of death the vibratory power born together with the sens produces the yid lus. The yid lus becomes autonomous during sleep, since the six forms of sensory experience (ram par shes pa) are inactive, and also at death, when these forms of sensory experience dissolve into the faculty of perception (yid ram par shes pa), in individuals who have not undergone the practice of liberation. The mechanism of this process is conditioned by the different relationships in which the vibratory potentiality of the breath of life (rilung) and the sens stand in juxtaposition to each other, according to which one or the other factor acts as primary cause (dngos rnyer len) or as contributory cause (than cig byed rkyen). This mechanism, summarized in the Appendix to this chapter (pp.106ff), takes on an even more complex form during the moment of Enlightenment because of the shining out of the radiance (od gsal) proper to the sens.

Both sens and the breath of life or vibratory power in the subtle state have their seat in the so-called ‘point’ (thig le, cf.p.262) which is visualized as being in the heart, of the size of a sesame seed, and which signifies absolute potentiality. Sens and vibratory power are the precondition of the maya-body (sgyu lus), which can purify itself to become the body of transcendent consciousness (ye shes lus) when through contemplative practice the continuum of consciousness is cleansed. This practice is divided into the two phases already mentioned: peaceful detachment (zhi gnas, Skt. samatha) and higher vision (thag mthong, Skt. vipasyana). For the disciples of the special (thung mong ma yin pa) path of Tantra this purification is accomplished through the four consecrations mentioned above (cf.p.57) and the exercise of two methods: that of evocation and that of achievement (bskyed rim, rdzogs rim).

In this connection it is necessary to respect the wide range of expressions used by Tibetan theory and mysticism to indicate the various instruments, aspects and stages of the cognitive process and of the transformation and transcendence which are gradually brought about. The point of departure is naturally formed by the five modes of perception (the five ram par shes pa) which come together and are integrated in the faculty of mental perception or apprehension (yid ram par shes pa). This latter faculty transforms the perceptions as it apprehends them and thus forms a sixth sense. (Other schools also introduce the ‘store-consciousness’, kun gzhi, Skt. alayavijnana, a kind
of unconscious both collective and individual, an inexhaustible substratum in which all experiences are deposited and from which they emerge again; they also speak of 'contaminated' perception, nyon mongs mam par shes pa.) Yid is synonymous with sems when sems is in its crude state and not yet capable of transcendence. From this sems originate mental and psychic states and reactions (sems byung). As already explained, sems cannot be separated from the very subtle breath which penetrates through our entire body, the vibratory power of the purest kind (the same in essence and kind as the universal respiration or breathing), which can be considered as the 'mount' of the sems itself.

This sems or mental energy is transmuted into transcendent consciousness (ye shes) as a result of a transformation caused by particular states or moments of thought. These are moments essentially permeated by a conviction which accomplishes within them an overcoming (nges par 'byung) of this illusory world, a liberation. In other words: the breath of finest nature which vibrates in us and the sems which is inborn (gnyug ma) in us are identical in nature (ngo bo), and co-exist in all of us in every moment of samsara. As a result of meditation and practice the maya-body (sgyu lus) is achieved, the vibration and the mind-light coincide. In the course of further practice the maya-body is transformed into a pure body, the limiting state of bodily existence. The light becomes pure consciousness (thugs dag), in other words it is transformed into the limiting state of essential light (don 'od gsal), which is experienced in its immediate character and is therefore different from that light (dpe 'od gsal) which was conceived abstractly at the preceding stage, the stage of 'learning'. The integration of the two stages in the state of non-duality is called the convergence of those who have no more to learn (mi slob pa'i zung 'jug); it is the state of Buddhahood.

In other words again: the maya-body (sgyu lus) is gradually freed from every contamination, and finally even from the 'engrams' of latent defiles. In this process the vibratory force and the mind-light work together, serving alternately as primary and contributory causes. In successively higher stages the maya-body is transformed into the subtle maya-body (sgyu lus phra mo), into the transcendent consciousness of the maya-body (sgyu lus pa'i ye shes), into the pure maya-body (dag pa'i sgyu lus). During the ascent towards the Tenth Earth, the culminating stage of the path of learning (cf.p.50,53) the transcendence is accomplished into absolute cognition, into the pure body (sku dag pa zung 'jug), into the 'diamond body', and finally into the body of unlimited spiritual potentiality (chos sku), into light: the long process of elimination from oneself of all objectification and of every impulse towards objectification has reached its goal. This
extremely complex process is presented in schematic form in the Appendix at the end of this chapter (pp.106ff).

In this process of the dissolution of objectification, brought about through mystical experience, the state of death is experienced: the eight signs (*rungs brgyad*) of the gradual reabsorption of the components of ostensible materiality are visualized one after another; their apparent manifestation is dissolved into pure existence: the element of air into the element of water (= illusion); the element of water into the element of fire (the field of vision is entirely filled with a subtle smoke); the element of fire into the element of wind, like sheet-lightning into space; the element of wind into sensory perception (*snang ba*), in two phases, the first like the blazing up of a lamp, the second like the autumn sky permeated with moonlight; all appearance dissolves into a diffuse light like the orange-yellow colour of the setting sun; the diffuse light dissolves into an inner gleam of light (*nyer thob*) as at twilight; the inner gleam dissolves into light (*'od gsal*) like the colour of the sky at dawn. Throughout this sequence we are considering a process of dissolution which is not happening in reality but which is visualized in the meditation process as successive appearances and culminates in visions ever more sublime, until at last every appearance vanishes in the colourless, pure radiance of the essential purity of light. In other words, the total elimination of all that arises and appears takes place in radiant cognition of essential being. The experiences or meditations of the moment of death lead then to the attainment of that state which can be defined as the pure and complete voidness of non-being, the essential precondition for reunification with the transcendent undifferentiated light.

Mental states and psychic processes (*sens byung*) are by contrast, cognitive functions of the individual: by cognition here is to be understood a faculty of discrimination which is also capable of purification through gradual cleansing from the cognition of ordinary rationality to higher cognition (*shes rab*, where *rab* = higher). This cognition is a discriminative faculty different from the simple response to a stimulus (*shes*), such as the sensations mentioned above and the perceptions connected with them. It is present in all living beings and causes animals, for example, to search for water when they have thirst and for shelter when they are cold. Higher cognition (*shes rab*) has for its object everything that can be an object of thought, it is the ability to discriminate, but also the ability to resolve in itself successive mental situations or manifestations. This cognition is of two kinds: 'contaminated' (*nyon mongs can*) and uncontaminated. The former leads to misfortune, the latter can lead to truth, that is it is capable of entering into unison with the real nature of things, and thus eventually leading to liberation. Both these cognitive abilities are present in all. The
second divides into two branches: ordinary shes rab and special shes rab (khyad par can). Only in this last case can one translate the Tibetan expression literally as higher (rab) cognition (shes). It too divides into two sub-species: cognition which is inspired and purified through the Buddhist revelation but is not yet illuminated through the doctrine of 'voidness' (the 'Middle Way', dbu ma), and cognition which by examining objects or ideas (chos) through the doctrine of the 'void' has arrived at the certainty that it is impossible to make assertions about the true nature of objects, that in other words the content of our ordinary experience is empty. Some achieve this higher cognition without attaining to that even higher summit, cognition which becomes identical to the Shes rab phar phyin (Skt. Prajnaparamita, 'perfection of cognition'). Others, however, do achieve this; they have recognized the impossibility of attributing to an object of any kind a specific, permanent and really true character (mtshan med). Even these are not yet detached enough to be able to reach the supreme goal. They are the Bodhisattvas of the First to Seventh 'Earths'. Those, finally, who have not only realized that no assertions can be made about phenomena but have attained complete detachment become Bodhisattvas of the Eighth to Tenth 'Earths'.

While we can define sans as an energy of thought closely bound up with the breath of life or the vibratory capacity (rlung, Skt. prana), shes rab (Skt. prajna) represents a cognitive function, which (in its purified form too) always represents an instrument of liberation. Shes rab is not given any ontological significance, but it is a necessary coefficient of the process of transcendence. Its indispensable correlate is formed by 'means', which is identified with compassion (snying rje) and thus with action for the good of beings. The combined effect of these elements brings about the overturning of the planes, transcendence to the body of infinite spiritual potentiality. This higher cognition is hypostatized in Tantric symbolism as the 'paredra' of the deity. The work or means is conceived of as the father (yab), higher cognition as the mother (yum); illumination, identical in its nature to absolute cognition, is born from their union. In conformity with the personification of a numen as a numen, a much-used process in the Mahayana and Vajrayana, the mother, visualized alone, becomes the mother of Buddha, the supreme Matrix.

5 Sems and light

In the entire course of the religious experience of Tibetan man, in all of its manifestations from Bon religion to Buddhism, a common fundamental trait is evident; photism, the great importance attached
to light, whether as a generative principle, as a symbol of supreme reality, or as a visible, perceptible manifestation of that reality; light from which all comes forth and which is present within ourselves. Already in the cosmogony this originally pure, undifferentiated light is transformed into coloured light, white and black, from which springs forth the twofold creation (cf. p. 214). The greatest Bon divinity is gShen lha 'Od dkar, 'the White Light'. The blessings of saints are also conveyed through the luminous energy of the rays of light which emanate from them ('od zer shugs—No. 2, p. 28a). In the Bar do thos grol, in the literature that is which is dedicated to the technique of transformation of the life-principle at the moment of death, photism is a fundamental element. The consciousness of the spiritually mature person becomes identified with the light which shines out at the time of death, it perceives the identity between that light and its own radiant essence.

Sems then is not only mental energy, but also light, and light too is the breath (rlung) on which it 'rides', for the breath also is made of five shining rays of light ('od zer). Once sems has been transformed into transcendent consciousness, its presence makes possible transfiguration into the 'diamond body' (rdo rje sku) of which we have already spoken. The essence of this 'diamond body' is formed by the five forms of consciousness (ye shes lnga); it represents the limiting state of existential reality. This metamorphosis is accomplished thanks to the luminous potentiality which is present in germinal form in the breath (rlung) and sems. The sems is light ('od gsal), because if it were not, then it would not be possible to cognize, or to see, and it would not be possible for it to be transformed into transcendent cognition. The light which is identical in essence to the sems can be considered from two different points of view, as object (yul) or as subject (yul can). Light as object is voidness itself (stong pa nyid), it is that which cannot be an object of thought. As subject it corresponds to the voidness of the subject which shines forth once objectification has been transcended. This light ('od gsal) has to be distinguished from luminosity (gsal), the capacity to emit light from the mind (sems) and from the mental states (sems byung) present within the psycho-physical continuum. The connection between light and mind ('od gsal and sems), which is defined as 'non-duality of the profound and the luminous' (zab gsal gnyis med), characterizes the state of transcendent consciousness (ye shes). The various schools diverge noticeably on this subject and on the related conception of the connection between bliss (bde) and 'voidness'. This can be understood if one considers that the connection between sems and light, and the identity of these two terms, forms the basis of Buddhist soteriology in Tibet. This is not the place to enter into the subtle debates set off by this problem. Instead some of the
THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

opposing theses in the argument will be briefly outlined.10

According to the view of the Sa skya pa school luminosity is the characteristic sign (mtshan nyid) of the mind, while the essence of the mind is voidness. Voidness does not detract ('dor) from luminosity, nor does luminosity detract from voidness. The coinciding of luminosity and voidness, which represents an inexpressible state of pure objectivity ('dzin med), defines the limiting state (mthar thug) of the sms, its essential state. In other words, sms in itself is voidness, and its limiting state is precisely this voidness. According to rJe btsun bSod nams rite mo, the sms is without beginning, duration or end, it exists ab initio, beyond any dichotomizing mental process and any discursive cognition (rnam rtog, subject–object), analogous to infinite space. The sms can be characterized above all by three immanences (lhan skyes = born in us): Cause, ‘Path’ or iter, ‘Fruit’ or result. (a) In each of us the inborn sms (gnyug ma'i sms) is luminosity and its essence is voidness. Luminosity and voidness are not derivable from one another, but they flow together (zung 'jug). (b) The ‘path’ aspect concerns the yogin in his aspirations to follow the prescribed way, concerns the disciple of the Tantra of the superior class (bla na med, Skt. anuttara). Here luminosity corresponds to the method of evocation (bskyed rim), voidness to the method of achievement (rdzogs rim, cf.p.74). Transcendent consciousness (ye shes) which is born from the coincidence of these two aspects is attained through repeated practice of meditation. (c) In the ‘fruit’ or result, the culmination of the meditative process, luminosity corresponds to the apparent body (sprul sku), voidness to the body of infinite spiritual potentiality (chos sku), while the body of co-fruition (longs sku) represents the coincidence of the two aspects. Through meditation of this kind is created the consciousness of Being of the innate sms and thus the necessary condition for the attainment of the three ‘bodies’ in the moment of effect. Thus the process of salvation pivots around the sms.

The experience (nyams len) follows; all that appears to exist (appears, that is, only within the sms, for no object exists outside of it) is nothing but the luminosity of the sms. However, since the real nature of the sms transcends all duality, all that appears is deception, magical play (sgyu ma, Skt. maya). In this consists its voidness (stong pa). The realization that derives from this corresponds to the coincidence of luminosity and emptiness. This is the precondition for the experience (nyams len).11

In the meditation mentioned above we are in fact dealing with various modes of being, various forms of the same essence, just as a nugget of gold can be made into various shapes, into vessels or other objects of use, which however do not cease to be gold in their basic essence. Apart from this doctrine of salvation, which is practically
identical with that of the other schools, the Sa skya pa teachings emphasize a special point of their own. This is that luminosity is a characteristic sign of sens. The dGe lugs pa reject this position. According to their view, luminosity is not the characteristic sign of sens but the actual essence of sens. Luminosity is a characteristic sign of the cognitive faculty (shes pa). Thanks to this luminosity, which is inherent in all the cognitive states of our continuum, we are able to see (mthong), hear (thos) and comprehend (rtogs) the object of cognition. Were this not so, there would be no difference between us and the material world (bem po, Skt. jada).

To understand these ideas better we need to recall the difference between the luminosity we are considering here and that of, for example, the sun’s rays. The sun’s rays enable us to see, in that they illuminate objects, but they do not see themselves. The luminous cognitive states on the other hand do not only illuminate what is cognizable inside and outside us, they also illuminate themselves as objects of luminous cognition. Thus it comes about that in the cognitive process (shes pa) luminosity and cognition belong essentially to each other. If the luminous states as a result of adventitious defilements do not illuminate the objects proper to them, they still possess as cognitive states this power within themselves. Therefore when the light (’od gsal) is not per accidens affected by defilements, and emerges in its natural purity, it is not a characteristic sign but an essential quality of the sens.

Two different basic situations thus result: sens, and the derived mental states or psychic processes (sens byung). Sens, on the one hand, comprehends and perceives things in themselves by virtue of the function proper to it; on the other hand the mental states derived from sens comprehend the particular characteristic signs of these things (cf.p.64). If we see an object which possesses form (gzugs), in a luminous manner, then we perceive at that moment only the essence (ngo bo) of the object in its general aspect; this is the function of sens. When, however, we see the individual qualities of the object, for example its blue colour or square shape, then we are in the realm of the derived mental states. The cognitive process includes both aspects, sens and the derived states, each of which is operative according to the circumstances. Thus every object of perception for the sens is also an object of perception for the derived mental states. In the continuum (rgyud) of each being, luminous thinking energy (sens gsal) is innate, both in fine (phra) and coarse (rag) forms. This luminous mind bears within itself, as we have shown, the power of gradual perfection until it is finally able to rest within its own essential nature (rang bzhin gnas), in Buddhahood.

According to this doctrine, a potentiality innate within us enables
us to attain Buddhahood, in that our *sems* is basically voidness, pure consciousness empty of all content, even if we do not perceive it. However the attainment of this state presupposes continuing practice and meditation, that is a gradual uninterrupted purification.

The conclusion at any rate is that Lamaism, developing perhaps more amply principles already inherent in the Indian Mahayana, asserts the existence within us of a mind or spirit (*sems*) which represents an interior entity. This *sems* can rise from its impure, conditioned (*samskrta*) state to a progressive purity which is ‘voidness’, because beyond all thought that results from thinking, but is also omniscience, Buddhahood. Thus this Buddhahood is *in nuce* within us until it rises to a transcendence which is unconditioned (*asamskrta*) as such, but also conditioned (*samskrta*) in that it is the result of a successive ascent of gradually higher stages of which the last is conditioned by the experience of the preceding ones. However, absolute purity, absolute potentiality of Being, once it has been attained, is *asamskrta*, no longer conditioned, because it can no longer fall back from its situation at the limit. This revelation, this limiting situation, absolute potentiality of Being, is also Being itself, consciousness and light: ‘void’ in its condition of non-perfection in that it is related to an other; ‘voidness’ when no longer subject to relation.

6 Substantialism of the *Jo nang pa* school

Here the doctrinal contrasts between the *Jo nang pa* and *dGe lugs pa* schools emerge particularly clearly. The representatives of the *dGe lugs pa* school admit, certainly, that the *sems* can be transformed into Buddha as a result of meditative practice, but they deny that this transformation is inevitable. Here their path parts from that of the *Jo nang pa*. According to the teachings of the *Jo nang pa* what can be cognized does not exist; the only thing that truly exists is that which is named the ‘essence’ of the Tathagata (*bde bar gshegs pa'i snying po = Skt. tathagatagarbha, chos nyid*), Being or ‘true truth’ (*don dam bden*).

Voidness is the being in self of *sems*; luminosity is the word, the identity of both is consciousness (*thugs*). This division is equivalent to that of the three bodies: the true essence of *sems* is the body of infinite spiritual potentiality, luminosity is the body of co-fruiting, its manifestation and appearance is the apparent body. When transcendent consciousness arises, illusory appearances cease. Conversely, when illusory appearances manifest themselves, transcendent consciousness ceases. The world of things is without any essence; things are no more than appearances, and appearances are the result of *sems* alone. The meditating person is not in reality present, nor is there
anything to be meditated on, because both meditator and object of
meditation are nothing but the luminous power of thought. Con-
sequently a practice of meditation to be followed does not exist, for
there is no goal towards which it could be aimed.

Being, called by various names, is innate in all things and in all
living beings. It is present as consciousness both in the enlightened
Buddha and also in the psychic continuum (rgyud) of all beings,
whether or not they are conscious of it. Absolute identity exists
between the various Buddhas; all the Buddhas of the past, the present
and the future proceed from the tathagatagarbha, the matrix of Buddh-
hood. This primary cause of Buddhahood is present at all times and
outside of all temporality, in all places and beyond any spatial
determination; there is only the body of infinite spiritual potentiality
(chos sku). The distinction made between cause and effect concerns
only the relationship, not the essence. The path to be travelled to the
attainment of Enlightenment can be described as ‘cause’ only as a
manner of speaking, and equally one can speak of ‘effect’ only as a
verbal convention, for the ‘effect’ is present within the ‘cause’ before
any beginning. There are possibilities of comparison here between
this doctrine of the Jo nang pa and that of the Hindu Samkhya
philosophy.

In this context one cannot speak of an overcoming of defilements,
since these do not in reality exist. If from the point of view of the
individual one can speak of the possibility of the attainment of
Enlightenment (sangs rgyas), one cannot say that anything new has in
reality been won or acquired. It can be a question only of a complete
release and separation (‘bral) of Being from all its defilements, and
even that is not really so, because there is not in fact anything here to
eliminate; the state of Being exists ab initio as absolute purity. As such
Being is designated riog brtan g.yung drung, the eternal, which stands
beyond time, the unalterable; g.yung drung (Skt. svastika) is a technical
term to indicate Being in the Bon religion. Being rests in itself and is
therefore without any emanation and beyond all illusory appearance
(‘khrul snang).

Empirical reality (kun rdzob) is by contrast nothing more than the
totality of defilement. If it is true that its content has no reality, then it
can no longer be the original cause of defilements. The matrix of the
Buddhas, the tathagatagarbha, is ab initio empty in itself (rang stong).
Therefore the tathagatagarbha is all that is real, conceived of as void of
everything of any other kind (gzhan stong). This gives the fundamental
distinction between the two truths; while relative truth, the apparent
world, is empty in itself, absolute truth, Being, is void of anything
different from itself.

The two truths are illustrated through two examples. In the first
the empty being of the cognizable is like a coiled rope which is taken for a snake in bad lighting. The snake is not present in the rope, and it is only through error that it is taken to exist; consequently it is without any individual existence. Emptiness in the second example is like a garment on which one discovers accidental stains. The garment is washed, the stains vanish, and the garment again achieves its original state, free from those stains which do not belong to it by nature.

If the defilements were real, then where did they come from? If they were innate in the sens, then this too would have to be eradicated, since the defilements are overcome in the course of the ‘path’ and the meditation.

One cannot exclude the possibility that this substantialism of the Jo nang pa school, which was regarded as equally heretical by almost all Tibetan schools, contains an echo of the Saivite schools of Kashmir. Knowledge of these schools may have penetrated into the border regions of Tibet, the more so as in India at that time there were also conspicuous points of contact between Tantric, Saivite and Buddhist teachings. The principal objection of the dGe lugs pa to the Jo nang pa is the following. It may well be true that for the essence of the sens and the luminosity proper to it, despite chance defilements, a development is possible through meditation and the ‘path’ which will eliminate such defilements. However, the eradication of the defilements does not involve the suppression of the sens which they have been obscuring. The sens is so to say homologous and of the same nature as the family of the Buddha, for it can change to Buddhahood through the prescribed ‘path’; this however does not imply that the sens capable of such transcendence is necessarily the Buddha himself, as can be seen from the following illustration: if a prostitute bears a son to a world-ruler, it is by no means certain that the son like the father will become a world-ruler. In addition the dGe lugs pa maintain that the Jo nang pa teaching is in contradiction with the fundamental assumptions of the Buddhist doctrine.

Continuing this argument, the dGe lugs pa school refuses to recognize an identity of the three states (the moment of beginning, the ‘path’ and the ‘fruit’), because the non-duality of the two truths, conventional and absolute, is defied at the beginning within the meditating individual. In the ‘path’ phase this non-duality, although it is made free of the defilements (kun brtags) deriving from our momentary illusions and concepts, is still subject to the defilements innate to it as mental inclinations. As a result, however, of the convergence of the two truths brought about in the instant of the ‘fruit’, these truths cease to conflict. Consequently we are dealing here with a substantial difference and not one of form only.

If we speak of the two truths in this context, the conventional or
relative truth and the absolute truth, it is understood that we mean not just two modes of cognition, but rather two global situations. What we see, grasp and conceive is fundamentally only names and designations, not realities endowed with their own proper being, with a being that would be able to exert an influence on the sems. The sems for its own part, although empty, is still light that illuminates particular objects, and so is to be regarded as the basis for all that appears within and outside samsara. It would be a mistake here to postulate two different aspects, for both are of the same nature. It is only in so far as they appear as two that they cause the two truths, the conventional and the absolute. Since they are in reality one and the same, they form the essential precondition for their identity: their individual being is founded purely in conceptual thought and not in true Being.

The voidness of the sems is not negative voidness, because absolute voidness does not have a something opposed to it which has to be negated; it is voidness, nothing-ness—and that is all. Although what is cognized in empirical experience is nothing but words and names, it comes to be falsely considered as real thanks to the conventional truth which engenders and directs the empirical world. Conventional truth consequently appears to attach this or that function to things. That the world of objects is void of any substantial self-nature, and that it appears clothed with functions of all kinds, points to the convergence of the two truths, the relative-conventional and the genuine or absolute. The limiting point is not negation, but voidness which transcends negation itself: that which cannot be qualified, that which cannot become the content of thought.

7 The bKa’ brgyud pa school

The bKa’ brgyud pa school also lay stress on luminosity as the characteristic sign of sems. On this point their teaching does not diverge from that of the Sa skya pa. With respect to the interpretation of the limiting state of sems, however, various views exist within this school, all of which agree in holding that sems has not arisen from nothingness, does not consist of nothingness and does not vanish into nothingness; it stands outside of birth, cessation and duration, and thus outside any spatio-temporal limitation. To identify with sems in the meditation process therefore comes to signify the bringing about of the limiting situation. The many discursive trains of thought dominating our consciousness must be forcibly checked until they vanish. In the completion of this process consists liberation, the dissolution of dichotomizing cognition into the body of infinite spiritual potentiality (chos sku). Neither the existence of the cognizable from the standpoint
of relative truth, nor its non-existence from the standpoint of absolute truth, is to be affirmed. As soon as every process of conceptualization and dichotomization is brought to a standstill, the *sams* will rest in its own self-being. This is the highest meditation. In this way the intuitive, non-rational insight is gained that all cognizable is nothing but deceptive appearances (*snang*) of *sams*. This intuition coincides with the limiting state of *sams*.

According to *Mi la ras pa* the clouds of the *maya*-body form themselves in the infinite potentiality of the *sams*-voidness. Its origin is the voidness of *sams*, its reabsorption (*thim*) is reabsorption precisely in *sams* as voidness. He who is not conscious of this allows empty, illusory structures to appear and grow. The goal of the yogin is liberation from the world of illusions; to achieve this he must make use of the double path of higher cognition and meditation, of ethical and cognitive accumulation and of practical exercise. These provide the help which not only enables insight into voidness but also gives a basis from which to realize this process within his own self.

The cessation of every passion, of every thought attached either to the state of *samsara* or that of peaceful detachment (*srid zhi*) is designated *nirvana*. Here too, however, we are dealing only with a concept which emerges from the mind-voidness, because all that can be cognized, all that can be affirmed or denied, sought for or rejected, is nothing but appearance arising from *sams*; reality is voidness. The state of rest (cf. p.65) overcomes the streams of dichotomizing concepts, of discursive cognition; supreme vision is the actualization of this limiting state. The two processes reach a balance, like a pair of scales coming to equilibrium; the dichotomizing impulses which had previously existed reach a standstill and the birth of new divisive tendencies is brought to an end. Such a supreme catharsis is called the Great Seal (*phyag rgya chen mo*, Skt. *mahamudra*); everything converges into the supreme consciousness of being. The authors of treatises divide it into 'impure', when it is cognized but not yet fully actualized, and 'pure', an inexpressible radiance like the sun in a cloudless sky. The word 'seal' can, it is true, have a double sense, for a seal presupposes an object on which it leaves its mark. In fact what is in question here is an inexpressible experience without object or subject, for both coincide: one does not exist without the other, and both dissolve as supreme consciousness is achieved.

8 Tantric practice according to the tradition of the *Bla na med rgyud*

In Tantric practice there are different kinds of exercise depending on the individual carrying them out. The Tantras containing these and
describing how to carry them out are divided according to their contents into four classes or groups. These are (1) bya (Skt. Kriya), liturgical performance; (2) spyod (Skt. Carya), praxis; (3) rnal 'byor (Skt. Yoga), yoga; (4) bla na med (Skt. Anuttara), the highest group, beyond which there is no further.  

The first two classes are based on the assimilation and practice of the ‘path’, which is founded upon the non-duality of voidness and light. In the Tantras of the first class (bya rgyud), however, external ritual acts (making offerings, recitation, purificatory baths etc.) predominate over internally accomplished yoga. Liturgy, offerings, recitation of formulae are more important here than meditation (sgom). In the Tantras of the second class (spyod rgyud) by contrast, external act and interior yoga are in balance. The third class, that of the Yoga Tantras (rnal 'byor rgyud), aim at the assimilation and exercise of the ‘path’ on the basis of the non-duality of bliss and voidness. They place more importance on yoga accomplished internally than on external action.

The principal aim of the Tantras of the last class (bla na med rgyud) is to provide a method by which sms can be held under control, since all that is done and said, action and word, is always determined by the sms.

Once the mystic has actualized through his practice the maya-body mentioned earlier, in the form of the ‘pure’ maya-body, he experiences the limiting point of the maya-body, and light (‘od gsal) in its pure radiant plenitude. In other words, the limiting point of light, the state of non-duality, is then experienced as a concurrence which transcends all appropriation, all taking possession and so on. When this state appears the dissolution of the two planes of existence (the plane of samsara and the plane of peaceful detachment, srid zhi) takes place and Buddhahood is experienced.

The Tantras of the fourth class (bla na med rgyud) place special emphasis in this connection on the teaching that breathing or vibratory ability (rthung) and sms can be controlled once the circuit is interrupted which the two describe continuously in the two principal ‘channels’ and which causes the defilements producing samsara. These ‘channels’ are two imagined passages, without any physical reality, which run on the right and left side of the body; the right channel (rmo) corresponds to hatred, the left (rkyang ma) to attachment. These two principal channels (rtsa, Skt. nadi) are connected to a third nadi (called dbu ma, Skt. avadhuti), which runs along the length of the spine, through a three-stage process which consists of breathing in (gzhugs), holding of breath (gnas) and breathing out (thim, in other words flowing back of the individual breath into the cosmic universal breath). Only as a result of this process does sms cease its movement and
become the necessary precondition for the realization of that unique state (thun mong ma' yin pa) that prepares for the coming of Buddhahood. Of course this process requires the previous practice of the Phar phyin vehicle, which forms an indispensable foundation. Otherwise it would be as if a completely inexperienced person wished to ride upon an untamed elephant. This at any rate is the view of the dGe lugs pa, the Sa skya pa and the bKa' gams pa. Other schools such as the rDzogs chen pa prefer immediate entry to the Tantric path and regard the detour through the Phar phyin as dispensable.

The variety of contents of these Tantras of the fourth class (bla na med rgyud) has led the scholiasts to divide them into two sub-classes, ‘Father’-Tantra (pha) and ‘Mother’-Tantra (ma), a division which the dGe lugs pa have also taken over. The Sa skya pa add a third sub-class to these two, the Tantra of non-duality (gnyis su med), that is of the equilibrium of the two aspects (No.84, p.34b). The rDzogs chen school, however, has a completely different division of the rgyud (cf.pp.77ff.). The basic distinction between ‘Father’-Tantra and ‘Mother’-Tantra relates to differences in doctrinal and ritual content. These can be summarized as follows (without going here into the hairsplitting discussions set off by this question): the two approaches place the stress differently with respect to the central principles of the entire fourth Tantra group (bla na med rgyud), the maya-body and light. In the ‘Father’-Tantras the maya-body, which corresponds to the ‘means’ (thabs), to action, has the upper hand, while the role assigned to light (’od gsal = shes rab, higher cognition) is secondary. Examples of Tantras of this sub-class are gSang ba 'du s pa, rDo rje 'jigs byed, and so on. With the ‘Mother’-Tantras the balance is reversed. Examples of this sub-class would be 'Khor lo bde mchog and Dus kyi 'khor lo.

The mystic experienced in the teaching and practice of the fourth Tantra class (bla na med rgyud) thus has as the goal of his meditative and ascetic practice the rapid transformation of the yid lus (cf. above, pp.59-60) into a maya-body (sgyu lus), so as to anticipate already during the ‘path’ phase the various stages of the catharsis of salvation. If candidates for salvation through the ‘Mother’-Tantras do not complete the prescribed contemplation of the supreme light-consciousness (’od gsal = shes rab) during the ‘path’ phase, then the attainment of absolute sens-purity (thugs = omniscience, Buddhahood) is denied to them at the ‘fruit’ phase. Equally if those seeking salvation through the ‘Father’-Tantras do not place the maya-body (= thabs) at the central point of their contemplation and meditation during the ‘path’ phase, they will be unable to achieve the purification of body which is revealed at the stage of the result as the ‘diamond body’ with its characteristic marks.

The practice used by the schools can be characterized briefly as
follows: for seekers after salvation who appear spiritually still immature the method of ‘evocation’ or ‘production’ (bskyed rim) is recommended for the maturing of their thought, while for those who are already spiritually mature the method of achievement (rdzogs rim) is prescribed. On this theme there was a continuing dialogue between the various schools, each of which sought to render prominent the superiority of its own particular goals and methods. The first method (bskyed rim) is intended, briefly, to bring about the transformation as understood by the doctrinal system of the school concerned into one of the three Buddha-bodies mentioned repeatedly above: body of infinite spiritual potentiality, body of co-fruition, apparent body (chos sku, longs spyod sku, sprul sku).

The basic precondition is the state of the mystic in each of his karmic experiences. Here three principal phases are to be distinguished: birth, death and the intermediate period (bar do) between death and rebirth. These three states represent the foundation of purification (sbyong), in so far as the goal of the meditator consists precisely in overcoming these states, the existence of which is ascribed to the continuity of karma, the persistence of error and all the appearances which so fatally accompany them.

In the ‘path’ phase the purifying presence of the three bodies is lived through as a result of the practice of meditation. At the end of this process the state of purification is attained as ‘fruit’, as soon as according to the circumstances and the particular aptitude and perseverance of the mystic one of the three bodies is achieved. When death approaches, the human being is on the point of succumbing to the pressure of karmic forces. The hierophant then comes to his aid. The hierophant has through observance of and prolonged meditation according to the precepts of this Tantra class (bla na med rgyud) transposed them into reality. At the moment of death therefore the karmic ‘engrams’ formed in the dying person are purified and a coincidence brought about between the light (od gsal) realized in past meditations and the new light revealed in the instant of dying. The two lights, identical in essence, are now transferred into the body of infinite spiritual potentiality (chos sku). This coincidence of the two lights is usually called the coincidence of the ‘Mother’ light with the ‘Son’ light.

For those who have not yet achieved this goal there follows upon death the state of intermediate existence (bar do) between dying and new incarnation. It is the fate of the ordinary human being to fall prey to a new existence with all of its inevitable sufferings. The mystic, however, evokes at the instant of death the experiences realized during the ‘path’ phase, so as to actualize the state called ‘body of co-fruition’ (longs sku). These experiences purify the karmic ‘engrams’ which
provide the impulse for the intermediate existence (bar do), and so bring about the passage to the state of the ‘body of co-fruition’. Persons of lesser maturity again, who are not able to overcome the state of intermediate existence, finally succumb to the compulsion of new rebirth, to a new immersion in the cycle of samsara. The yogin, however, brings about as a result of the experiences described earlier the state of the apparent body (sprul sku).

In reality the method of ‘evocation’ is much more complicated than this. In particular it makes use of the technique of breath control (Skt. pranayama) mentioned above, and so opposes to each karmic force (las stobs) a state engendered by the exertion of all the forces of ascetic practice (sgom).

The problem of the ‘method of achievement’, of its interpretation and of its practical aspect, has led to considerable differences of opinion between the schools. These have naturally been particularly deep between the dGe lugs pa and the rNyin ma pa. Here it is a question of divisions already formed previously in the Tantric schools of India, which were further deepened and stressed by the Tibetan Tantrics. The premise and foundation of the whole process remain throughout the three moments of breathing (rlung, cf.p.64). The adherents of the Dus kyi ’khor lo (The Wheel of Time) prefer a sixfold yoga. In the bDe mchog schools, however, the ‘method of achievement’ based on the four voidnesses (voidness, great voidness, total voidness, extreme voidness) was adopted. Other procedures are the ‘method of achievement’ of four yogas of the rDo rje ’jigs byed and the ‘deep way’ of the gSang ba ’dus pa, which is followed by the dGe lugs pa. All methods, however, equally tend to a practice which sets for its goal the passage from the samsaric and temporal plane to the extra-samsaric and atemporal plane; the passage that is from the phase of learning (stob) to that beyond learning and beyond all experience capable of being analysed and defined.

The process takes place through epiphanies, anticipations of the ‘fruit’ phase. In it, five aspects of perfection and purification are actualized: the state of perfection and purification (1) of the body; (2) of the word, of sound-potentiality in its own right, which expresses everything in all sounds and in each sound; (3) of the mind (thugs), equivalent to omniscience, to absolute, eternal omnipresence; (4) of action, enabling one to lead living beings on the way of salvation; (5) of efficacy (phrin las), enabling the adoption at will of any desired form suitable for the conversion of living beings, until the end of samsara. In such a manner the mystic who has been reintegrated into the wholeness of the consciousness of Being experiences in himself the extratemporal glory of divine powers in the moment in which he turns into an archetypical emanation.
THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

We have had to restrict ourselves to the most basic points regarding the actual contents of the ‘Father’- and ‘Mother’-Tantras, the subclasses of the Superior Tantra (bla ma med rgyud). This subject is fundamental to Lamaist soteriology and is deserving of a more comprehensive treatment. We look now at the rNying ma pa school, whose formulations of doctrine and meditation are in many cases noticeably different, although there are frequent points of connection with the other schools none the less, since many doctrinal premises are the same, and also many fundamental experiences correspond in a certain sense.

9 The rNying ma pa school

The doctrinal synthesis produced by the rNying ma pa is much the most individual, both from the point of view of the doctrine itself, and with regard to the Tantric tradition on which the school is based. As we will show, their views on sens (the kernel of soteriology) are altogether individual. Besides this the Tantric texts of the rNying ma pa (cf.p.38) and the experiences described within them vary considerably from those of the so-called ‘new’ schools (gsar ma), which were developed after the second diffusion of the teaching. In the first place the number of ‘vehicles’ now rises to nine (theg pa rim pa dgu), each of which corresponds to the karmic and spiritual situation of a particular group of men.20 Buddhist experience is divided into three groups, each of which is further sub-divided into three. Thus the first three ‘vehicles’ (those of the Sravaka, of the Pratyekabuddha, and of the Bodhisattva) are intended for beings of lower abilities, the next three (Kriya, Upa-yoga, and Yoga-Tantra) for those of medium ability, and the last three (Maha-yoga-Tantra, Anu-yoga-Tantra and Ati-yoga-Tantra) for those of highest ability.

The followers of the rNying ma pa schools have devoted an extensive literature to this subject, frequently concerned with defending this system against the other schools. The distinctions which they argue against the other schools are concerned with (a) the texts relating to the particular ‘vehicles’; (b) the preparatory actions; (c) the mode of conceptualization; (d) the meditation; (e) the practice; (f) the result and the ‘fruit’.

The lower valuation given to the first three vehicles, the Lesser Vehicle, the Vehicle of the Pratyekabuddhas, and the Greater Vehicle (Mahayana), represents nothing new. The religious experience of Buddhism in no way comes to a close with the Mahayana, and indeed its most efficient soteriological inspiration appears precisely within the realms of the ‘Diamond Vehicle’ (Tantra). The rNying ma pa
recognize six Tantra classes (corresponding to the fourth to ninth 'vehicles') rather than four, and the terminology relating to these classes also differs somewhat from that of the other schools.

Of course even the rNying ma pa do not reject the general doctrinal structure of the Mahayana. The background still remains the concept of 'voidness', but in developing these theoretical foundations further, rNying ma mysticism places the centre of gravity differently. The 'Earths' to be traversed in the course of the catharsis (cf.p.50) now become thirteen. By following the Kriya-Tantra the Thirteenth 'Earth' can be reached within only seven lifetimes from the first step; by following the Upa-yoga-Tantra it can be reached within five lifetimes. Through the third Tantric class, the Yoga-Tantra, the initiate is able to attain Enlightenment in the 'Og min paradise within three lifetimes. With the assistance of the Maha-yoga-Tantra one can attain the apparent body (sput sbug) in the existence immediately following the present one. The Anu-yoga projects the body into Great Bliss at the instant of death. The Ati-yoga leads directly to the outermost limit, to the goal, to definitively actualized consciousness of Being.

The content of the Tantras can be sketched briefly as follows. They are divided into two groups each with three sub-divisions (Kriya, Upa-yoga, Yoga; Maha-yoga, Anu-yoga, Ati-yoga).

**Group A**

**I Kriya** (a) Preparatory acts: rituals, purificatory baths, offerings etc.; (b) mode of conceptualization: the existence of gods is acknowledged (if in a purely relative manner) and the relationship between god and men is viewed as like that between king and subjects; (c) meditation (sgom): on the gods, as if they actually existed; (d) practice: purification of body, speech and mind. Of the defilements, anger is particularly to be overcome; (e) fruit: the goal is the attainment of the glories of the three gods called mgon po, a 'fruit' which is already anticipated in the experience of the 'path' phase, although its attainment requires from a minimum of seven to a maximum of thirteen lives.

**II Upa-yoga** (a) Preparatory acts: concentration21 (samaDhi) on the convergence of the two truths (cf.p.69-70); (b) mode of conceptualization. Although it is recognized that from the absolute point of view one cannot speak of birth, it is still accepted at the level of empirical truth. Similarly one can speak of the evocation and bringing to manifestation of gods (cf.p.94); the relationship between god and man is viewed here as like that between master and servant; (c) meditation: on the five 'families' of gods, the pendants22 (cf.p.97), with the aim of bringing
about the convergence of contemplation and practice; (d) practice: with the aim of the performance of good works for one’s neighbour through the four modes of magical action, along with the overcoming of envy; (e) fruit: the goal is a state analogous to that of the pentad, and its experience is again anticipated in the course of the ‘path’. The result may be achieved in from five to thirteen lifetimes.

III Yoga (a) Preparatory actions: meditative coincidence of work and concentration or ‘synentasy’ (samadhi); (b) means of conceptualization: leading the mind to absolute truth; on the plane of conventional truth, action for the transformation of the self into a god, or evocation of the god in front of the meditator (ye shes lha, dam tshig lha, cf.p.95); (c) meditation: on the prescribed mandala, with reference to the five Enlightenments, beginning from concentration on body, speech and mind—the state of the hypostatization of the transcendental consciousness of these deities; (d) practice: actualization of the ye shes lha state (cf.p.95) for the good of living beings, bringing about the fusion of the ‘Means’ (thabs = Father) with transcendent consciousness (= Mother), overcoming of pride; (e) the goal is the attainment of the glories of rdzogs chen, and the experience of this deity is anticipated in the ‘path’ phase; from the third life on, rebirth in the ‘Og min paradise is possible.

The three Tantric classes discussed so far are particularly concerned with body, speech and mind respectively. Their result in the phase of fruition is the body of co-fruition (longs sku).

Group B

I Maha-yoga Here it must first of all be mentioned that the four consecrations (the same as those described above, p.57) stand at the centrepoint of the experience of the following three Tantra classes. They are repeated in each class with a different and progressively higher effect. The consecration of the ‘vessel’ transfigures itself and everything else onto the divine plane. In the second consecration ambrosia (= transcendent consciousness) descends on the head of the person being initiated. In the third consecration fusion (= Non-Duality) takes place between teacher and disciple. In the fourth, the non-reality of the meditator is accomplished, in that reality is situated beyond any individuality. Such an initiation has four advantages over the consecrations of the Tantras previously described: (i) in the earlier Tantras, the mandala was sketched on the earth with coloured powders, while here a book takes its place; (ii) in the lower Tantras colours were used to depict the figures, while here the creative phonemes (mantra) of the deities are used; (iii) in place of repro-
ductions of the deities visualizations are used; (iv) in place of the various objects with which the mandala was adorned there is the mechod rten (cf.p.80). (a) Preparatory actions: consecration of the 'vessel'; (b) mode of conceptualization: in the Maha-yoga, the individual components of the human personality (phung po = Skt. skandha; khams = Skt. dhatu, sensory sphere; skye mched = Skt. ayatana) distinguished and classified by the traditional doctrinal system are deprived of their fictive materiality and considered as of divine nature. Thus they become identical to the divine plane, in that, through an esoteric homology, they demonstrate the presence of divine forms co-ordinated with particular moments of the actualization of being; (c) meditation: on the mandala, to fuse together the two moments of the evocation, ye shes lha and dam tshig lha (cf.p.95) in perfect non-duality; (d) practice: what are defilements in the uninitiated are now transformed, and thus liberated, through the passage to the state of transcendent consciousness (ye shes); (e) fruit: the aim is the attainment of the apparent body, and appropriate meditations are employed in the 'path' phase. In this way the purification of the body takes place, which assures the attainment of the apparent body (sprul sku) in the following existence.

II Anu-yoga Here we have to deal with an extremely complex set of concepts, since it encompasses both Tantra sub-classes, Father- and Mother-Tantra. The consecration here is on a higher level than that described earlier. (a) Preparatory actions: 'emanationless' secret initiation (gsang dbang), and the initiation of transcendent consciousness resulting from higher cognition (shes rab ye shes dbang) which is termed 'emanationless in the highest degree', meaning that the dichotomizing power of thought is interrupted (cf.p.47). Each of these consecrations includes all the four kinds mentioned above (consecration of the 'vessel' etc.), with different meanings and a different liturgy. Thus there are eight kinds of consecration presupposed by the two sub-classes of Tantra brought together in this class. The most important aspect here is the union of the Father (yab) and the Mother (yum), that is of the master and his par德拉 in intimate embrace. The symbolic power of this process, in which Enlightenment is equated with the semen resulting from the union, permeates the whole scheme. The same is true for the second set of consecrations, those called 'emanationless in the highest degree' (shin tu spros med), in the course of which the initiate himself becomes the actor, for he unites himself with the par德拉 (phyag rgya, Skt. mudra). In the secret initiation, when the Thought of Enlightenment (byang sms), here equated with the semen of the bla ma embracing the par德拉, is placed on the tongue, then this is the consecration of the 'vessel'. When one tastes it, the secret consecration is granted. When
the instruments of yoga (‘channels’, breath, ‘drop’ or _thig le_, cf.p.72) are filled with bliss, the third consecration is accomplished. The fourth is experienced when the identity of bliss and voidness is perceived. In this way the defilements of the plane of the Word are purified and effectiveness is achieved in the meditation, an effectiveness which rests upon the control of the breathing and of the ‘drop’ (cf.p.262). In the next existence the body of co-fruitation can be attained. In the second set of consecrations, the initiation of transcendent consciousness called ‘in the highest degree emanationless’, when the initiand contemplates in his meditation the _bla ma_ and the paredra and worships them as gods, the first consecration takes place. The second corresponds to the fall of semen = Thought of Enlightenment. The third takes place when the experience of great bliss begins, and the fourth when the union of bliss and voidness is accomplished. The superiority of the secret initiation lies in the complete reversal of the liturgical structure which takes place in this Tantra class; the _bla ma_’s body here replaces the book in the ‘vessel’ consecration. In the second consecration the paredra takes the place of the _bla ma_, while in the third the deification of the _bla ma_ and his paredra united in sexual embrace replaces the invocation of deities. In the fourth the three planes of the _bla ma_ himself (body, speech and mind) replace the _mchod rten_. The superiority of the second initiation of transcendent consciousness over the secret initiation is also fourfold: the _bla ma_ is no longer situated on the exterior, since the body of the initiate becomes identical with that of the _bla ma_ transformed into the _mandala_. The paredra does not stand outside the initiate in the second consecration, but is united into one with him. The Thought of Enlightenment = semen does not fall outside in the third consecration, but is absorbed back into itself. In the fourth the state of pleasure is derived not from external causes but out of itself; (b) mode of conceptualization: transcendent consciousness and the plane of potential existentiality (_dbyings_) as non-duality; (c) meditation: voidness = luminous transcendent consciousness; (d) practice: all is illusory play of transcendent consciousness; (e) fruit: the experience of the enjoyment of ‘great bliss’ can be realized whenever one wishes during the ‘path’ phase. Mental defilements are purified. At the moment of death the ‘body of great bliss’ is attained.

**III Ati-yoga**

(a) Preparatory actions: ‘emanationless consecration in transcendent form’. This includes the four named consecrations, each of which now reveals through intuitive vision that all that appears as pure, contentless consciousness is _sems_, that _sems_ is voidness, that voidness is bliss, and that bliss transcends any possibility of
definition, stands beyond all thought. This initiation is distinguished from the previous consecrations of the Anu-yoga in that the mandala on which one meditates is here transformed from the body into the sens, and the union with the paredra is replaced by attaining coincidence with transcendent consciousness. Instead of a flow of delight, there is produced here a delight without flow; instead of a state of grace being received from the exterior, the mystic is situated in a state beyond all thought; (b) and (c) mode of conceptualization and meditation: everything is beyond definition, there is nothing to hope for or fear; (d) practice: no concepts may arise, just as little liberation from concepts; nothing is to be received, nothing is to be abandoned. All defilements are purified in transcendent supreme consciousness; (e) fruit: the aim is the achievement of the 'perfected body', and its qualities are experienced in the ‘path’ phase; the defilements of the physical, verbal and mental plane are all completely removed; integration with voidness-light-Being. As a result the body of Being is already attained in this life.

All this can naturally only be given here in a schematic form. We must content ourselves with indicating that at this point the complex heritage of yoga and Tantrism (whether of Buddhist or Saivite character) breaks in again on the world of experience of the rNyung ma pa. It can be recognized in the ever increasing stress laid upon ‘great bliss’ (bde chen, Skt. mahasukha), which plays a decisive role in the Saivite schools and in their special interpretation of ananda, ‘bliss’, which along with Being and Consciousness is one of the three inherent properties of the real in Saivite philosophy.

Erotic symbolism takes over control of Tantric experience. Thus the presence of the paredra becomes an essential element of the ritual. The equation of semen with Thought of Enlightenment, light held captive within the body, dominates the liturgical process. Of course this is in no way a Tibetan innovation; it is rather an Indian tradition traceable in its origins to the most ancient times, although one cannot exclude the possibility that its later perfecting may have occurred under the influence of gnostic and magical currents in the border regions of Tibet and India. This does not mean however that the symbolism is to be taken literally. The paredra, the ‘Mother’, is evidently transcendent consciousness, and her union with the ‘Father’ in its various stages represents the dynamics of the relationship which develops between these two elements of liberation. Liberation, initially an object of contemplation, progresses from a convergence simply learnt or suggested by the teaching of the master, to visual conceptualization according to the schemata of the mandala, then to participation in transcendent consciousness, in order finally to arrive at a definitive synthesis in the mystic himself. He has no further
need of reflection, nor of meditation, nor of objectification (either conceptualized or suggested); rather he lives in himself this *mysterium magnum*. Nevertheless the ritual procedures in certain ceremonies suggest memories of literal interpretations, for example semen = Thought of Enlightenment. Transcendent Consciousness, is represented by curdled milk which is to be drunk from a skull bowl (genuine or made from metal). It was in this form that it was offered to me, too, when I obtained the consecration of *Kye rdo rje* in *Sa skya*.

We should remember throughout that in this Tantric literature we move among symbols, that the words do not have their ordinary meanings and are scarcely ever able to be translated adequately into our logical language. All this is secret, and each word or action evokes states that have to be experienced directly.

The doctrinal standpoint of the *rDzogs chen* (the *rNyung ma pa* tantric school) is as already indicated (p. 14) different from that of the schools discussed previously. It posits the existence of a state of absolute voidness, uncreated, without origin, without beginning, in which exist neither Buddhas nor beings that might strive towards Buddhahood. This state is called the 'body in se' or quintessential body (*ngo bo nyid kyi sku*). In it the various modes of being flow together, and thus it transcends both the samsaric and nirvanic states. In its actualization it unfolds spontaneously as pure intelligence, Gk. *nous* (Tib. *rig pa*); its symbolic name is *Kun tu bzang po*. We ourselves, at the basis of our being, are this *rig pa*, and if we recognize it as such in the 'path' phase, then it will be transformed in the 'fruit' phase into great transcendent consciousness (*ye shes chen po*). If, however, it is not known to be *rig pa*, to be voidness illuminated *ab aeterno*, then it becomes clouded through adventitious defilements, and is changed into non-intelligence (*ma rig*). This non-intelligence is the cause of the deceptive dichotomies through which the chains of samsaric experience hold us captive. These dichotomies are produced by the *sems*, which thus has to be distinguished carefully from the *rig pa*. The *rig pa* is undefiled *ab initio*; it is only as a consequence of lack of insight into its nature, and the error which this causes, that the deceptive process of *sems* and its activity takes place.

A famous series of *rDzogs chen* verses runs as follows:

*rig pa* is reality. Since it is voidness, it cannot be asserted of it that it is eternal. Since its nature is luminosity, such a definition sets no limit to it. It is boundless compassion, from which endless manifestations flow. Although its three aspects can appear as distinct, in reality one is dealing with the same thing. In its essential state it is emanationless *ab initio*. It is not being, for even the Buddhas cannot see it. It is not non-being, for it forms the foundation for the samsaric and extra-
samsaric world. It is neither something positive nor something negative, therefore it goes beyond any defining in words.

Such is the basis for the appearance of the objective part, that in deceptive manner appears as a part of the sems (snang cha). Whatever appears as the objective world outside the mind (phyi rol), including the sems when it becomes its own object (yul), is unreal, is insubstantial. The sems as subject (yul can) either recognizes its real nature, in other words absolute voidness, or else it does not recognize it. If it does not recognize it then it is non-intelligence (ma rig), then it succumbs to the dichotomies, the disintegrations into series of oppositions, which are however basically derivable from a single pair of opposites, samsara and nirvana. The consequence is that the sems remains attached to the plane of illusory existence. We remain throughout here in the realm of a function of the mind (sems), one of the functions creating the immeasurable network of illusions (’khrul), a network which thanks to the confused play of concept-bound cognition unfolds ever more extensively. Once an end is put to this play of illusion, the comprehension of pure intelligence (rig pa) follows. The spontaneous and direct actualizations of pure rig pa can also be designated Enlightenment (byang chub, Skt. bodhi); it is without quality, form or colour, an indefinable, absolute identity. This vision is gradually opened up through the meditation and successive purifications undertaken in the course of the initiatory practice. Apart from this gradual (rim gyis) actualization an immediate (gcig char) revelation of the truth can occur, such as that which was granted to dGa’ rab rdo rje and other ascetics already spiritually mature.

The same thing then happens to rig pa as to a human being when he falls from the waking state into the state of dreaming, and the most varied dream images then pass before him. However, as soon as rig pa, substrate of all that appears in or beyond this world, acquires intuitive consciousness of itself as such, it is released and freed. When it does not recognize itself, when its view is obscured, it creates out of its own free activity an apparent duality—the foundation of the characteristic illusion of samsara. In reality there is nothing outside rig pa, therefore there is nothing to be received or overcome, nothing to assert, nothing to deny.

The mechanism of illusion (’khrul) comes into action as a result of the three primary causes (rgyu), thanks to the three aspects of non-intelligence (ma rig) and the four contributory causes or accompanying circumstances (rkyen). The first primary cause is cognition itself, in that it does not recognize that the cognizable, the apparent world, is derived from itself. The second is the innate non-
intelligence (ma rig) that conceals within itself the ability to recognize itself or not to recognize itself. The third comes down to the fact that this non-intelligence (ma rig) does not recognize that all that can be asserted is nothing but its own illusory emanation. The four contributory causes consist in the non-recognition that subject and object result from non-intelligence (ma rig), in the acceptance of the appearance of non-intelligence (ma rig) themselves as objects, in the appropriation of the apparitions by the subject, and finally in the simultaneity of these three forms of non-intelligence (ma rig).

Light, on the other hand, forms an essential factor in the process of manifestations and actualization of the rig pa, or conversely in the process of illusory appearance ('khrul snang), and precisely because of its immanent and free activity (ritsal). Light-intelligence is manifested through its immanent action by means of five rays29 ('od zer) which in their pure part or aspect appear as the ‘five families’ of the body of co-fruition.30 In their impure part or aspect they appear as the five constituent parts of the human personality, the supports of samsara.

These five luminous bodies reveal themselves in the individual, in his state of illusory appearance, as the five constituents of his illusory personality. The five aspects or modalities of transcendent consciousness (ye shes lnga) appear through the process of spatio-temporal individuation as the five moral ‘infections’; the five lights appear as the five elements and consequently as the five sense-objects, five senses and five modes of sensory perception. In this way the mechanism and technique of progressive deliverance is thrown open to the yogin, for not only are there precise correspondences and homologies with respect to the individual aspects of the illusory emanation, but these correspondences suggest to the mystic the content of his progressive stages of meditation and thus actualize the reversal of the planes.

Conversely the five ‘poisons’, the five sins out of which the illusory texture of samsara is woven, transform in the limiting phase of the ‘fruit’ into the five forms of transcendent consciousness, while the five components of the human personality are transfigured into luminous, divine forms. Rig pa, the Light- Voidness, is recognized as such in the meditation at the ‘fruit’ phase, and the body of infinite spiritual potentiality (chos sku) is actualized. When its luminosity shines out in its full radiance, the body of co-fruition (longs sku) is actualized, and when ‘compassion without restriction’ appears, the apparent body is actualized. In this way the actualization of the three bodies comes about at the ‘fruit’ phase, each according to the circumstances. These three bodies are imagined as present and actually operative in the body of the mystic at the moment of the supreme initiation of the
Ati-yoga, and their existential mode of Being is integrated into the pure body in se.

Two of the long and complicated procedures designed for liberation from the error causing the perpetuation of samsara deserve mention here. Through one of these, \textit{khrugs chod}, the meditating individual (\textit{gzhis dus}) is able to recognize the intelligence present within himself. The second phase leading to such a reconquest of the Light, \textit{thod rgal}, is a procedure taking place through an articulated structure of meditation and of yoga which draws within its power all the modes of psycho-physical activity of the meditating individual.

In both cases (\textit{khrugs chod} and \textit{thod rgal}) we are concerned with a process of meditation based upon the Light (\textit{\'od gsal chen po thod rgal}, No.103, p.21b), but there is a fundamental difference between the two. Seven \textquote{superiorities} of \textit{thod rgal} over \textit{khrugs chod} are mentioned: only \textit{thod rgal} opens up a vision of transcendent consciousness (\textit{ye shes}) and of the pure light\footnote{See the third chapter of the \textit{Karma} for the further discussion of this topic.} and brings about a convergence of transcendent consciousness and the limitless sphere of existentiality (\textit{dbyings}). The first method represents a state of preparatory tension, in which the process of meditation and yoga (\textit{rtsa rlung}) is not yet refined, while nothing coarse (\textit{rag pa}) remains in the all-dissolving light of the second method. In \textit{khrugs chod} the body can be represented as transformed into a particle of dust or an atom, but it does not vanish into the light. Using the first method alone the \textit{sgyu lus} cannot reach its limiting state, the diamond body therefore cannot be achieved either, and one cannot succeed in bringing about the salvation of others in a complete manner.

In the \textit{rdzogs chen} school, as in all the yoga schools, the body is seen as an essential instrument of salvation.\footnote{\textit{Nam chos} (SE.4.54): \textit{rDzogs chen}, \textit{rdzogs chen}, \textit{bka\textquotesingle{a} brgyud}, \textit{chos skus}, \textit{chos kyi bka\textquotesingle{a} brgyud}.} It is provided with \textquote{channels} or \textquote{centres} (\textit{rtsa}, Skt. \textit{nadi}) within which the vibratory potential or respiration (\textit{rlung}) moves, as does the action of the inner intelligence (\textit{nang rig pa}), which must be found again (\textit{ngo spro}) before the light of the essence can shine out (No.103, p.26). Five significant things (\textit{gnad}) have thus to be kept in mind: (1)-(3) the body with its three particular postures, (4) speech and (5) mind (\textit{sems}). The three postures of the body are those of the lion, the elephant and the ascetic (\textit{drang stong}). The first of these corresponds to the body of infinite spiritual potentiality (\textit{chos skus}), the second to the body of co-fruitation, the third to the apparent body. In the first manner liberation is brought about from the troubles caused by illusory appearances, in the second the enjoyment of Being as such is attained, as distinct from the being of such and such an object, while in the third this Being manifesting itself in its freely chosen appearances is viewed with the eye of the doctrine (ibid., p.29b).

With respect to the word (\textit{ngag}) the most important thing is not to
speak, for from words arise the dichotomies with their antagonistic consequences. With respect to the *sems* it is a question of giving up, through control over the vibratory faculty or respiration (*rlung*) the conception of oneself as a thing, and thus bringing about the convergence of potential existentiality (*dbyings*) with intelligence (ibid., p.28).

The decisive factor with respect to the *rig pa* is liberation from all that appears as existing; the intelligence must be visualized as infinite or as reabsorbed into celestial space, upon which a dark blue line appears in its midpoint; this is the exterior sphere of the existential (*phyi dbyings*): the emanation of the five lights with their five colours from that light is the interior sphere of the existential (*nang dbyings*). Although an exterior and an interior sphere (*dbyings*) are spoken of separately, the two are, however, indissolubly bound to unity, like the lightning which is visible in the sky in its full illuminating power, but when seen from inside a tent appears to illuminate it from the inside (ibid., p.31). This duality is only appearance (*snang*).

The *thod rgal* meditation aims at the dissolution of the physical and mental world into creative light. It is practised in the morning or the evening, and consists in fixing one’s gaze on the sun or on a light. After repeated attempts and experiences, whose duration differs according to the subject undertaking the practice, a point appears. If one continues to fix one’s eyes upon the sun, then this point divides into five concentric circles which are considered to be manifestations of the five lights mentioned. The midpoint (*thig le*) is regarded as a symbol of the void (*stong pa*). If one meditates on it intensively, then the divine forms appear, each one characterized by its own symbols and signs. If this point is kept as the centre of contemplation, it spreads out until it penetrates through infinite space. Thus all distinction between subject and object disappears.\(^{33}\)

The result of the light-meditation carried out in *thod rgal* is that the physical body dissolves and is transformed into a radiant body, the ‘rainbow body’ (*ja’ lus*). Deceptive appearances, all things which appear to our mind as an object (*snang yul*), become one with absolute potentiality (*thig le = chos sku*). The light appearing in the ‘path’ phase becomes one with the *rig pa* ab aeterno visualized in the ‘fruit’ phase; this is the vision of *Kun tu bzang po*. This identity is called ‘meeting of the mother and son lights’. The convergence between voidness, liberation from all that can be expressed, and luminosity, the identity of voidness and light, transcends all possibility of definition and can therefore never be content of the intellect. It is the state-in-itself of the undefiled mind, all-penetrating consciousness of Being, beyond time and space, the essence-body, the body of light without limit.

The *rNying ma pa* also divide their doctrinal structure into three
groups: (a) the group concerning sems (sems sde) which culminates in the Maha-yoga Tantra; (b) the klong group (klong sde) whose principles are explained in the Anu-yoga Tantra and form an initiation into the khrengs chod described above; (c) the group of 'formulae' (man ngag sde), the quintessence of the teaching (rDzogs chen), presented in the Ati-yoga Tantra: the introduction into the practice of thod rgal. While it is possible with respect to certain masters to establish agreements and correspondences between the Mahayoga and Anu-yoga Tantra on the one hand, and the 'Father'- and 'Mother'-Tantras of the other schools on the other hand, the rDzogs chen adherents affirm the absolute superiority of the Ati-yoga Tantra, to which they assign a special state of pre-eminence.

10 The gcod tradition

The gcod school, which constitutes a monastic tradition in its own right, merits a special mention. Its teachings are, however, accepted by other schools too, although these schools diverge from gcod with respect to practice and method. The chief gcod monastery is situated in Ding ri. Its theoretical premises are connected with the Phar phyin (Skt. Prajnaparamita) scriptures, and in particular with the chapter on Mara. The Prajna, called 'mantra which heals all ills', is the text which Ma gcig Lab sgron ma used to recite (klog) continuously. The theoretical basis of gcod certainly stands in opposition to that of the teachings of the other schools. While they take the view, as we have seen, that suffering is removed after the destruction of the moral defilements (nyon mong s) which cause it, the disciples of gcod insist to the contrary that the destruction of suffering brings about the destruction of the moral defilements.

The practical side of gcod has the aim of cutting through (gcig) the process of thought (rnam rtog). This process causes the duality of the apparent world in that it presupposes a thinking subject and an object which is being thought of, and thus also an act of thinking. It is at the basis therefore of all egotism and of the emergence of all emotional and thinking activity (bdag tu 'dzin, No.2, p.11b). The pure state of Being cannot be attained without the suppression of this process. gcod is intended therefore to cut off the discursive process at the root and so directly (gcig char, ibid., p.8b) help bring about the insight that in reality nothing exists. Out of this flows liberation from all dichotomies of good or bad (bzang ngan med pa, ibid., p.11b) and thus from all the fears of life, including the fear of birth and of death (skye 'chi, ibid., p.12a), and therefore from all deceptive appearance. The meditation takes the form of a sacrifice, an offering of body and of life, a destruction
of the five constituents of the human person (phung po ltha). The goddess who watches over geod is called ‘She who rejects every process of life’ (lus srog gzang du bor ba’i ma, loc.cit.). The offering or sacrifice is here symbolically conceived as the task of the five senses—the doors which allow deception its entry into the world of concepts and through which this deception unfolds. In this sense the goddess is the hypo-
statization of infinite potential existentiality (chos dbyings, Skt. dharmadhatu), but she only plays a provisional role as a support (dmigs) of the meditation process, during which she is conceived of visually in her own form. In invoking her as Mother and thus ascribing an instrumental value to her the meditator temporarily forgets that he is concerned here only with a symbolic representation through which human finiteness attempts to represent the inconceivable and inexpressible. The spontaneous hymns born out of this experience are not inferior in their poetic force to the poems of Indian mystics such as Rama Prasad. He too evokes Kali as the divine dispenser of life and death, Kali who symbolizes at base the secret principle of life subject to the laws of universal development. Similarly the Tibetan mystic describes himself as a son calling upon his mother to liberate him from all vanities and errors:

Mother, when you are there (near to me),
I am at peace.
When you go away, my heart
Is full of sadness (ibid., p.12b).

And he implores her for her blessing (byin gyis brolb), the mother’s blessing, as if the reintegration he desires is to be owed to her grace and not to his perseverance and energy in meditation. In this sense one cannot speak of grace, for the divine symbol itself has its origin in the thought of the meditator, and consequently no grace can descend on the mystic from the outside. Certainly we should never lose sight of the fact that we are dealing here with a drama which can shake profoundly the mental and emotional structure of he who gives himself to the meditation, and in the course of which the givens of the ordinary world of experience are reduced to nothing.

In its totality the process described possesses great psychological significance. There are two distinct elements in its actualization and course up to the limit of the transition to the other plane. These are a preparatory element, in which the deceptive assumption of the existence of gods and demons is made, and a second element which brings about the certitude that gods and demons are nothing but emanations of our own thought. Through the joint action of these two contradictory elements, the meditation process takes form until its dissolution. This takes place when illusion yields place definitively to
the certainty, now lived through and experienced and not just given by the intellect, that in these representations one is dealing only with symbols and not with essences or realities. A process of evocation lies at the basis of this drama, the voluntary calling forth of a hallucinatory state during which gods and demons appear visibly before the meditator. This state results from intensive meditation on the ‘seed’ or mystic syllable, the germ or embryo of every divine form which finds its expression in a particular phoneme from which a light shines that can solidify into a divine or demonic form.

A significant fact here is that geod customarily prefers to concentrate on fear-evoking deities, on the gnod sbyin, gdon, dregs, 'dre and so on, in their terrifying, bloody and death-dealing forms of manifestation.

To pave the way for this emotional crisis and for the required visualization, the geod teachings recommend that the appropriate exercises should be carried out in cemeteries (dur khrad) and amongst corpses. The meditator must be equipped with a trumpet made from a human tibia (rkang gling) and the damaru, the shaman’s drum. The preferred time is the ‘dark fortnight’. In this fear-inspiring atmosphere the mystic is placed alone, with the conviction acquired from his daily meditation on the Prajnaparamita and from the teaching of his master, but with all the archetypal fears in his subconscious of humanity in general and the Tibetans in particular. At the moment of invocation the certainty that the images standing before him are creations of his own mind comes to his aid against the outbreak of primeval fears. Certainly a merely intellectual assurance is not sufficient to convince him that these forms do not exist in themselves, but are mere illusory products of thought-processes not yet brought under control. The meditator has to absorb them in their primal ‘seed’ and let this ‘seed’ disappear into his heart. Only thus does he attain, thanks to continually renewed practice, the lived certainty that these manifestations are not real, but illusory images emanating from himself. In this way also he acquires the conviction that each thought, each experience, each form, each thing is no more than the play of uncontrolled thought, which disappears at the breaking forth of that luminous undifferentiated consciousness, out of which the unreal flows.

Two ways are open to man. One leads to a state which may be human or even divine, the state of being subject to joy and grief. Its content or duration may vary, it is still always the path of samsara. The other way is the path of Enlightenment (byang chub, Skt. bodhi), the path of liberation (thar lam). In order to traverse it, geod must cut off the basic causes of the cycle of samsara at their roots. This process begins with two erroneous views (ldog), one general, abstention from evil and so on, and one particular, the performance of good actions: even this latter does not liberate one from the cycle of samsara. Both
good and bad must be overcome and in this way the lived certainty must be reached that there is neither subject nor object. Thus every bondage to one or the other can be blocked immediately at its root. These premises are already familiar to us, but here their practical expression is different and above all much more intense.

The theoretical basis of the meditation practices is formed by the idea that there are many domains of the world of demons (bdud): demons here are embodiments of the illusions to be overcome. Some ‘demons’ presuppose a contact (thogs bcas), in other words one is concerned here with the senses and the objects of the senses. Other ‘demons’ do not depend on such contact: they reign over the objects of thought-activity, the causes of hopes, fears, satisfactions, attachment to virtues practised in the ‘path’, attachment to all means of relief against illness, punishment or injury by supernatural powers, and also hesitations and doubts concerning one’s own abilities and so on. Such illusory powers, conceived of as demons, can be suppressed on the plane of quiescence, and there dissolved through that supreme intuition according to which there is nothing that can be overcome or striven for, neither demonic beings nor things, nor indeed elimination or aspiration as such. If a fear-inspiring phantom arises, there is no point in avoiding it; one must look it boldly straight in the eye, and indeed look through the meditation on non-existence at both the object causing the fear and also the subject experiencing the fear, and the fear itself as such. The meditation is particularly strengthened by the offering of one’s own body as food or plunder to fear appearing or manifesting itself in demonic form. In so far as the mystic continually holds the instructions given to him in his mind, and imbues them with the recognition that nothing exists that has self-existent being or is other than deception, he extricates himself from the situations possible to the dichotomizing operation of thought, and leads everything to its dissolution in the void. All that appears to us as an external world then vanishes; our psychic continuum no longer knows what it desires to actualize or overcome; the psycho-physical components of the personality disappear, and with them also age, illness and death, similarly every thought of sin, blame, evil, suffering and so on is swept away.

Manifestations of maya (cho ’phrul) of the kind described above are regarded by unenlightened men as the work of demons (bdud, bgegs). As soon as such phenomena take place, one is instructed to direct one’s contemplation upon one’s own body, and beginning from this to undertake the transition to Being standing beyond all individuation. For this purpose the mystic is ready to place himself in the worst conditions: he resorts to spots and places where corpses are exposed, where the demons (gnyan) live, in order to commence the path of
meditation there. Nor does he offer gifts or prayers to the protective
gods (srung ma), for it is enjoined upon him to act alone, to stand the
test on his own, to prove to himself that the teachings imparted to him
are not merely a theoretical concoction. Thus he allows his imagination
full play: terror-evoking delusions rise before him, the heavens break
apart over him and the waters break forth beneath him, while demonic
monsters press in on him from all sides. But it is given to him to
confront these illusory forms born from his own mind without fear:
steady and imperturbable, he remains in his place as if he was at
home, he remains serene in the consciousness that these gruesome
visions are nothing but illusions of the deceiving imaginative power of
his mind.

Once the mystic has reached this stage, the tumult of illusions
comes to a halt. It can even happen that they no longer arise at all,
though in his subconscious certain latent fears, potential dispositions
for such visions, still remain. In this case the yogin (rnal 'byor pa) has
recourse to stronger practices of concentration (Skt. samadhi), practices
that are able to dissolve even the subllest illusions of maya into
nothing. Through this means any idea of fear, or even of a person
seized by fear, vanishes (No.24).

Error too appears ever more rarely, finally to evaporate in a limiting
state in which error is purified so to speak with a kind of artifice of
error, concepts purified with the aid of concepts. The dichotomizing
thought process in its infinite ability of projection and reflection thus
creates itself within itself and finally finds voidness again, beyond all
duality, in the limiting state. Actually it is a question here of a
rediscovery, not of an attainment, for there is nothing to attain.

The ritual performed here unfolds in four successive phases, each
with a name of its own: (1) 'white sharing' (dkar 'gyed): one's own body
is conceived of as transformed into ambrosia and offered to the 'Three
Jewels'; (2) 'multicoloured sharing' (kha ra 'gyed): one's own body is
conceived of as transformed into a garden, into foods, into clothes,
into desirable objects, which are offered to the gods called 'Protectors',
who are able to overcome all of the hindrances standing in the way of
the attainment of Enlightenment; (3) 'red sharing' (dmar 'gyed): one
imagines the flesh and blood of one's own body being dispersed
throughout all of space and offered to the demons, 'dre and srin; (4)
'black sharing' (nag 'gyed): one imagines that one's own sins and those
of all beings are absorbed into one's own body, as an enormous
accumulated sin, and that the body is offered to the demons as a
ransom for this sin and for all the sufferings and misfortunes arising
out of it.

The following implements are required for the performance of these
rituals: a trumpet made of a human tibia (rkang gling), which renders
lha and 'dre submissive; a damaru (the shaman’s drum); a small bell; hair woven into a tuft and a piece of Persian cloth (stagg gzig gi ras ma); human skin or skin of a wild animal with the claws intact: this serves to subdue the demons (dregs).

The familiarity of the followers of gcod with demonic powers (which are thoroughly real in the eyes of simple people) and the emphasis placed by them on everything macabre and gruesome has brought about an ever stronger movement of the sect towards an attitude which links them, perhaps genetically too, apart from the specific content of their teachings, with certain Indian sects who were concerned with proving their total indifference to common opinion through ever stranger practices. The rules which they observed bear witness to a marked disdain towards everyday customs, indeed a total lack of concern and insensitivity (phyogs ris med) with regard to them. These people would eat the food of lepers and beggars and wear their clothes, and live in their company rather than in the monasteries (No.83, p.23b). This attitude went along with the penchant widespread among many circles of adepts for exorcistic activity, so that it is hardly surprising that many followers of these schools concern themselves, apart from the conjuration of demons, with, for example, scapulimancy (divination by means of shoulder-blades) and other magical divinatory rituals. In East Tibet gcod was practised above all in two bKa’ brgyud pa monasteries, rGyu ne and sKyabs che, where the monks, once they had finished the appropriate Tantric training and taken the relevant tests, received the title of master of gcod (gcod pa).

When epidemic disease breaks out, it is the gcod adepts who attend to the transport of the corpses to the cemetery (they are believed to be immune to any infection) and to the cutting through and breaking up of the bones. Their services are called upon to protect against epidemics: if an infectious disease has broken out in a village, they carry out their conjurations using a ball of tsamba into which is mixed various substances like black grain, black sesame seed and so on. Then the village population gathers on a meadow and a great fire is kindled. The exorcists perform a dance accompanied by damaru and rchang gling while reciting appropriate magical formulae. Finally they throw the tsamba ball into the fire with great force; flaming up and scattering sparks it whistles away over the heads of the assembled people. Thus the epidemic is overcome. This ceremony is called me zhags. Another goes under the name gshed ’dur; gshed is a demon who accompanies a dead person, obstructs his entry into paradise and can also be harmful to his relatives and friends. These monk-exorcists can be recognized from the fact that they wear a special hat of rectangular form.
11 Conclusion. The special nature of the Lamaist teaching of salvation

If we look back over the brief characterization given in the preceding pages of the doctrinal opinions held by the various schools, then one fact which we have already mentioned deserves attention above all else. Despite all their differences in detail, the schools have a definite common group of premises, even if some particular traits receive greater or lesser emphasis here or there, or are modified in various ways. Common to all naturally is that indispensable propaedeutic, without which one cannot speak of an acceptance of Buddhism: the vow to traverse the path of salvation, the taking upon oneself of the practice of salvation leading to this goal, the recognition of the contingent nature, and consequently of the voidness of every possible object of thought, and so on. It is evident that, beyond these general premises, the magical and gnostic foundations of Tantrism lend their unmistakable imprint to the whole Lamaist way of thinking and practice. This applies not only to the liturgical structure but also in the formation of the entire mode of living directed towards the goal of salvation. It would be a grave error, and reveal an insufficient understanding of the special nature of Tibetan Buddhism, if one were to disregard the soteriological goals permeating and dominating it. It is not a question here of a purely intellectual process, not of the acquisition of theoretical knowledge, but rather of the alignment of the entire cognitive activity towards the goal of salvation. All along the line intellectual understanding remains subordinate to lived experience. The discovery and testing of truth and rational insight into it has to withdraw in the face of the lived possession of certainty. The intellect can at most pave the way for salvation; it cannot bring it about. To help the experience become reality, Lamaism calls in theoretical teaching, spiritual ecstasy and yogic technique in all their forms. Only in this way can the complete reversal of the planes of existence which is at the centre of the Buddhist revelation be actualized. All that can be thought is indeed relative and ‘void’, but this ‘voidness’ is void only in so far as Being cannot be encompassed by our thought. This voidness is equated with Bliss (bde) and with Light (’od gsal) and goes beyond the unending alternatives of the thinkable. True and untrue, empirical and absolute truth, samsara and nirvāṇa, all dichotomies in short, are only arbitrarily made signs and designations, and as such contaminate the inexpressible, non-objectified Light-Voidness. Although the origins of Non-Being, of the qualifiable out of the non-qualifiable, remain a mystery which cannot be penetrated even through the doctrine of defilement, man (who is himself too no more than an illusory manifestation) can overcome thanks to his sems his own illusory appearance as object, as well as the world of things
which is given an objective character only by conceptualization. This extremely subtle *sems*, carried by the respiration, is made of a special substance not comparable with ordinary matter: it is Light, its state of existence is pure luminosity, objectless consciousness of Being. In order to remain firm in its plane of existence situated beyond all defilement, the *sems* must raise and purify itself and become *sgyu lus*, *ye shes lus* and ‘diamond body’. At this point the soteriological structure is completed by the doctrine of the four ‘bodies’; the body *in se* and the three repeatedly mentioned above: the body of infinite spiritual potentiality (*ekos sku*), the body of co-fruitation (the heavenly body which reveals itself to he who can bring himself into harmony with this body preaching throughout all eternity in the paradises) and the apparent body of the *katabasis* into the world of *samsara*, for the preaching of the Word and to serve as an example to mankind. The goal of esoteric experience is the transformation of the I which has descended within the confines of space and time. It is, however, precisely this spatio-temporal foundation (*gzhi*) on the basis of which the reversal of the planes leading to one of the three Buddha bodies takes place (No. 102, p.94). By means of its transformations the *sems* acts as intermediary between everyday reality, the meditating being (such as he is, with all his karmic heritage, in his localized spatio-temporal aspect) on the one side, and those possibilities on the other side which continually indicate higher forms of being. The path leading to these special modes of being stands open to the truly initiated mystic. In this way the apparent discontinuity between voidness, consciousness of Being, the endless sprouting forth of divine figures in the so thickly populated Buddhist pantheon, and the apparentness of all that presents itself as existent and conceivable is closed. Here we witness a unique process of emanation and reintegration: the emanation of the illusory existentiality of the world of appearance, and its disappearance back into the voidness of Being. The theory and mysticism of Buddhism provide ‘technical’ apparatus for this latter process. Through the liturgical and meditative phases, the mystical individuality of the innate *sems* of the adept reaches a breakthrough, it effects an entry into those higher planes, into the marvellous fusion through which the distance between those planes and that of humanity is abolished. The mystic himself becomes able to transform himself temporarily into a god (*lhav bskyed*), a process familiar from Indian liturgy: *na adevo devam arcayet*, ‘he who does not change himself into a god cannot worship a god’. This principle has developed in an altogether extraordinary manner in the Vajrayana and within Lamaism. Beginning from the meditation formulae which describe the aspect and symbols of particular gods, the meditator concentrates on an individual form chosen by him, he transforms
within his mind the place where he is into a paradise until this actually appears before his sight. In its centre is the palace of a god. At its centre there is a white lotus in the case of a radiant, benevolent god, or a red lotus for a bellicose and fear-inspiring god. He contemplates the magically generative primal syllable (sa bon) as upon this lotus or upon a corpse (in the case of an evil deity). This primal syllable is a symbol in sound in which the essence of the god concerned is represented. If Phyag na rdo rje, for example, is to be evoked, then the meditator will concentrate upon the 'black' syllable hum in his heart, until he becomes one with that god in the particular aspect evoked by him. When he has transformed himself in this way into Phyag na rdo rje, he meditates on the white syllable om (generative phoneme of the Body of all Buddhas), visualizing it within his head, on the red syllable ah between his shoulders (creative sound on the plane of Speech), and on the blue syllable hum in his heart (creative phoneme on the plane of Mind). Such a transformation of oneself into a god is called dam tshig sms dpa' (Skt. samaya-sattva), 'being resulting from the vow'. It is prescribed in particular for rituals of exorcism directed against demonic powers: Phyag na rdo rje has the power of making demons obedient. The transformation of oneself into a divine being (bdag bskyed) is common to all schools, although the liturgical procedures which bring it about through a series of stages vary in form. A sudden onset of the transformation is also accepted, especially by the rNying ma pa, and is called lha krong bskyed. When the transformation takes place the evoked god can also appear opposite one's actual self (mdun bskyed), in other words it is projected spatially in front of the beholder. Alternatively one speaks of creation 'out of transcendent consciousness' (ye shes sms dpa', Skt. jnana-sattva). Out of the generative sound associated with Phyag na rdo rje, appearing at the centre of the heart of the meditator who has become Phyag na rdo rje, luminous rays spring forth which reveal Phyag na rdo rje residing in his divine palace in his paradise (lCang lo can). They strike his heart, lead upwards his ye shes (his transcendent consciousness) and bring him in front of the meditator. This is the point at which the mystic offers to the deity the prescribed ritual offerings (mchod pa). A further kind of evocation bears the name 'being of synstasy' (ting nge 'dzin sms dpa', Skt. samadhi-sattva). This takes place when the hierophant, who is already transformed (as ye shes sms dpa') to 'jam dbyangs (Skt. Manjusri) visualizes in his heart, for example the creative syllable dhik, in which the essence of rDo rje 'jigs byed, the active and ferocious aspect of Manjusri, is represented, in order then to bring about the transformation from the first aspect of Manjusri into the second. However, it can also happen that some of these transformations result successively from each other. For example, the meditator may visualize himself as
THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

‘vow-being’ (dam tshig sms dpa’), with the ‘being of transcendent consciousness’ (rgs shes sms dpa’) situated in his throat, and then in the heart of that being the ‘being of synentasy’ (ting nge ’dzin sms dpa’).

Other variants of these rituals are, for example, evocations by means of a vessel (bum bskyed⁵⁵). Meditations of this type can lead to regular proliferations of mandalas, when the meditator conceives of and visualizes himself under various forms, for example as rNam par snang mdzad, and emanates out of his being transformed in this way complete infinite chains of deities, and absorbs them again into himself. Again the mystic may evoke infinite Buddhas out of infinite space, in order to receive the initiatory consecration from them, and then dismiss them again into the space identified with his own heart.

On the subject of invocations of gods there exists in India as in Tibet an extensive literature, concerning which the views of individual teachers and schools differ from each other in major respects. Many, for example, deny the transformation of the self into the deity in the bya rgyud. In general it can be said that the individual elements of the invocations result in extremely complex forms: one begins from the seed-syllable in one’s own heart, created out of voidness; the seed-syllable is transformed onto a moon or sun throne conceived of as situated in space; this is followed by concentration on the sounds forming the mantra of particular deities, and then on the letters forming these mantra. During the recitation of these formulae various parts of one’s own body must be touched. This process is called phyang rgya (Skt. mudra), and corresponds to the anganya, ‘placing the hands upon the parts of the body’, of Indian liturgical practice. During this the conviction that one has become god (nga rgyal) must be constantly strengthened.

The facts given can serve as especially noteworthy examples of the aptitude of Indo-Tibetan religious masters for setting loose psychic states of intense experience in which the meditator goes outside his self. These examples attest their capacity for seizing upon the mechanisms working at the deeper levels of the psyche, and so releasing paranormal states which the masters can then direct appropriately. In any case the most essential and decisive of these processes consists of the dissolution of all appearances into voidness; all forms must be purified through their disappearance into the ‘void’. In that the mystic renews in himself the universal metamorphosis, he creates according to the plan of the meditation used by him all possible forms on a purified plane, in order to allow the pure forms thus achieved to dissolve once more into that same inconceivable matrix. All this is directed to a single goal: to reproduce in oneself the process of
emanation and reabsorption, and in this way to divest all appearances of their pretense of reality.

Each individual is assigned a guardian deity (yi dam lha), a particular divine form with which he is in harmony and which through this connection directs the actualization of his catharsis on the proper path. The sudden apparition of the yi dam is of decisive significance to him who receives it, to whom the theophany is revealed by his personal bla ma, in a dream, or through a mysterious sign right at the beginning of the initiatory process (for example through the casting of a flower onto a section of the mandala drawn or painted on the floor of the temple; the falling of the flower on the section where a particular god is represented reveals the mystical relationship between the initiand and that god). The choice of a yi dam is determined by the number of families (rigs) into which the pantheon is divided (and therefore human beings too are classifiable). Each god and each man is assigned to one of the five ‘families’ \(^{56}\) (rigs lnga), which are conceived of differently according to the different Tantra classes. Although the five families, the pentad, belong to the body of co-fruition, they are also in a certain sense bodies of appariation, in so far as they appear in other forms, although higher than human, and must stand in connection with others. As already stated, in us too there exists at the ‘fruit’ phase, because of the possibility of a transformation of each individual component (phung po) of our psycho-physical personality into one of the five Buddhas of the pentad, the potentiality of the transformation of these our components, indeed our very defilements, into divine forms, on the basis of secure correspondences. We equally are formed of five components, although these appear contaminated through the condition of samsara. These components are form (gzugs), sensory perception (tsnor), conceptualization (‘du shes), karmic impulses (‘du byed) and the principle of consciousness (nam par shes pa), and to each of these components there corresponds an emotion which is capable of transfer to the divine plane: hate, mental delusion, envy, sensual indulgence, passion (the state of passion as such). At the moment of transition these five constituent elements of our personality are transformed through their purification, each into a god of the pentad: rNam par snang mdzad (Skt. Vairocana), Rin chen ’byung ldan (Ratnasambhava), ’Od dpag med (Amitabha), Don yod grub pa (Amoghasiddhi) and Mi bsksyod pa (Aksamobhya). This transformation is the passage to their real essence (ngo bo). The yi dam is a kind of symbol under which this progressive deliverance is accomplished. Not only does each person have his own yi dam; each school also possesses yi dam of its own. The most important yi dam of the Sa skya pa, for example, are Kye rdo rje, bDe mchog and rDo rje rnal ’byor ma. Those of the rNyings ma pa school are dGongs ’dus and Phur pa bka’ brgyad (cf. No. 27, pp.33ff.). Those of the
THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

bKa’ brgyud pa are dGyes pa ’i rdo rje, bDe mchog and rDo rje rnal ’byor ma, while those of the dGe lugs pa are gSang ’dus, bDe mchog, ’Jigs byed and so on.

This long list gives only a few examples, and many others could be cited. In addition, it is possible to meditate on each of these yi dam in various ways and according to particular methods (for example, bDe mchog according to the system of the yogin Lu i pa, or that of Nag po pa, or that of Dril bu pa), each according to the techniques of evocation and performance in use in different Tantra classes.

The meditation processes indicated above abolish the distance between the world of men and the divine sphere. They evoke the divine being and draw him down on to the human plane through the creative phonemes appropriate to him and the attracting effect of the light, and at the same time they raise the human being to a plane beyond human existence. This transformation or ecstasy is brought about through the sems being purified to the level of transcendent consciousness (ye shes), creating at the same time a plenitude of light which envelops and overwhelms the meditator and irradiates his visions. The experience he lives through is directed towards a single goal: to enable the meditator to actualize in a moment of ordinary time that state of divine corporeality situated beyond the human. Sems serves the meditator as his logos in this process. Without sems there could be no contact between the human and superhuman planes, no transformation or movement from one plane to another. It is the innate sems which through meditation attains to dimensions beyond our normal senses, and it does this not only in anticipation of that which is awaited in the ‘fruit’ phase, but above all in order to prepare for that state, to be equipped for it.

After the death of a man who has followed the teachings of salvation three ways are open to him: to enter the chos sku, the body of co-fruition or the apparent body. In addition there exists the possibility of a re-entry into samsara, which contains divine existences as well as human, demonic and animal.

Certainly it can happen that after the state of contemplation of the experience of one of the higher planes in the ‘path’ phase, the sems can fall back into the sphere of influence of illusory appearance. Only constantly repeated meditation practice creates the preconditions for the definitive bringing about of the blissful moment in which the overcoming of existence and suffering is actualized.

Thus we can understand the great significance which all schools, especially the bKa’ brgyud pa, attribute to the ‘six principles’ (chos drug) of Naropa, teacher of Mar pa: (a) gtum mo, a yogic process which manifests itself physically through the voluntary raising of the body temperature; (b) sgyu lus (c) dream (rmi lam); (d) light (’od gsal); (e)
transference into other forms of existence (\textit{\textit{\textipa{\textit{\textipa{pho ba}}}; (f) \textit{bar do}}}). The first principle serves primarily as a technique of Hatha-yoga which accomplishes the process of the 'four consecrations' through a difficult control of breathing and a visual contemplation of fire and of the sun in various parts of the mystic's body, and which leads into the hallucinatory vision of one's own body being completely in flames. The second and third of Naropa's six principles are closely linked together, in that they try to bring dream images into the service of the way of salvation. If our daily conduct of life does not conform to the precepts of the teacher then the karma accumulated in us in the past ensnares us in the illusions it awakens, while we add new illusions to those already stored up. Such illusions also affect the images in dreams, which are contaminated by them. Being perpetuated in this way, this state affects also the state of intermediate existence after death. The effect of impure apparent reality thus spreads over three realms: illusion as action of karma, the extending of such illusion into dream life, and the influence of the impure illusory states on the mental body (\textit{\textit{\textipa{yid lus}}}) when it seeks a new incarnation at the moment of death. Against this triple realm of 'impure' illusion (cf.p.107) can be opposed a triple realm of 'pure' illusion, which is created through meditation on one's own body as the divine body—into which one's own body can be transformed through the prescribed methods because of its lack of real substance. This 'pure' illusion guards the dream state against the images caused by impure concepts. In the intermediate existence which takes place between death and new reincarnation the \textit{\textit{\textipa{yid lus}} is transformed into a body of co-fruition. The meditation here relies on a yogic technique which culminates in the identification of the meditator with \textit{\textipa{rdDo \textit{tje 'chang}}, or according to the teachings of others, identification with \textit{\textipa{bDe mchog} in union with his paredra (\textit{\textipa{yab yum}}). Then the meditator visualizes a triangle (\textit{chos 'byung}) under his navel. This triangle, white on the outside, red on the inside, is a symbol of the archetypal Matrix; within it one visualizes those beings who do not perceive the true nature of things on their endless wanderings. Then these beings dissolve again into the light, flow back, disappear, and only the triangle remains. A meditation of this kind has its effect on dreaming too, which can thus be made usable for the goal of Enlightenment. The illusory perceptions of the day are of the same stuff as dream-images; if one can control one, one has power over the other too. Dream and not-knowing, \textit{ma rig}, are related; both are causes of illusory apparent images of the mind. Out of this certainty results the quiescence of all concepts; all that appears springs forth from the defilements already present \textit{ab initio}. Because these operate from the waking state on dream-concepts, one is instructed to grasp the dreamlike nature of the two apparent worlds
through the insight that all is like a dream. Yogic technique adds the idea that the respiration flowing in the upper part of the body condenses itself into a white ‘point’ (thig le), the ‘father-semen’, and that in the lower part of the body condenses into a red point, the ‘paredra-blood’. Both of these points are situated in the heart. Progressive meditation on these two points creates the same state in the adept as the four consecrations: the first consecration takes place when the two points are in movement; the second when they touch; the third when the bliss resulting from their touching is experienced; the fourth when the two points fuse into one. The importance of the fourth of these phases can scarcely be surprising in view of what has been explained previously. In this phase the light (’od gsal) in its identity of essence with the sens radiating out of it is concentrated, like a lamp illuminating both itself and other objects without aid from outside. The light-mind, ’od gsal-sens, is that force which flows forth at the ‘fruit’ phase into one of the three bodies. It rests beyond duality in unending radiance, and in an inherent sonority which contains in potential all possible sounds. Its luminous plenitude is limited in no way by any spatial surface. It is radiant voidness, out of which streams forth the infinity of luminous concepts, but these illusory images are nothing but the intrinsic power of the void in itself. In distinction from the light of day, the light of dream is not projected onto the exterior in illusory apparent forms, but is lived in its own proper Being-in-itself.

The fifth of Naropa’s topics, transference (’pho ba), takes place at the moment of death, but this process too must be integrated into the practice of the way of salvation. For if this art of transference has not already been practised in one’s previous life one cannot have recourse to it at the moment of dying. Of course the actualizing of this experience during the ‘path’ phase does not mean that transference is already actually brought about, but rather that an experience is practised as preparation for the events of the moment of death. At death three possibilities then become open. The first and highest is transference into light, the second transference into a body of co-fruitation or an apparent body (cf.p.99); the last (for individuals of lesser ability) is the method of evocation (bskyed rim). In this meditation the meditator must conceive of himself as being a god, for example as rDo rje phag mo or some other analogous female goddess, above which he visualizes rDo rje ’chang in the form of his own bla mla, in order to represent the continuity of the revelation of salvation. The transference of the sens takes place through pronouncing the syllable hiik. Repeating this syllable in the prescribed manner causes the sens to pass through the fontanelle, the suture at the top of the skull. When one pronounces the syllable ka it returns to its place. In such a way contact is brought about between the human plane and that plane which transcends the
human. The practice must be repeated three times, until the moment when blood or moisture flows out of the fontanelle.

The further development of this ritual (’grong jug) and the intermediate state (bar do) have already been mentioned.

These theoretical and yogic elements bear witness to the directing of all experiences or modes of being that are possible towards a single purpose, salvation. The same can also be said of the rituals performed at the time of death, though here it could also be a question of a further development of primitive magical beliefs in a philosophical and mystical form. In these various rituals the mechanism of transference between various human states for soteriological purposes is perfected. This results in a grandiose attempt at transfiguration, in which the variable and contradictory conditions of the apparent world are integrated into the actualization of supreme consciousness. In this process there is no break in the continuity; what happens in us is an event for the totality; apparent temporality dissolves itself for the initiate into an eternal moment.

The examples given above (cf.p.64) confirm again that Lamaism, dominated by gnostic-magical Tantra (sngags), postulates a radiant mind-light (’od gsal—sems) present within us, which is capable of successive gradual purification until it is raised to the state of omniscience, ‘knowledge of all forms’, proper to the Buddha. It is this condition of absolute purity from every defilement, this quiescence in the limiting state of Being, that we may designate, in an analogical mode of expression, as the Supreme Reality.

Nevertheless this in no way requires the presence of the tathagatagarbha, the undefiled essence, in our cosmic continuum, as the Jo nang pa would assert. Such an assumption would lead Buddhism back towards Saivite characteristics. The luminous, undefiled absolute consciousness of Being is not immanent, but nevertheless only the purification of the sems can bring about the reversal of the planes, whether this purification takes place in a gradual or immediate fashion (according to the individual case and the school). Despite the diversity of ways in which the problem is described, it can, however, be affirmed that the Tibetan who has grown up among such gnostic and magical practices is imbued with the conviction that he is able to change into modes of being progressively higher in nature until he is dissolved into the nameless. The levels of existence already traversed on the path of meditation will enable him in the moment of death, thanks to the abilities he has acquired and the mental equipment he has gathered, to attain a Buddha-like or at least paradisial existence.

This process takes place in a progressive flashing forth of ever more radiant visions which appear to the mystic as the object of his contemplation but are no more than the experience of his
own gradual purification and self-transcendence.

An important meditation process is double in nature: the visualized evolution of the divine plane (rjes gzhig) and its dissolution (ril ’dzin) into pure light. This leads to the supreme convergence. Once the equivalence of light and voidness is actualized, quiescence into the supreme silence takes place. The two processes (ril ’dzin and rjes gzhig) contribute equally to the total overcoming of dichotomizing appearance in the light of Being. According to some doctrinal systems the essential difference between the two is that the former method proceeds from a concentration on one’s own person, the latter from concentration on the external world (snod baud, ‘container’ and ‘contained’). The elimination of one’s own illusory ego seen as a fixed individual is brought about by the former process. In the course of it the process runs on the one hand downwards from the head and on the other hand upwards from the feet, each meeting at the boundary between the two parts of the body, as represented by the heart. The two parts of the body are absorbed into the heart, and then the heart in its turn is absorbed into the phoneme hum, this phoneme into the point of absolute potentiality (thig le), and the point finally into voidness.

The following image is given of this process: if one breathes against a mirror, one’s breath clouds the whole surface, but the mist eventually disappears going inwards from the outside, covering an even smaller area until only a point remains, which also finally dissolves.

The second of these processes of reabsorption consists of the drawing back within of all of the forms outside of us, which consist of undetermined luminosity. An image for this process is a handful of snow thrown into a fountain of water and gradually dissolving within it (No. 95, pp.248ff.). All this, as always, is only to serve as a symbolic representation. The details of this exercise vary according to the particular sources used.

A process such as this, in which the identification of the object of vision with the seeing subject is brought about until it leads to the transcending of this dualism on a plane beyond all perception, is in no way an uncontrolled shining forth of images. It is rather a spiritual dynamic controlled by the meditator striving for his catharsis. This dynamic moves within the rigid architecture of the doctrine, which in its vigilance constantly imposes postulated equivalences in a progressive order: each moment represents the summation of all the preceding elements and the necessary precondition of all the elements that will follow. The vision does not come from the outside, it does not descend from above; it springs from the inside and is accomplished within the meditating subject, for only the subject moves in the sphere of influence of his own ecstasies. If vision, and the willed, controlled discipline of meditation, meet here in an indissoluble unity, we can
then see in this one of the most profound and most original contributions of Vajrayana Buddhism and its Lamaist exegesis to the consciousness of the world of mystical experience. This contribution consists above all in posing the question of the possibility of the purification of given reality. Tantric experience with remarkable boldness does not so much propose the eradication of the unavoidable and inexorably given weaknesses of man (the innate inclinations traceable to certain fundamental affects, cf. above, p.51) as attempt their transference on to a higher plane. The passions are not to be suppressed, they are a fact related in nature to our own being. Through progressive purification (cf.p.61) they become the instrument of their own transcendence, they become the basis of a reintegration, assuming that the correct mode of dealing with them is assured. This is precisely what the sNgaṣ or Tantra has to offer, as we can read in the rDo rje gur: ‘Man, such as he lives in the world, is born as a result of passion, but through passion itself he becomes free again’ (No. 84, p.14a).

The bipolarity between man and woman serves as a precondition of the transfer as well as one of the essential principles of Tantric experience; it is an undeniable fact characterizing the whole of existence. The same is true for the homology between sexuality and liberation, provided that both fundamental facts are held under the control of purifying consciousness. Sexual experience (in its usual fourfold division) is the object of a symbology both complex and therefore incomprehensible to the layman. Sexual experience is placed in relation to the esoteric process of Tantra in such a way that the individual phases of this process correspond to situations of rising sensual intensity. The glance which plays over female beauty, the smile of contentment, the holding of hands, the sexual act ending in fulfilment: these four situations correspond to the four Tantra classes (bya rgyud, sphyod rgyud, māl 'byor rgyud, bla na med rgyud).

The Tibetan teachers, especially those of the rNying ma pa, do not exclude the requirement of the presence of a female being in the initiatory rite, as the symbol of shes rab. Besides, even mKhas grub rje states that an experienced scholar of the sixty-four methods of love is needed for the performance of this ritual. Here it can be seen that we move in a sphere which is not essentially different from the world of Indian Tantra. However, it is to be noted how in Tibet (especially in the dGe lugs pa schools) this evidently delicate sub-structure, although subject to the strongest initiatory propadeutic has built over it a super-structure understood in a primarily symbolic sense, saturated with all the symbolic power of yogic technique. Despite this, one can scarcely deny that the bla na med rgyud would not rule out an interpretation of this kind, which would not be out of line with its origin, and the prescribed initiation could also be taken in an entirely literal
sense. Nevertheless the bla na med rgyud can be considered the high point of the religious experience and esoteric expression of Tibetan soteriology. This school incorporates in its totally organic structure that ardent longing of the true Vajrayana disciple (and thus of Tibetan Buddhism in general) for an ascent to higher planes of existence, for the actualization of 'Buddhahood', towards which Buddhism appears to be directed in all of its expressions, if by various ways and through various means.

Inevitable consequences result from such premises, in particular the predominating significance of vision as one of the building blocks of the contemplative process. This favours the tendency for the outward projection of the concepts standing before the mental eye, in order, through their expressive immediacy, to make easier the visual evocations of the mystic, and to direct them along specified paths. In this way the immense richness of visual imagery in Lamaist cult life becomes understandable, and similarly the objectification of Tantric experience in buildings and pictures, as is present in the so-called 'stupa of a hundred thousand images' (sku 'bum mchod rten). These images attempt to capture in visual symbols the Tantric cycles which indicate ways of salvation. They form a significant attempt to make the mysteries of the gnostic way visually present, including for example the heavenly choirs which have appeared to the meditator in the course of his radiant journey through the infinite worlds of his inner experience. The artist is restricted to putting fixed colours on to the schematic forms which appear to the mind of the mystic. The abundance of sights, almost explosive in its appearance and verging on the miraculous, is forced through painting into patterns fixed by ancient tradition. The gnostic background from which they have issued assures for these forms a rich symbolic content. At the same time these figurative representations become a kind of key for the understanding of the mysteries of the literature to which this imagery remains bound, and which is itself only accessible with difficulty.

As in the books the literal meaning is to be distinguished from a deeper, symbolic content, so the images represent not only a deity corresponding to a certain name and form; they represent a content which is accessible only to the initiate. Only if the images in question are 'read' in this special manner do they acquire saving value, do they open the way to the meditation concerned. The images of the Lamaist pantheon are unusual, unhuman, often consisting of monstrous, fantastic gods with many heads and arms, holding in each arm weapons and liturgical utensils, adorned with necklaces or diadems of human skulls and resting on corpses which are crushed underfoot. The masters of the Vajrayana 'read' this iconography, absurd at a first glance, as a symbolic writing in images, alluding to a hidden content.
THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

of experience. The double images so common in Lamaism, the so-called ‘Father-Mother’ (yab yum) representations of pairs in sexual embrace, are explained, as mentioned above (cf. p. 80), in the following way by the bla na med rgyud or the Ati-yoga. The father as ‘means’ (thabs), as the maya-body, is able through gradual adaptations to the four voidnesses and the four kinds of bliss to be transformed into consciousness of Being. The mother, his paredra, embracing the father in the sexual act, represents higher cognition (shes rab). sGyu lus and transcendent consciousness are the indivisible aspects of enlightenment and reintegration flowing together on the plane of ultimate reality. The great pleasure in coitus corresponds to ‘great voidness’, to entry into consciousness of Being, itself situated beyond any qualification. The tendency to concretization favours the creation of an abundance of visual supports to the processes of meditation and evocation. To this need can also be traced back the visual imagery associated with particular elements of the ritual and with set formulae. In the invocation Kye rdo rje, ‘Oh! rdo rje’ (rdo rje = ‘diamond’, ‘diamond state’) a deity identical in essence with Aksobhya is called upon. The cult objects too, lamps, bells, vessels acquire divine forms: during the process of evocation they serve in an appropriate costume as bringers of offerings to the deities summoned, forming a kind of chorus (mchod pa’i lha or lha mo). Whatever can serve the process described, as a base or support, is incorporated into it.

This height of mystical contemplation, this wondrous attempt to transcend into gnostic visions a lofty philosophical experience and a heritage of folk concepts and magical fears rooted in the depths of the past was however not accessible to all. Its hidden meaning was reserved to a minority, while the great majority took the visual representations at their face value. In the case of the holy scriptures things were different; people had less direct contact with them. The images, however, stood visibly before all eyes in the monastery temples, and also in private chapels. Their secret meaning therefore had to give way to the significance which could be perceived directly, as happens with all symbolic concretizations of the divine. In place of esoteric understanding there arose practices of conjuration, lay piety, offerings to implore protection and favours from the gods. In the religion of the broad masses primitive folk beliefs and formal ritualism continuously carried off the victory. Certain divine figures enjoyed particular favour as helpers of mankind. In moments of danger they were invoked, in the extreme situations of life they were called on for defence, as also for protection against evil after death in the intermediate state. sPyan ras gzigs (Skt. Avalokitesvara) accompanied and comforted the Tibetan on his entire path through life, with the holy formula om ma ni pad me hum whose magical power flows inevitably out
of the sound of each of the syllables. *Grol ma* (Tara) like *Ryans ras gzigs* sheltered men from the eight kinds of danger. The ‘great compassionate one’, Sakyamuni, had preached the law of salvation to men. *Gu ru Rin po che* (Padmasambhava) is the subduer of the demons, the enemies of the Buddhist preaching in Tibet; through his magical power, which neither men nor demons can withstand, the great exorcist not only converted them but transformed them into guardians and protectors of the Law. Thus the division became ever deeper between an esoteric form of Lamaism accessible only to a few, and which assumed a hard path of purification and uncommon qualities of character, and a folk religion whose ideas and customs succeeded in penetrating also the daily liturgy of the monasteries, with its conjurations, its magical formulae and its sacrificial offerings. Lamaism could not remain indifferent in the face of the fundamentally magical attitude of the Tibetan people, and all the less so as the Vajrayana literature itself, at least in its literal interpretation, encouraged such inclinations and hopes to a significant degree. In this folk-religious practice only certain fundamental traits of learned Lamaism remained, and within their structure mythological ideas, ceremonies, magical and cosmological concepts and so on were inserted. These Buddhism had already found on its entry into Tibet, in rich abundance and varying from place to place; not only did it not suppress them, but it wished to admit them into its own system as a venerable, anonymous heritage of the past.

**APPENDIX**

The process of transformation of *Sems* and *rLung*

What follows is very complicated and particularly difficult to condense into a few words. In general, it can be said that in this introduction to the process of psychic metamorphosis the basic elements (body, speech, mind) are presented as in their ideal situation, as residual preconceptions from our empirical world; they have to be eliminated one by one, in such a way that even thinking itself is eliminated from our mind. Since mind is light (*'od gsal*) the meditation on its luminosity is considered under a double aspect: as *dpe*, that is as a reflection or image of the nature of an example rather than real; or as *don*, in other words in reality.

Normal state of the individual (*gzhis dus*), Samsaric state (*Dasein*) (*gnyug ma*’i *lus* = breath or energy which moves the *gnyug ma*’i *sems*, cf. p.65).
Breathing and *gnyu g ma'i sems* are of identical nature (*ngo bo gcig*); between them exists a relation identical to that between fire and flame; although inseparable, they can be distinguished with reference to their function: *gnyu g sems* has the function of perceiving objects; *gnyu g rlung* is the vibratory impulse in the direction of the object; in the normal state of life (*gshi*) they are found in the 'point' (*thig le*) situated in the heart (cf. note 16, p.262).

State of sleep and dreaming

In the state of deep sleep *gnyu g rlung* and *sems* are scarcely active; in the state of light sleep *rlung* and *sems* produce the *yid lus* (mental body), capable of movement (see above, p.60), in which arise fantastic images corresponding to dreams. In the moment immediately preceding the dream, the individual sensory perceptions (*rnam par shes*) cease; when the very subtle *gnyu g rlung* comes into action and becomes the primary cause (*dngos kyi nyer len*) while the *gnyu g sems* acts as contributory cause (*lhan cig byed rkyen*) the *yid lus* of the dream is produced. When the *gnyu g sems* of the moment immediately preceding the dream acts as primary cause and the *gnyu g rlung* as contributory cause, the state of dream-*sems* is produced.

Moment of death and during *bar do* (intermediate state between death and new life)

*gnyu g sems* and *rlung* project themselves out of the 'point' (*thig le*) in the form of a mental body (*yid lus*) searching for a new birth, experiencing the illusory phenomena of the intermediate state (*bar do*); the mental body (*yid lus*) is a subtle body provided with all the senses and identical to *gnyu g sems + rlung*.

In the moment immediately preceding death, when sensory perceptions (*rnam par shes*) cease and the *gnyu g rlung* is projected outside the 'point' (*thig le*) in the heart and acts as primary cause while the *gnyu g sems* is contributory cause, the *yid lus* of the *bar do* is actualized.

In the moment following immediately on that of the *sems* of the moment of death, when the *gnyu g sems* acts as primary cause and the *gnyu g rlung* as contributory cause, the *sems* of the *bar do* is actualized.

The connection between the two moments

As far as the *rlung* and the *sems* are concerned, the connection (*mtshams 'byor*) between the moments preceding and following sleep and
dreaming is determined by the 'engrams' (bag chags) of events and of
the dichotomized state of everyday life; the connection between the
moments preceding and following the last sems of death and the lus
and sems of the intermediate existence is determined by the engrams of
the individual's actions and emotions.

Sgyu lus and its progressive purification

This body can also become the 'body of transcendent cognition' (ye
shes lus). This is achieved by the yogin through his practice of the
Tantra of the highest class (bla na med rgyud). First of all the purification
must be accomplished through meditation on the teachings of the phar
phyin, and then on those of the rgyud, especially the bla na med rgyud,
including the teachings on the four consecrations and on the vows which
arise from them. Finally the method of evocation and the method of
achievement (bskyed rim and rdzogs rim) (cf.p.74) are put into practice,
and so finally the yogin enters into full possession of the teachings.

Then the three isolations are practised (cf. note 8, p.261; lus dben,
ngag dben, sems dben). At the limit of the isolation of the sems (sems dben)
the experience of the dpe 'od gsal takes place (cf.p.61), then the yogin
devotes himself to meditation on the eight signs (rtags, cf.p.62) as a
result of which the wind of karma is reabsorbed into the heart-'point',
as happens at the moment of death. Then the subtle gnyug rlung (the
'mount' of the sems) coincides with the moment immediately following
the dpe 'od gsal functioning as primary cause, while the last moment of
the dpe 'od gsal acts as contributory cause; in this way the subtle sgyu lus
is attained, still in part not purified, and shining like a rainbow.

Then the last dpe 'od gsal moment of the isolation of mind (sems dben)
acts as the primary cause, and the gnyug rlung (its 'mount') as con-
tributory cause, leading to the attainment of the transcendent
cognition of the maya-body (sgyu lus ye shes).

At the climax of the rdzogs rim, when the actualization of the don gyi
'od gsal takes place (cf.p.56), through the successive appearance of
the eight signs which accompany death, rlung and sems in the coarse
state[4] are absorbed by the subtle rlung and sems of transcendent
consciousness (ye shes), which is situated within the heart. The subtle
rlung of transcendent consciousness, identical in nature to that of the
don 'od gsal, then acts as primary cause, while the don 'od gsal acts as
contributory cause, leading to the attainment of the pure sgyu lus.
Then when the light ('od gsal) functions as the primary cause, and the
breath (the subtle rlung, which is however identical with it in nature)
as contributory cause, the transcendent cognition (ye shes) of the
maya-body is produced.
THE DOCTRINES OF THE MOST IMPORTANT SCHOOLS

The pure maya-body (sgyu lus) is the body of transcendent consciousness (ye shes); it is without any defect; this does not, however, mean that it is free also of every defilement. The sens of this body of transcendent consciousness, emanating from the coarse mind of the body of karmic maturation, acquires the capacity to perform many kinds of miracles for the good of others; and also even while it remains in the normal body it possesses infinite faculties for the good of others. Thus the yogin achieves the Tenth ‘Earth’. When the subtle rlungs of transcendent consciousness (ye shes) (the ‘mount’ of the ’od gsal immediately after the last moment of the don ’od gsal, limiting point on the path of cognitive development) acts as primary cause, and the ’od gsal of the extreme limit of cognitive development acts as contributory cause, the two forms of contamination (moral and mental) are finally overcome.

In this way convergence into the pure body or diamond body (rdo rje sku), which represents the ultimate limit of experience, is accomplished. When, at the extreme limit of the path, the moment immediately after the don ’od gsal acts as primary cause and the subtle breath (‘mount’ of the transcendent consciousness) acts as contributory cause, the extreme limit of transcendent consciousness, which cognizes all that is knowable, infinite potentiality, the chos sku, is achieved.
Organization of monastic community: hierarchy and offices

The organization of monastic communities deserves particular attention within a study of Tibetan religious life. Not only were the monasteries highly respected and extraordinarily fruitful centres in which Tibetan Buddhism received its impetus and from which it spread itself; the entire political and cultural history of Tibet was dominated by the monasteries. From the standpoint of the teaching the various regulations collected in the Vinaya disciplinary code ("dul ba), particularly the rules of the so sor thar pa (Skt. pratimoksa) held for the monastic communities of Tibet as for those elsewhere. With few exceptions, all doctrinal schools followed the pratimoksa prescriptions concerning monastic ordination. Only after completing this ordination could the monks take on the vows and obligations required for either of the two paths now open to them: the vows of the Thought of Enlightenment (byang chub sdom) for the Mahayana, or the Tantric vows (sngags sdom) for the Vajrayana. Some schools, for example the rNying ma pa, did not regard the pratimoksa ordination as obligatory for all. According to the rNying ma pa the vows of the Thought of Enlightenment and those for Tantric practice can be taken without the preceding detour through the pratimoksa precepts, assuming participation in the everyday liturgical life of the monastic community. This possibility does not exist for the dGe lugs pa monks. Once a monk of this sect decides on marriage, or renounces the rules of the order which he took on through his consecration, he must annul his vows (rab 'byung sdom slar phul). The two vows mentioned for which observance of the pratimoksa is not required (byang chub sdom and sngags sdom) are, according to both the Sa skya pa and rNying ma pa school, also open to laymen (khyim pa). It is thus possible for a layman too to attain to the supreme experiences and to become a ‘Possessor of the Diamond’ (rdo rje ’dzin). This leads to three groups of descending spiritual level: monks (dge slong rdo rje ’dzin pa), novices (dge tshul rdo rje ’dzin pa) and finally laymen (khyim pa rdo rje ’dzin pa). The conditions and demands
of everyday life, as well as the continual growth in power of the monasteries as they became more and more involved in secular activity had necessarily to lead to a considerable softening of the originally strict monastic observance. Of the Vinaya literature, which is present in numerous translations in the Chinese canon, representing among them the various schools and their different versions of the disciplinary code, the school represented in Tibet is that of the Mulasarvastivadins.

All of humanity falls naturally into two groups: the nang pa, that is ‘those situated inside’, in other words inside the Law of the Buddha, and the phyid pa, ‘those standing outside’, that is those who do not follow the Buddha’s word. Among the nang pa, however, two further groups can be distinguished: on the one hand the dge bsnyen (Skt. upasaka), lay adherents for whom only the first five precepts are obligatory (not to kill; not to steal; not to live unchastely; not to lie; to drink no intoxicating beverages), and on the other hand the dge tshul (Skt. sramanera), the novices, bearers of the lower consecrations, and the dge slong (Skt. bhiksu), ordained mendicant monks, who have to fulfil all of the ten precepts. (The additional five are not to eat at a time when it is not permitted; not to take part in dance, song, music, theatrical spectacles; not to use any garlands, perfumes or adornments; not to sleep on a high or large bed; not to receive gold or silver.)

While the precepts for monastic consecration and for entry into the orders are in principle the same everywhere, these basic norms are overlaid by the predominance of Tantric practices, as indicated above. The consecration (dbang) awakens a spiritual maturity of another kind in the recipient, the maturity of one who has actualized the mystical practices prescribed in the various Tantric schools (sgrub bla, grub thob, Skt. siddha).

The rules and precepts valid for the monks and for the internal organization of the monasteries thus differ significantly from those of the original Vinaya. The title of dge bshes or Doctor of Theology, as it is now understood in the dGe lugs pa schools, is also a special creation reflecting the particular teaching methods of that sect, which give special weight to logic as a basic formative discipline (although the title itself is connected with a simpler one, that of dge bshes gnyen, Skt. kalyanamitra, spiritual friend, counsellor and model on the path of salvation, cf.p.23).

With respect to monastic organization, to avoid a mass of examples we will explain primarily the arrangements existing in the rNying ma pa and dGe lugs pa schools. The organizational differences between the monasteries of these two schools do not go very deep. In general the divergences between the two forms of monastic organization rest on the greater or lesser significance given to sngags, to Mantra, ritualism
and the practices of Tantra, on the one hand, and to mdo, the revelation of the Buddha as given in the Sutras, on the other. However, it must be remembered here that these two branches, into which religious literature is divided, are not to be sharply distinguished in the Lamaist view; they are rather to be seen as parts of a whole. It is true that in the practice sometimes sngags is specially emphasized and mdo recedes into the background, and sometimes the reverse is true. It is, however, always a case of a different placing of the emphasis, of a stronger or lesser commitment or preference, and never of a complete exclusion of the other area. Baring this in mind, we can say that some schools have an emphasis on doctrine which affects all areas, and stress in particular the Phar phyin (Prajnaparamita) and mNgon rtogs rgyan (Abhisamayalankara) texts and the study of logic (mtshan nyid), while other schools are primarily attracted to liturgy and mysticism. Besides this, however, there exists within particular schools some freedom regarding the traditions prevailing in some monasteries, in view of the prestige of their founders, or their especially glorious past. Quite often many variations appear in liturgy and doctrine within a particular school or sect, as for example with the Ngör pa, a sub-sect of the Sa skya pa, or (to a greater degree) among the various sub-divisions of the bKa’ brgyud pa. Among the dGe lugs pa two slightly different tendencies exist in the form of the monks following two different Tantra schools (rgyud grwa gnyis), one called ‘upper’ (stod) and the other ‘lower’ (smad). This division appears to go back right to the time of Tsong kha pa himself. According to the tradition Tsong kha pa directed Shes rab seng ge to go to Upper gTsang (gTsang stod) in order to spread the reformed teaching (stod rgyud rjying pa) there. In the course of his work Shes rab seng ge founded a teaching establishment in Lhun po rtse in gTsang stod. Later he reached Lower dbus (dbus smad) where he formed a new school in the neighbourhood of Lhasa (rgyud smad grwa tshang, ‘Lower’ Tantric College).

Afterwards his disciple Kun dga’ don grub founded a further college at Byams pa gling in dbus stod. Of this teacher it is reported that he was able through his magical powers to banish a dangerous flood threatening Lhasa. In recognition of his merits the district of rGya btab Ra mo che was granted to him (cf.p.1), and it was here that the college of rgyud stod grwa tshang (‘Upper’ Tantric College) came into being as a successor organization to that of gTsang (No. 81, p.300).²

Although both traditions derive from the teachings of Tsong kha pa, there are various differences between them. Both have the same guardian deities (yi dam), gSang 'dus, 'Jigs byed and bDe mchog, but there are some differences visible concerning the methods for actualizing the experiences embodied in the Tantric cycles, as well as the formulae
and liturgical rituals shaped by them (for example, in the way the mandala is drawn).

Another difference is that Dam can chos rgyal is the most important protective deity (srong ma) for rgyud smad, while mGos po phyag drug is for rgyud stod. In addition many external peculiarities can be mentioned, for example in the clothing: members of rgyud smad wear a yellow monk’s vest (grwa lan) and brightly coloured (skya po) shoes, while members of rgyud stod wear a dark red vest (dmar smug) and shoes of the same colour. These are certainly not profound differences, but it can nevertheless be seen that even within the bounds of orthodoxy there is here a certain freedom which contrasts with the uniformity usually found. A similar spirit of freedom is unmistakable with some other schools, such as the bKa’ brgyud pa and the wandering lamas (sngags pa). The connection between the followers of these schools and the monasteries appears to be less strict, and their mystical practices do not rule out the possibility of personal variation and individual aspects. The life of continuous wandering and the preference for solitary places of these monks would also be conducive to a more independent religious life. Stable residence in monasteries, the obligation to participate in the divine services with their fixed timetable, the strict regulation of all external aspects of life, the memorization of the basic rules and their mastery in conformity with the study precepts—all these tend to force the life of the community into a fixed structure, and to preserve the supremacy of the community as a collectivity over its individual members. This supremacy is liable to be weakened, however, when it is a question of acquiring inner experiences (sgrub) rather than participating in a ritual act or applying oneself to study or teaching. The same process took place in India as more and more methods developed for the attainment of a particular mystical state. It was never true that the path revealed by individual masters or the special ascetic methods linked to particular deities made it impossible for other, newer methods to be introduced (cf.p.33). The basic principle of Buddhism, that truth emerged or revealed itself in accordance with the spiritual maturity of the devotee or mystic, always retained its validity. Only experience itself, and the revelations and inner enrichments flowing from it, procured for the contents of the experience directly lived and undergone the value of authentic truth for those situated in an analogous spiritual condition.

We will now proceed to describe the monastic organization characteristic of the rNying ma pa school and of those related to it such as the bKa’ brgyud pa. In these schools monastic organization has a double orientation, or more exactly a double mode of training. On the one hand, there is a ritualistic and intellectual training while, on the other, practice and yoga are placed at the central point. The former
corresponds to the seminary or college (*bshad grwa*) where the liturgical and doctrinal texts are explained and commented on, while the latter is concerned with instructions for the methods for achieving mystical experience (*sgrub grwa*). This is however a formal distinction only; no genuine insight can have merely intellectual value, it must always tend to become a living spiritual experience.

Those studying in the *bshad grwa* divide into two groups. There are the students living in the monastery itself and for whose upkeep the monastic community is fully responsible during their obligatory period of study of at least five years. Then there are those students who defray their expenses from their own resources, and do not come under the monastery rules. The two classes are called *phogs zan*, those who receive their subsistence, and *rgyab stod pa*, those who live apart.

![Diagram of monk arrangements](image)

Figure 1  Arrangement of the monks for all ceremonies (*rNyin ma pa* school)

The entire monastic life is ruled by the regularly repeating cycle of liturgical assemblies and dispersals (*cho ga*). *Cho ga* means 'liturgy'. It encompasses many types and means for attainment of the desired goal. According to the Tantric system, for example, *cho ga* is the meditation in which one's guardian deity (*yi dam*) is visualized before one. The apotropaic and exorcistic ceremonies are also *cho ga*, as are the rituals accompanying monastic consecration, the rituals for opening the summer period of retreat and so on. The liturgy of *cho ga* is usually divided into a series of common observances, in the course of which the prescribed ritual compendia are recited. Fixed hand gestures
MONKHOOD, MONASTERY LIFE, RELIGIOUS CALENDAR, FESTIVALS

(*phyag rgya*, Skt. *mudra*) form part of this performance, as does the accompaniment of special liturgical instruments, of which two are absolutely indispensable, the small bell (*dril bu*) and the *rdo rje.* The hand gestures (*phyag rgya*) act as commentary on the recited text and thereby lend it a corresponding efficacy.

![Figure 2: *rdo rje*](image)

The cult act (*mchod pa*) is composed of scriptural recitation (*zhal ton* or *zhal 'don*) and liturgical performances. Its goal is to pacify or to give pleasure to (*dgyes*) a deity, or sometimes to promote the deity's actualization (*sgrub mchod*). This point requires an explanation. From the doctrinal point of view it is of no concern to the gods, in the bliss of their states of meditative absorption in the various paradises, whether a cult act is addressed to them or not. However, as far as the faithful are concerned such a cult act serves as a means of purification and promotes the accumulation of the two kinds of merit, karmic and spiritual. Similarly the doctrine provides an explanation of the exorcistic rites (*gtor zlog*). Thus it is said that in these rituals the sacrificer evokes his own evil actions or thoughts, or those of other people, in front of him in the form of demons (*bgegs*). Thus the offering given to the guardian deities (*yi dam*) is considered to be a means to overcome or chase away these demons. Again, the *mandala* ritual (*dkyil 'khor cho ga*) aids one to enter the divine fields which it depicts visually through the process of meditation and evocation. Besides these there are liturgical acts which are concerned with immediate ends, in a more direct way: for example, the attainment of certain benefits or practical advantages such as long life or health, to be attained in this life for oneself or others. These rituals are called *sku rim* (or *rim gro*). In all cases the possibility of obtaining liberation from the performance of rituals alone is excluded. The accumulation of good brought about through them gives them a purely purificatory and accessory value.

An essential element in many rituals is the *gtor ma*, a heap of barley-flour kneaded with butter. Sometimes it is coloured, and it can also be made in various forms, according to the ritual for which it is
intended. The liturgy distinguishes five aspects of the gtor ma offering: (a) the person offering the gtor ma or for whose benefit the gtor ma is offered. This person can be anyone who has taken the three vows (sdom) already mentioned, though all people can benefit from the ritual; (b) the vessel (snod) in which the offering is placed. Vessels of iron or leather are excluded. The dGe lugs pa also exclude vessels made of human skulls or skull-bones, although the rNying ma pa allow them. Vessels of gold, silver, copper, wood, terracotta (rdza) and brass are recommended. The rim of the vessel must have no fault and the base must have no holes; (c) the substances (bcud) which are offered together with the gtor ma. These are milk, barley and butter (dkar gsum) or sugar, treacle and honey (mngar gsum), and tsamba. Among the dGe lugs pa meat and beer (chang)⁴ are prohibited; (d) the entity to which the offering is made. Here a distinction is generally made between offerings proper (mchod) and gifts (sbyin). The former are made to the ‘Three Jewels’, the protective deities of the sect (mgon po), the god of wealth (nor lha) and the ‘lords of the earth’, the gods of dwelling-places. The latter are for powers of a demonic kind and beings created for lower destinies (hells and so on); (e) the manner of the offering.

In the course of the gtor ma ritual the following elements are significant: the person of the offerer is conceived of as transformed into a deity. Infinite gifts are summoned out of space and transformed into ambrosia. Goddesses emanated out of the offerer’s own body pay homage to the offerer transformed into a god, and his purification is carried out by the Buddhas who have hastened from all points of space bearing vessels in their hands.

Figure 3 A sngags pa performing a ritual of the Tantric liturgy
For this the following are required: (a) a small cupboard with two or three shelves. On the top shelf are the three essential gtor ma: the gtor ma of the monk’s Tantric master, of his guardian deity (yi dam) and of the mkha’ gro ma. These are needed in the rNying ma pa and bKa’ brgyud pa schools; the others require only the gtor ma of the guardian deity (cf.p.97). On the middle shelf there are three additional gtor ma; on the lowest
The process described proceeds in thirteen successive phases, each corresponding to various groups of gods and demons to whom the offering is directed. The offering itself is always visualized as transfigured into ambrosia or into a jewel. Through it the powers are to be made satisfied, and thus rendered disposed to ward off evil and overcome misfortunes threatening the individual person or living beings in general. Both those to whom the gifts are directed and the gifts themselves vary very much in accordance with the individual case. If it is a question of demons, the offerings can even be imagined as nauseating substances (meat and so on). However, the presuppositions of the offering are always retained in its schematic construction: the Thought of Enlightenment, the Refuge in the ‘Three Jewels’, the possibility of transferring the merit of the offering to other beings, the hoped-for action of atonement. Here reality is transformed onto a plane of the imagination which is attributed by virtue of meditation a new, more real and more intense reality than normal everyday existence. An imaginary plane is reached, on which both the sacrificer and the whole least (mgon) to which the imagined divine guests are invited come together in an apotheosis transcending space and time. This series of interconnected visions however always remains within the structure of the ritual architecture of a supranormal world which opens before the participants in these meditations.

Necessary ingredients of the mchod pa are offerings of water, flowers, foods (zhal zas), lamps (mar me) and perfumes. Each of these gifts is placed on the altars in front of the images in an appropriate vessel. In the course of the prescribed divine office this takes place during the recitation of hymns (bstdod pa), with the accompaniment of prescribed musical instruments, of which the following are the most important: cymbals (sil snyan, or in a smaller version ting shag); conch (dung dkar); shawm (rgya gling); drum (rnga), both the large drum used in the temple and the small drum in the chapels where the cult of the protective deity (mgon po) of the sect or monastery concerned is carried out.

is the fivefold offering (cf. Fig. 5(c)) and behind it the medicinal herbs (sman) and blood (rakta) to the right and left of the central gtar ma.

(b) gsal phud: the offering. On a silver plate (pad sder) in the form of a lotus-blossom (pad ma) is placed a cup containing offerings (phud phor); in this are tea, chang, milk and also various kinds of seeds. At its side is a special ampulla called mchod thib with offerings of various kinds mixed with chang, tea or milk. (Cf. p.269, n.6.)

(c) Monk on his seat. Before him a small table, on which are medicinal herbs, the red gtar ma which represents blood (rakta), the double-headed pellet-drum (damaru), the bell, etc. At the beginning of the ceremony he places a round hat on his head, the thugs dam zhes mo, the ‘hat for the guardian deities’.

117
Figure 4  Musical instruments used in the liturgy
(a) *sil sneyan*: cymbals, essential for all offering rituals, and in ceremonies carried out both in accordance with the *mdo* (Skt. Sutra) and in those of the Tantras of the lower classes.
(b) *mga chen*: large drum. This is beaten in the temple at those ceremonies (*tshogs pa*) in which the entire monastic community takes part, and also during the most important Tantric practices. It is sometimes beaten from high up on the roof or balcony of the temple in order to summon the monks together. The drumstick is to the right.
The kind of musical instruments used (mchod rol) depends both on the particular nature of the liturgy employed and on the deity to whom the ritual is addressed. If the liturgy is carried out according to the rituals of the three lower classes of Tantra, for example, the various objects required to celebrate a guest (mgrom chas) must be placed in front of the master (slob dpon) on the altar. These include the vessel with grains of various kinds ('du phor), the water vessel (ril pa spyi blugs) for washing the face (zhal bshal) of the image, the vessel surmounted by peacock feathers (bum pa), the short cord (gzung thag) for establishing the connection between the officiant and the water vessel which is required for the ritual, incense (spos), the conch-shell with perfume (dung phor), the little bell and the rdo rje (cf. Figure 5 (a)).

In the ceremonies of the first Tantric class (bya rgyud) the mandala is also used. This mandala is called tshom bu'i dkyil 'khor, because a heap of grain ('bru'i tshom) is placed on its decorated surface for each deity present in the mandala. In front of it seven cups made of copper or silver are placed. The first two of these (mchod yon and zhal bsil) are filled with water, the third with flowers and grain, the fourth with incense for burning (spos), the fifth serves as a lamp (mar me snang gsal),

(c) lag mga or mga chung: pole drum. This is used in the mgon khang and during the ceremonies of the lower Tantra classes, especially during the go or exorcistic rituals (cf.p.176). Usually the pole drum is beaten by two rows of monks (mga gral) placed opposite one another. Drumstick to the right. Among the Sa skya monks this drum is used by the dbu mdzad to introduce the ceremony.

(d) rgyal mga, 'khar mga: gong, used especially to announce the time and hour of the monastic assembly.

(e) dung dkar: white conch-shell trumpet, an important accompanying instrument in religious ceremonies.

(f) rgya gling: shawm, used in all ceremonies except the rites of exorcism (bzung).

(g) dung chen: long trumpet, used primarily in the Tantric ceremonies of the higher class; among the Sa skya pa, the rNying ma pa and the bKa' brgyud pa this instrument generally does not take part in the performance of hymns (bstan).

(h) rol mo, sbrub chal: large cymbals, used primarily in the ceremonies connected with the 'terrifying' deities.

(i) rkang gling: short trumpet, a much-used wind instrument, indispensable for ceremonies of invocation (spyi 'dren).

(k) kargling: wind instrument of Chinese origin, used at festivals, is also blown from the upper storey of the temple; one of the nine good signs (bkra shis dgu rtsegs).

(l) khred gling: transverse flute, also belongs among the good signs.

(m) sbyi phag: a kind of trumpet, another of the good signs; of Chinese origin.

(n) drela ting: an instrument consisting of nine 'khar mga or gongs (cf.d), another sign of good omen. Beaters to the right.
the sixth again contains water (dri chab) and the seventh various kinds of food (zhal zas).

The most frequently used cult utensils are the mirror (me long) as symbol of the visible, small cymbals (ting shag) representing the world of sound, a shell filled with perfumes, standing for smells and perfumes, all kinds of foods (zas sna), symbolically representing the world of taste, and a piece of silk (dar) standing for the sense of touch (cf. Figure 5 (e)). These five objects form a symbolical offering of the person concerned, who is represented through his five senses. The mirror has a second symbolic value: it is often held that placing it before the images of the gods signifies that all things, including the figures of the gods, are only a reflection created by our imagination.

The form of the liturgical act varies according to which Tantric cycle is to be employed and whether a peaceful and serene (zhi) or a terrifying (drag po) deity is concerned. For example, an entire skull (genuine or reproduced in metal) or cranial bone may be placed in front of the master, provided with the ‘five ambrosias’ (bdud rtsi lnga) or medicinal herbs, and also the small bell and rdo rje, a vessel with peacock feathers, a damaru, another skull, blood (rakta) and the ‘five kinds of flesh’ (sha chen lnga)⁶ (cf. Figure 5 (b)).

Figure 5 Examples of the arrangement of liturgical utensils at Tantric ceremonies.

(a) For ritual performances in accordance with the lower Tantras, the following instruments are always required: cymbals, great drum, conch, rgya gling, bell. The ting shag (cf. p.266) and damaru are not absolutely essential. The utensils are arranged as shown in (a) before the slob dpon: (from left to right) a covered bowl (‘bun phor) to contain grains of various kinds, a bell, rdo rje, vessel for consecrated water (ril pa spyi blugs), a vessel with peacock feathers, a small cord which can be held by pupils or assistants, incense, a conch containing pleasant-smelling substances.

(b) For ritual performances such as those relating to the higher Tantras the following musical instruments are provided for ceremonies directed to the peaceful deities: cymbals, drum, conch, rgya gling, damaru and small bell. From left to right in the diagram: perfumed medicinal herbs, i.e. the so-called five kinds of ambrosia (bdud rtsi lnga) in a skull-shaped vessel, bell, rdo rje, damaru, vessel with peacock feathers, rakta (blood with the five kinds of flesh) in a bowl-shaped vessel.

(c) Six vessels which are placed before a mandala drawn with coloured earth. From left to right: water (not always required), flowers, incense, lamp, water, various foods.

(d) gtor ma used in the rituals directed to terrifying deities. These represent (from left to right) a skull (the five senses), incense (= human fat), a lamp fed with butter (= zhum chen, liquid of a decomposing corpse), water (bile), food (= flesh and bones). Note the equating of the gtor ma with parts of the human body.

120
(e) The ingredients usually employed at religious ceremonies to symbolize the five senses and their objects (from left to right): mirror (me long) = visible world of form, small cymbals (ting shag) = hearing, conch (dway) containing incense = sense of smell, vessel containing foods of various kinds = sense of taste, band of cloth (dar) = sense of touch.
In the ceremonies devoted to the terrifying gods the vessel for the foods (zhal zas) contains an offering (gtor ma) which represents blood and bones. In this case a water-vessel containing bile (mkhris pa'i dri chab) is used, along with a lamp containing fat (zhun chen kyi mar me) and an incense vessel from which comes the smell of melted fat (tshil chen gyi spos). Another implement used here is a black, triangular piece of cloth (g.yab dmar) which has a rdo rje fixed to its apex and two pieces of red cloth (phan lee) attached to its two lower corners. The trumpet used in the good ceremony (cf. p. 91) is made from a human tibia (rkang); the upper part is ornamented with silver and gold.

The use of filthy offerings (represented by coloured gtor ma), as with the 'five ambrosias', is explained from the point of view of the Siddha schools as an indication that all conventions have been overcome. For the followers of these schools there is no longer anything to 'accept' (blang) or 'reject' (spong) because they are beyond any duality.

The eight kinds of medicinal herbs can also be mixed with Tibetan beer (chang). This is done in the ceremonies called 'mystical realization with the aid of medicinal herbs' (sman sgrub) or 'sacred ambrosial medicinal herbs' (bdud rtsi chos sman) or simply 'liberation through pleasure' (myong grol). This indicates that the use of substances which cause intoxication and ecstasy is not excluded; these states can be regarded as preliminary signs of the desired excessus mentis. Pills (ril bu) or ambrosial pills (bdud rtsi ril bu) are formed out of the ingredients mentioned; a whole literature exists on the methods for making them. These pills are received during the act of consecration (dbang), and also, because of the efficacy they possess, in illness or in the death-agony. Frequently the medicinal herbs are replaced by chang and the 'blood' by tea.

Figure 6 Lha khang nang rgyan (objects for the interior decoration of the temple) (a) ka phan (or just phan): long, narrow silk strips (phan) attached to the pillars
As we have seen, the structure of the liturgical action is fairly complex. Its domain extends from the offering each day of substances in the individual vessels before the images (substances which correspond symbolically to the five senses and their objects) to the extremely complicated Tantric rituals. These latter rituals are subject to numerous modifications, according to the mandala, the particular kind of meditation, the master, the gods, the aims associated with the Tantra, and so on. These practices have a very significant emotional component. They bring about special emotional states, hopes and ecstasies, through which it is hoped to induce the rapid, if only momentary, abolition or stoppage of the dichotomizing process, which has been so often spoken of above.

The offerings during the ceremony (mchod) are generally designated cult substances (rdzas, mchod rdzas) although this term frequently refers to the liturgical objects as well. The ‘container’ or ‘support’ (rten) of sacredness, which may be a reliquary, a book, an image or a temple, is always conceived of as one of these rdzas. These ‘supports’ can in general be divided according to the ‘three planes’ of body, speech or mind. Thus there are ‘supports’ of the body (sku), such as images (though ‘body’ here must be understood in the sense explained in the previous chapter, cf.p.57), ‘supports’ of the plane of the word, for example the Buddha’s word as contained in the scriptures, and ‘supports’ of the mental plane, such as a mandala or a temple. The various kinds of ‘supports’ can also be classified as outer, inner and secret. The outer are visible and readable, like an image or a book. The inner generally cannot be seen, as with reliquaries, or special sacred objects in the temples, closed to the public, which can only be viewed if one receives special authorization, in exceptional circumstances. The secret ‘supports’ are inaccessible to all who have not received the ‘consecration of the secret’. The bla ma can only allow insight into these secrets to the initiated.

(ka) of the temple; under the dragon’s head (’brug mgo) there are five five-coloured strips called ja’ris (rainbow design); underneath there are rolled-up strips of cloth (phur mang), and under this again a piece of silk of the same length as the pillar or column.
(b) phur mang: cylinders of cloth rolled together in five successive rows. Above there is a parasol-shaped cover with five strips of various colours beneath it. Hung on the ceiling, between the pilasters or columns.
(c) phyje ma: decoration hung from the rafters, in the form of a long parasol, with the usual five five-coloured strips, to which are fastened little bands of white cloth (dung phreng). The upper part consists of cloth of various colours and fringing garlands; on the lower end there are fringes and pendants.
(d) bla bre: piece of multicoloured cloth, quadrangular with hanging borders (phur ma), hung to cover the opening for light in the ceiling of the temple.
Figure 7  Head-coverings of the rNying ma pa (a to d) and bKa’ brgyud pa (e to i)  
(a) pad zhwa: hat of Padmasambhava, which only the highest bla ma of the  
rNying ma pa school are entitled to wear.  
(b) rig ’dzin spyi zhwa: head covering for rNying ma pa who have passed the tests  
of the sgrub gnsa or Tantric college (cf.p.132). This is therefore reserved to  
sgrub bla and the heads of monasteries (gdan sa).
In describing the ritual practices of Tibetan monasteries, I will attempt to give a generalized picture of the customs usual in the most important monastic communities. At about seven in the morning there takes place, for example, the meditation on the mandala of sGrol ma (Skt. Tara), (sgrol ma dkyil 'khor). This includes the recitation of the sgrub texts most appropriate for this ceremony. At about nine o'clock the monks again gather in the temple or in its forecourt, and sermons and learned discussions take place there. As soon as all the monks are present, the abbot (mkhan po) begins to interpret the doctrine on the basis of a scriptural text he has selected. This interpretation proceeds in two parts. The first is directed to the less schooled or less educated monks; after they are dismissed the esoteric part begins for the more advanced and spiritually more mature. When this teaching period has finished the monks (grwa pa) are free until the time of the common meal. From two to four in the afternoon they stay in their cells to study and learn by heart the textual passages which the abbot explained on that day. During this period a great silence has to reign within the monastery walls. It is supervised by an overseer (chos khrims pa) entrusted with the keeping of discipline. The beginning of these two hours of study is announced with a small drum. When the same drum announces the end of the study period everyone is free to visit the overseer and examiner (skyor dpon) of the students. He checks whether

(c) pad ma sam zhua: reproduction of the hat of Padmasambhava, worn only by mkhan po and sgrul sku or other bla ma of the rNying ma pa while expounding the doctrine.

(d) pan zhua: the head covering proper to the pan (= pandita). The decoration consists of fine gold strips, whose number (1, 2, 3, 5) depends on the number of collections of the sacred scriptures which the wearer has studied (or indicates his deep study of the Five rig pa or branches of knowledge). The bKa' brgyud pa forms h and i are worn primarily during commentaries on the doctrine, or again serve to indicate the experience acquired through deep study of the doctrine.

(e) dwags zhua: the name comes from the hat worn by Dwags po lha rje (sGam po pa). According to the legend, Mi la ras pa made him a gift of one of his shoes, which out of pious respect he used as a head covering; this explains the form of the hat.

(f) zhua nag: 'black hat'.

(g) zhua dmar: 'red hat'.

(h) pan zhua: the hat proper to the pandita or scholar, used principally by the mkhan po, ornamented with gold threads as with the rNying ma pa (cf. d, above).

(i) sgrub zhua: the hat used, according to legend, by Ras chung: only the sgrub bla (cf. p. 132) are entitled to wear it. It is put on during interpretation of the doctrine or while preaching. This form of hat is used also among the 'Brug pa, Phag mo gru pa and other bKa' brgyud pa sub-schools; they have several variants of it.

125
they have memorized properly the textual passages given to them. Under his control they master their tasks (skyor sbyong) ever more perfectly. At around six o’clock the great drum summons the monks yet again from above to a general assembly, at which the prescribed common ritual takes place in the temple. This consists of prayer (gsol kha) to the chos skyong, ceremonies for the deceased (gshin po) or prayers (brin gsum) whose merit is to benefit those who have accumulated bad karma. From six to ten o’clock is a second period of seclusion in the cells for study. At about half-past ten the monks have fulfilled their ritual obligations and can go to bed.

During the three summer months the monks are, at least in theory, obliged to stay in the monastery. In the course of the year, however, the big local festivals take place, and the monks can apply for permission to go to their villages to take part in them, or to travel from village to village to perform particular ceremonies (sku rim) at the request of the inhabitants. Apart from the days of festivity prescribed in the calendar of feasts (which are discussed below) the anniversary of the death (referred to naturally as ‘entry into nirvana’) of the sect’s most famous teacher is celebrated. On this occasion the various ritual acts are divided as follows: morning ceremony (tshe lha rnam gsun) in honour of Tshe dpag med, rNam rgyal ma and sGrol ma dkar po, and the solemn promise (smon lam) of ever more widespread diffusion of the doctrine. The afternoon is intended for questions to the teacher (slob gnyer), or the monks are given the time off. Among the Sa skya pa this yearly memorial celebration is for Sa skya pandita, among the sNying ma pa it is for kLong chen pa, and among the bKa’ brgyud pa for sGam po pa.

In the course of these festivals an ‘incarnation’ (sprul sku) living in the monastery expounds the five situations (phun sum tshogs lnga) favourable for the attainment of salvation: perfection of place (gnas), of time (dus), of the teacher (ston pa), of the sermon of the law (chos ’khor) and of the gathering of the hearers of this sermon. These amount to the advantage of having been born in a particular place and at a particular time, when the appearance of a Buddha has revealed the Law and created the necessary preconditions for liberation. The exegesis begins at sunset and lasts the whole night, with discourse and reply between the commentators and particular monks especially advanced in their studies, whose names are noted on a special list (ming tho) of those coming under consideration for this honour.

At sunrise the solemn promise of continued diffusion of the Law (bstan rgyas smon lam) is repeated. A lamp is lit and each monk, beginning with the first of each row (the monks are arranged in two rows in the assembly hall, to the right and to the left; the abbot is situated in the centre in front of the altar) recites the formulae of
blessing and good fortune (*bka skis*). Laymen too can be present at this ritual act.

Among the *Sa skya pa*, the *rNying ma pa* and the *bKa’ brgyud pa*, the basis for the *bshad grwa* is formed by the *gzhung chen bcu gsun* or ‘Thirteen Great Texts’. These consist of the works of Nagarjuna and Maitreya, along with the Vinaya and Abhidharmakosa; the *Sa skya pa* also include writings on logic and some of the most important works of the great leaders of the school, headed by *Sa skya pandita*.

![Hats of the *Sa skya pa*](image)

Figure 8  Hats of the *Sa skya pa*
(a) *sa zhwa*: *Sa skya pa* cap, similar to the *lotsa*na cap, but without peak. Since this cap is also worn by the *Ngor pa* it is also called *ngor zhwa*.
(b) *sa zhwa*: *Sa skya pa* cap; a development of a; the two side parts to right and left are taken up and bound together in such a way that the left-hand part is turned to the inside and the right-hand part to the outside. The right-hand part (called ‘ear’ in Tibetan) symbolizes the sacred scriptures, the left mystical practices.
(c) *sa zhwa*: a variant of the preceding type, reserved only for the highest dignitaries.
(d) *pan zhwa*: *pandita* cap (cf. Figures 7, d and h). The ornamentation with fine gold strips indicated the various branches of knowledge mastered.
These books serve as the basis of the doctrinal positions of the various schools, but this of course does not prohibit, in fact it makes necessary, a study of the commentaries and treatises dedicated to these texts by the most important masters of the school concerned. The interpretations given by these masters serve the students as a guide and a decisive touchstone. When their five years of study are over, the monks of the first group mentioned above (phogs zan pa) can remain further in the monastery in order to perfect themselves in the disciplines to which the school in question is particularly devoted.

Naturally in these monasteries, which often contain a considerable number of monks, a specialization of functions is necessary in accordance with the division of labour, and also an organization which extends beyond the purely instructional aspects to the ordering and administration of the house.

The function of teaching is directed by the abbot of the school (bshad grwa). He presides also over the liturgical acts, and in general watches that the education of the monks standing below him takes place strictly according to the community rule in force in his monastery.

Figure 9 Equipment and hats of the sngags pa
(a) rigs lnga: on each of the five sides of the tiara one of the Buddhas of the pentad is drawn or represented by his symbol.
(b) rtsa chings: 'band for the base'. Band ornamented with turquoises, pieces of coral and rows of pearls.
(c) dar dpyangs: hanging bands, made of five-coloured pieces of silk.
(d) phang kheb: rectangular cloth, multicoloured in the middle with a surrounding border (leags ri); it is unfolded and placed over the lap in the course of solemn ceremonies on special occasions.
(e) shows how a, b, and c are worn.
(f) zhua nags: black hat, i.e. hat covered over with black cloth; black strips of cloth are attached to the back and fall down on to the shoulders. It is used at exorcistic ceremonies (gto) and sacred dances (lha 'cham).
(g) ber: tunic, normally multicoloured; the borders of the skirt and the sleeves have many coloured designs.
(h) sba le: a collar in the form of a lotus-blossom, with an opening in the middle for the head. Usually dark, and ornamented with a double rdo rje (cf. p.115).
(i) rus rgyan: ornament made of bones held together by a cord, with representations in relief of gods or their symbols. This is used as a kind of armour on the occasion of the ceremonies mentioned above under f, and also at ceremonies accompanied by fire-offerings (shyin streg).
(k) phang kheb: black cloth apron, on which the features of a terrifying deity (kho rgyal) are represented. On the borders drawings of skulls and flames.
(l) shows how the various items of clothing are worn.
MONKHOOD, MONASTERY LIFE, RELIGIOUS CALENDAR, FESTIVALS
The task of the skyor dpon, who has already been mentioned (cf.p.125), consists in supervising the monks with respect to their religious tasks. The chos khrims pa are entrusted with disciplinary control, and they also watch during the ritual performances that the monks do not distract each other, do not chatter together, that they do not arrive late, in short that their behaviour is worthy. They are responsible to the abbot for every offence of the monks against the monastery rules.

The monasteries are, however, also important economic centres. From their assets and estates must be met the expenses for the ritual performances, as well as those for the daily ceremonies, quite apart from the support of the monks. The monks are given tea and soup (thug pa) in the course of the ritual performances. The monastic administration is also responsible for providing fuel, butter for the tea and the lamps, barley for the tsamba, and so on. The provisions are kept in the store-room (gyyer khang), which is watched over by the gyyer pa. The official who is in charge of the common property and has personal responsibility for the monastic administration is the stpyi dpon. The stpyi dpon is supported in his work by several stpyi pa; their number varies with the size and importance of the monastery. These administrators meet four times in the year (or more often) to deliberate over the monastery’s supply of cash, provisions and foodstuffs. The stpyi dpon and stpyi pa are chosen by the head of the monastery (bla brang) from either particularly rich monks or wealthy laymen (khyim bdag). Their period of duty lasts from three to five years. They have to take care of the preservation and growth of the monastery’s assets.

The punishments imposed upon the monks for offences against the disciplinary code often consist of mild expiatory tasks such as sweeping outside the temple, or in making the guilty person stay outside the seated rows of monks in the ritual action. A less strict discipline holds for those monks (rgyab sdom pa) who are not living obligatorily in the monastery and who are not supported by it.

Both among the rNying ma pa and among the bKa’ brgyud pa the greatest importance is attached to the college for mystical experiences (sgrub grwa). Entry to this college is open after the completion of the studies already mentioned. This restriction is, however, not always respected, and admission often takes place without this precondition. Students remain in the sgrub grwa for not less than seven years, and during this period they have to devote themselves to mystical practices (bsnyen bgrub) based on the Tantric cycles especially cultivated in their school.

The religious direction of this college lies in the hands of a spiritual leader (sgrub dpon) who has the same duties as those of the abbot in the ordinary college (bshad grwa). He teaches twice a week, basing himself
upon a particular doctrinal text, which the students must study in two different ways. In the first morning study period they memorize the text and learn by heart the simple verbal meaning, while in the second study period they practise meditation (sgom) on the deeper content of the text’s meaning. The whole day is divided into four thun or study periods; the first (snga thun) from five to eight in the morning, the second (gung thun) from nine o’clock to noon, the third (phyi thun) from three to six in the afternoon, and the fourth (mtshan thun) from nine to twelve at night. In summer and winter the first period is reduced by an hour and the second by half an hour. The recitation of mantras usually takes place in the evening (phyi thun). In the three summer months the vision of light practices (khregs chod, cf.p.85) are discussed in the rNying ma pa colleges, while the bKa’ brgyud pa study the ‘Great Seal’ (phyag rgya chen mo, cf.p.71). In winter yogic exercises and breath control (rtsa rlung 'phral 'khor), especially glum mo (cf.p.98), are the main objects of practice.

**Figure 10** Rab 'byung chas (equipment of all ordained monks)
(a) thun bzed: bowl, used by the monks (dge tshul and dge stong) for their food.
(b) chab blugs: flask, used by the monks to purify their mouths on entering the temple. Usually enclosed in a piece of cloth, which is sometimes embroidered.

The spiritual director (sgrub dpon) is not only a master of ascetic practice; his supervision extends also over all the usual divisions of the school. Its inner administration is divided similarly to that of the non-Tantric college (bshad grwa). The overseer of provisions (gnyer pa) is here chosen by the monks, and the sphyi pa selected from influential and prosperous people. With respect to the spiritual hierarchy in the college for mystical practices, in other words concerning the individual ranks accessible to its members, if the candidate finishes his studies successfully he is promoted to the rank of master of mystical practices.
(sgrub bla, or simply bla ma). Part of the promotion consists of the ceremonial conferral of a hat (zhua mo) which other masters have already possessed, along with the presentation of a small bell and a rdo rje, which have again been used by past directors of the school (sgrub dpon). Only this investiture confers on the candidate the title of bla ma. The other monks continue to carry their title of priests (gnoa pa), bandhe or novices (dge tshul), and are thus kept distinct even in title from the real Tantric master. The sgrub bla, after the completion of his intellectual, contemplative, liturgical and mystical education, now possesses all the necessary qualities to be able to carry out the extremely complicated ceremonies involving the use of the mandala, to handle successfully the tasks of a bla ma in the villages or of a family chaplain (mchod gnas); he can in short carry out every kind of ritual (sku rim).

The next higher rank is that of director of the music and song accompanying the liturgical acts (rol dpon). The playing of the cymbals is one of his tasks. He occupies this office for two years. Then he becomes dbu chung, that is provost (dbu mdzad) of the second grade, for a period of office of three years. The dbu chung opens and presides over the communal ritual performances (tshogs), except for those of the highest importance.

The next rank is that of provost of the first grade (dbu mdzad). He directs the most important cult acts (sgrub mchod). After three or five years he withdraws from this office and then receives the title of retired provost (dbu zur dbu mdzad); although no longer having to take part in the ceremonies, he possesses the same privileges as before. A further rank is that of rdo rje slob dpon (Skt. Vajracarya), master of the ceremonies which employ the mandala; he confers the consecration (dbang) on the adepts, and gives the instructions for traversing the path of salvation. It is his task to uncover the mandala, and to consecrate the prescribed offerings at ceremonies directed to terrifying gods. After five or seven years he ends his period of office and becomes a lama in retirement (bla zur). At this point he can also retire to a hermitage (ri khrod) or take over the office of sgrub dpon in another monastery.

Figure II  dbyar gyi rta zhua (hats worn in summer while riding a horse)
(a) gser zhua (nam mkha’ rab ’byams): reserved for ‘incarnates’ (sgrul sku).
(b) gser theb: reserved for rise drung (government officials) and the dgon dpon
(cf.p.134).
(c) zhua khra: multicoloured hat reserved for certain monks of the bKa’ brgyud pa school. Dark blue basic colour, with white or red designs.
(d) similar to gser zhua, but covered over with a white piece of woollen cloth; worn in general by the mkhan pa. Those monks not entitled to wear a gilded hat
wear hats made of a wooden frame covered with white cloth. All monks can wear a hat of this kind.

(c) peculiar to monks of certain Sa skya pa monasteries. This hat is called zhwa gya la; it was originally worn by the ministers of Derge. It too is covered over in white.

(f) nyi zhwa: sunhat, the head-covering worn according to tradition by the lotsava, the ‘translators’, when they travelled to India to learn Sanskrit, to translate the secret texts and bring them back to Tibet with them. Another name of this kind of head-covering is sho khal. Nowadays hats of this kind are also worn by women.

(g) head-covering worn by those carrying out the ged practice (cf. p.87).

The monastic organization also requires another series of offices which have little to do with the training of the monks but are important for the monastic life from the point of view of discipline and administration. The larger monasteries are mostly divided into various sections (gling), each of which is placed under the control of the leader of a ten-membered corporation (beu dpon). In the larger monasteries further assistants, the yang dpon, are placed below the beu dpon. These
officials have the task of keeping the monastery in order.

The spyi pa of the individual gling (not to be confused with the spyi pa of the monastery as a whole) looks after the administration and the individual property of his section. Lower ranks are those of dung g.yog and dung dpon. These have their duties for a three-year period. The former has to beat the drum which convokes the morning assembly (tshogs chen) and also blow the trumpet (dung) during the same assembly. The dung dpon plays the shawm (rgya gling) together with the rgyag dpon. Both can also take on disciplinary duties. The posts of dung dpon and rgyag dpon are much in demand, as they carry special remuneration with them, and in many cases also the usufruct of a particular piece of land (dung zhint and rgyag zhint). Such a privileged treatment is justified, for in the great ritual ceremonies conch and shawm (rgya gling) play a great part. During these ceremonies rol dpon, dung dpon and rgyag dpon sit one behind the other right next to the dbu mdzad (cf. Figure 1).

The next higher office is that of the mi chen, who are the administrators of the treasury and of the monastery revenue. Their number varies with the importance of the monastery; they can amount to ten or fifteen. They are directed by a superintendent (mi dpon). Unlearned monks are assigned to them as servants (mi g.yog). The entire property of the monastery is divided into as many parts as there are inspectors (mi chen). Each of them is responsible for managing the portion entrusted to him as productively as possible. These superintendents can be monks or laymen. The chos khrims pa and dgon dpon are charged with disciplinary duties, but these offices are also very lucrative, since they are linked to special appanages in the form of the produce of the land (chos zhint or dgon zhint) allocated to them. They are conferred for three years. They are subordinate to the superintendent (mi dpon) surnamed spyi zur, deputy administrator, possibly an aristocrat (mi drag) resident in the monastery. These administrative posts are never occupied by a rdo rje slob dpon (Vajracarya).

The phyag mdzod is the director of the household for the residence of the monastery head (bla brang), who is usually an ‘incarnate’ (sprul sku). The phyag mdzod is assisted by a kind of treasurer (gnyer pa) who looks after his expenses and so on.

The prestige of a monastery derives in all cases from the ‘incarnate’ which it shelters within its walls. Although he does not interfere in any way either in questions of monastic discipline or in questions concerning the doctrine, the whole existence of the monastic community revolves about his person.

These sprul sku (the term has the primary meaning of ‘apparent body’, the third of the three ‘bodies’. cf.p.263, note 18) are generally known in the books on Tibet as ‘incarnate lamas’. According to the

134
teachings of the rNying ma pa school it is a question in the first place of
the reappearance of particular teachers, disciples or assistants of
Padmasambhava. The Master prophesied that they would return on
this earth, in order to restore the books which he had hidden (that is,
to act as gter ston) or to re-establish the correct interpretation of his
teachings according to the sense which he gave to them (dagongs gter).
In this way and for the same purpose Vimala was to be reincarnated
(cf. No. 3, p.379), and also Padmasambhava himself (ibid., p.380). This
older conception differs, however, from that of the present day.
On the older model the incarnation had a somewhat discontinuous
character; it could happen when the master concerned judged in his
mental continuum that the appropriate moment for his new mission
had arrived. Today it is a question of an unbroken chain of incarnations
(sku 'phreng bar ma chad) occupying the same abbatial or monastic office
and bound up very closely with this office. The same is also true for
the position of Dalai Lama, as a consequence of a usage going back to
the third Dalai Lama, bSod nams rgya misho (cf.p.41) and which was
later transferred to the Pan chen lama too. This system came into use in
Tibet at the time of the Kar ma pa lama Dus gsum mkhyen pa (1110-93,
cf.p.36), who at the time of his death prophesied his future rebirth
(Kar ma pa kshi).

The custom was adopted by all the sects which maintain monasteries
in which reincarnations of the same master succeed each other, such
as the sprul sku of rDo rje brag, of sMin grol gling, and so on, among the
rNying ma pa.

The sprul sku of today (leaving aside the Dalai Lama, for whom an
extremely complicated special etiquette exists) have the right to
special signs of dignity denied to all others, for example to a red band
(or two) for their horse, with a long tassel of hair (rta gdam) hanging
down at the front. They may also wear the coloured hat with a large
brim, the dome-shaped upper part of which is ornamented and which
is held in place by a chin-strap (gser zhwa, cf. Figure 11). Another
special hat reserved to sprul sku is the 'hat with long ears' (zhwa mo ma
ring), which is so called because two pieces of cloth to the right and left
hang down so low that they touch the shoulders. This head covering
otherwise resembles a phrygian cap, except that it is encircled by
three to five golden or gilded bands (gser dkar gsum, lnga). Such a hat is
also known by its Indian name of 'pan chen's hat' (pan zhwa, cf. Figures
7, d and h, 8, d).

In the course of our brief description of the monastic organization
of the rNying ma pa we have frequently made use of the word 'monk'. In
this connection we need to recall what was said earlier, that for the
sNgags pa the priestly consecration according to the Vinaya precepts
is not an unconditional requirement. While the ordained monks wear
Figure 12  *dgon gyi rta zhwa* (hats worn in winter while riding a horse)
(a) is worn by *rNyin ma pa* and *bKa' brgyud pa*. It is lined on the inside with fox-fur and reserved for great lamas and ‘incarnates’ (*sprul sku*).
(b) with raised side-pieces, otherwise exactly the same as a.
(c) yellow in colour; reserved for *dGe lugs pa* great lamas while riding.
(d) characteristic hat of *Sa skya pa*, *rNyin ma pa* and *bKa' brgyud pa* monks.
(e) generally reserved for nuns (*a ne*). Coloured red among *Sa skya pa*, *rNyin ma pa* and *bKa' brgyud pa*, yellow among *dGe lugs pa* nuns. Made of wool, lined on the inside with fur.
(f) used in the *grod* practices. Made of red wool, surrounded with a high border of black cloth or black fur.

the usual red monk’s clothing, the *Ras pa* are clothed in white, although this rule does not always hold. For the monks who have received the consecration the three-month summer retreat (*dbyar gnas*) is obligatory.

The ordained monks can of course always renounce their ordination (*sdom phul*) at a later date according to the appropriate precepts.

In the *dGe lugs pa* school the situation is not very much different, but we find here certain traits which can be explained either in terms of the new orientation going back to the founder, *Tsung kha pa*, or
through the separate and more extended development of this school, which surpasses all the other schools in its great prestige, and even installs the head of the church, the Dalai Lama, to say nothing of the political power which it had before the Chinese takeover. The three great monasteries (gdan sa gsum) of Central Tibet (dBus), namely Se ra, dGa’ ldan and ’Bras spungs, along with bKra shis lhun po in gTsang, each used to contain several thousand monks. In these great monasteries the monastic establishments surround the chapel building (tshogs chen), the large hall intended for monastic gatherings and for the collective rituals performed together at least once each day. This ‘chapel’ thus forms the central point of the entire monastery, and not so much in the material sense as in the spiritual, as a result of the rituals performed within its walls. These concentrate in this place the effective presence of the third of the ‘Three Jewels’, the Community. The rest of the very extensive complex of buildings is taken up by the colleges or teaching establishments (grwa tshan), which served for the training of the monks and in which their daily life takes place. The chapels (’du khang) of the individual teaching establishments, where the less important rituals and lesser liturgical performances take place also require mention. Then there are the hostels and hospices (khang tshan) for those monks who come from all parts of Tibet to these monasteries for occasional visits or for purposes of study. These hostels generally take their name from the place of origin of their temporary inhabitants. Thus there is a dBus khang tshan for visitors from Central Tibet (dBus), a hostel for those from Khams (called sPom ra khang tshan in the monastery of Se ra), a mNga’ ris khang tshan for guests from West Tibet, and so on.

Each of these three groups of buildings (chapels, colleges, hostels) possesses its own assets and thus forms an economic unit. This common property is called spyi. The collective property of the whole monastery is called tshogs chen. This is used to meet obligations incumbent on the community as a whole, as distinct from the particular tasks of the individual teaching establishments and hostels, which have extensive reciprocal independence and economic autonomy, and therefore (as will be discussed later) have separate administrative responsibility.

In accordance with the organization of monastic teaching, three kinds of establishment can be distinguished within these large dGe lugs pa monasteries. These are (a) the establishment for teaching and interpretation of the sacred scriptures (bshad grwa); (b) that in which the monks are instructed in logic and the art of disputation (rtsad grwa, chos grwa); and (c) the division devoted to mysticism and to the theoretical and practical study of Tantra (sgrub grwa, sngags grwa).

Who now are the religious authorities (dbu ’dzin) who preside over
the various divisions of this great monastic whole? Here there are two principal aspects to the monastic organization to be considered: the spiritual, educational, liturgical on the one hand, and the worldly (srid) and especially the administrative on the other. Taking the monastery of Se ra as an example, the spiritual authority, first of all, is concentrated in the hands of the abbot (mkhan po). With respect to the monastic discipline, the inspectors (zhal ngo, dge bskos or chos khrims pa) are responsible for its maintenance both during the ritual acts and in general at all times of day. Armed with heavy cudgels and accompanied by their assistants they watch over the observance of the monastic precepts and the monks’ conduct in general, as was already mentioned with respect to the rNying ma pa.

It is the duty of the provost (dbyu mdzad) to give the signal of commencement at the collective recitation (zhal ʼdon) of the sacred scriptures during the collective ceremonies. The texts which are recited on this occasion are called chos sbyod rabs gsal, a name which includes all the treatises regarded as indispensable to the liturgy, although their contents vary from sect to sect.

The overseer of the distribution of the monastery tea is also responsible for its good quality. This tea is in general called gsal ja (it bears this name in the chapel, but it is called grwa ja in the college buildings and tshan ja in the hostels), and it is given to the monks summoned to a ritual performance. The overseer carries out this office in the chapel under the title ja dpon nang, but not in the teaching establishments.

In the individual colleges and hostels the tasks of administration belong to the overseer of stores (gnyer pa) who has substantial powers.

The phyag mdzod takes care of the property of the individual teaching establishments as well as that of the abbot’s residence (bla brang).

The chab gting ba or chab brim pa offer water to the monks gathered in the monastery at the beginning and end of the ceremony (snga chab, phyi chab), although this is now no longer the custom in all Tibetan monasteries.

Among the ranks of the monastic hierarchy, that of gzim khang pa should also be mentioned. He is a kind of representative of the government chosen by turns from among the monks. He is called sku tshab in Se ra monastery, pho brang sde in ʼBras spungs and dpal chos in bKra shis lhun po. In the last-named monastery, however, this functionary is not chosen by the monks but appointed by the government. In this case he is usually an official of the church authorities (rtse drung), an indication of the traditional mistrust of Lhasa towards bKra shis lhun po.

The spyi gso (many monasteries have two of these officials), the general administrator of the monastery, has the same powers as in the
monasteries of the rNying ma pa school. He takes care of the goods and of the property (chos gzhi, dgon gzhi), in short the economic interests of the monastery in general. The distribution of the provisions needed by the community for their upkeep and for the ritual duties does not however take place directly through this official, but through his assistants and overseers of stores, although the overall control remains in his hands. In the hostels many teaching masters (dge rgyan) carry out administrative duties.

In the great dGe lugs pa monasteries the office of abbot is as a rule entrusted to famous dge bshes (in bKra shis lhun po they are called bka' chen) on account of their spiritual merits and their learning. In these monasteries neither an incarnation (sprul sku) nor an ordinary monk (grwa rkyang) is called to this high office as a general rule. The qualification of dge bshes is however not necessary for other offices such as that of the overseer (zhal ngo) in chapel, the gzim khang pa or the administrator (spyi gso ba). In the less important monasteries, also, the rank of dge bshes is not an absolute precondition for elevation to the position of abbot. Appointments to the most important monastic offices are made after nominations by the monastic community, which puts forward after mature deliberation a list of the five or six most worthy candidates. This list of recommended candidates (chos tho) is then presented to the central office (yig tshang) responsible for the religious hierarchy in the Lhasa government (this office is directed by four high religious dignitaries, drung yig chen mo) and finally submitted by the Cabinet (bKa' gshags) to the Dalai Lama in person, with whom lies the final decision. The appointment is made by a decree bearing the official seal of the Dalai Lama. Of course this procedure operates only for the most important offices (las sne); lesser appointments take place directly through the abbot.

The monastic way of life in Tibet thus rests on spiritual communities containing very large numbers of monks (grwa pa). However, not every member of these communities is able to see through the prescribed course of studies to the end. Simpler tasks are required of bearers of lesser monastic grades. Such tasks include maintenance of the monastery buildings, lighting lamps on the altars, in short all the jobs that require no particular learning. These monks, called ldob ldob, make up the great majority of the monastic population; they correspond approximately to the lay brothers of the Catholic monasteries. In the monastery of Se ra they are recognizable by the long growth of hair on either side of the head. In bKra shis lhun po they are called shar ba. They are not bound to scrupulously precise observance of monastic duties and perform primarily manual work. In the monastery of Se ra they used to form a quite martial kind of monastic militia, which fairly often led to serious disturbances.
Study and training are thus the roots of a deep-penetrating differentiation between learned and unlearned monks. Proportionately it is only a few who are willing to take on such a difficult period of study. They bear the honorific title of ‘literati’ (phyag dpe ba) and, provided that they have the necessary aptitude, they have to study according to those methods which Tibet inherited from India, which involve the mastering of the five main divisions into which the enormous corpus of Buddhist scriptures is divided. These are (1) logic (tshad ma); (2) Prajnaparamita (phar phyin); (3) Madhyamika (dbu ma), the philosophical system of Nagarjuna; (4) Abhidharma (mngon par mdzod); (5) Vinaya, discipline (‘dul ba, so sor thar pa). They form a very demanding curriculum. Understandably, not all of those willing to learn are able to immerse themselves in these studies equally deeply. Many come to a standstill in the middle and renounce a more extensive education. Remember that the entire period of study lasts for from twenty to twenty-five years.\textsuperscript{10}

If the student has passed the prescribed examination successfully, then two kinds of possibility of advancement are open to him. He can attain the rank of a dge bshes of second class (dge bshes chung), which is awarded by the college where he studies. Or he can obtain the rank of a dge bshes of first class (dge bshes chen), a promotion which is made by the government on the recommendation of the appropriate study establishment. The dge bshes is now qualified to carry out the most important and most difficult ritual performances (for example as bsnyen bskur zab rgyas in the general chapel, the colleges or the hospices). The dge bshes of second class can be transferred to the branch establishments of the monastery, where they in their turn can now teach the five branches of study.

The dge bshes of first class are divided into two groups tshog ram(s) pa and lha ram(s) pa.\textsuperscript{11} The former are qualified to teach in the various monasteries, to expound the sacred scriptures on the occasion of major festivals (e.g. at the tshogs mchod, on the twelfth day of the second month), and to comment upon and to carry out public disputations on the five areas of study.

Some dge bshes lha ram(s) pa have the privilege of taking part in the

---

\textbf{Figure 13} sgrub pa’i chas (items of clothing and equipment used by the lamas on the occasion of great ceremonies and festivities)

(a) and (b) rgyag zhuba (head-covering) and rgyag gos (clothing) which is worn on festal occasions in processions and on the temple balcony to the sound of the trumpets and the rgya gling (cf. Figure 4; among the ‘nine signs of good omen’), especially by the monks playing the rgya gling.

(c) dung gos: ‘clothing of the trumpet-player’, is worn by the trumpet-players on the occasions mentioned.
(d) and (f) *spos khebs*, incense-cover, and *spos phor*, incense-carrier. During the processions two monks precede all the others, they wear the *spos khebs*, slung from their right shoulder to their left armpit, and hold the incense-holders for the *bsangs* ceremony (cf. p. 199).

(d) and (e). If a great lama is invited, one or two monks walk before him, wearing the 'incense-cover' and holding the *spos dbyug* (e), the 'incense-staff', in their hands. These monks walk behind the *rgya gling* players.
great debates on questions of logic or of themselves leading such verbal contests, which take place on the occasion of the general assemblies in Lhasa or at the time of the sMon lam (cf. p.149); they can preach to the monks from the monasteries of Se ra, ‘Bras spungs and dGa’ ldan and elsewhere who have poured into Lhasa for this festival, whatever school they may belong to. On this occasion the Dalai Lama receives the twenty to thirty participants and selects from them the five or six best qualified. The lha ram(s) pa who receive this distinction are chosen for the office of abbot in one of the great monasteries. They can also ascend to the highest steps of the spiritual hierarchy, such as the office of khri pa (supreme abbot) of dGa’ ldan, ‘he who sits on the throne of dGa’ ldan’, the recognized successor of Tsong kha pa.

The ‘literati’, headed by the dge bshes, devote themselves to the doctrine (chos), while srid, the realm of worldly goods and administration, remains the preserve of the phyag mdzod, the gnyer pa and the spyi gso.

Study in the monasteries is by no means restricted only to liturgical, doctrinal and esoteric scriptures. The student is also offered the possibility of penetrating into the auxiliary sciences, even if these are not directly connected to the primarily religious and liturgical training. Here we are concerned with the following so-called rig pa or branches of knowledge which are taught in special schools: medicine (sman rig), astrology and astronomy according to the Indian system (rtsis dkar) and according to the Chinese system (rtsis nag); calligraphy; rhetoric (snyan ngag); painting (lha bris); grammar (sgra rig); the art of drawing for tracing the mandala at Tantric ceremonies or at acts of consecration (dkyil ’khor gyi thig dang rdul tshon).

The liturgical life in dGe lugs pa monasteries unfolds in a multiplicity of religious ceremonies in which the monks are bound by duty to participate. In the great monasteries the most important ritual performances take place in the central chapel, the smaller ones in the chapel of the teaching establishment itself. For the collective rituals which take place every day in the central chapel all the ordained monks gather from both the colleges and the hostels. The ritual performance begins at dawn. In its course tea (mang ja) is served three times (snga, phyi, bar gsun). The religious ceremony itself consists of recitation of the sacred scriptures and of rituals fixed by precise rules. Such morning observances normally take place once daily, twice on festival days.

Apart from this daily liturgical activity, the life in the great dGe lugs pa monasteries is ruled by an intensive striving in another direction. The attainment of the longed-for grade of dge bshes demands an extremely deep study of the doctrinal writings, especially of the mNgon rtogs rgyan (Skt. Abhisamayalankara) and the Lam rim chen mo of Tsong kha
pa which is based upon it, and above all of logic (mtshan nyid). An essential role in the monk’s life is accordingly played by the chos grwa reserved for public disputation, a wide open place, often planted with trees, and of an inviting peacefulness, which is guarded by a wall (lcags ri) built around it. In the middle of the open space is a place for the throne (khri) on which the leader of the disputation takes his place and from where he announces his judgment on the ability and maturity of the participants in the contests. The study period is divided into eight sections, measured differently according to the seasons. Hours of study, of discussion of texts and of disputation alternate with periods of rest (chos mtshams). Those who are assiduous in their studies dare not allow themselves any rest even at these times however, for during the rest periods they have to learn by heart those texts they have chosen for special study, they ask question of their teachers (dge rgan), and in fact they continue with their usual activity, admittedly with somewhat more freedom than during the ordinary school routine.

The studies in the chos grwa begin immediately after the end of the Monlam festival (on the twenty-fifth day of the first month). Debates can normally take place only in the appropriate place described above; only in exceptional circumstances can they be put on in the chapels of the individual teaching establishments, for these are reserved for liturgical performances and religious practice (nyams len, nyam bshes) while the chos grwa is intended specifically for dialectical disputation (brtag dpyad). Many of these verbal battles, in which the monks put to the test not only their erudition but also their presence of mind and their subtlety in argument, are of considerable interest. As an example here I will mention only the debating competition which usually takes place in the time between the second and the sixteenth day of the fifth month (chos mtshams). The event begins after one monk challenges his companions to disputation on themes which he proposes. To do this he goes to a college other than his own and writes his name there on a wall meant for this purpose. Upon this the contest of oratory begins. In the course of it he is obliged to answer all the questions asked by those of his colleagues and teachers who are present. This duel of oratory, which recalls similar customs in India, is called rig che (Great Test of Wisdom). It begins every second day at sunset and lasts without a break until dawn of the following day.

During the great summer period dedicated to the doctrine (dbyar chos chen mo), which lasts from the seventeenth day of the fifth month to the fifteenth day of the sixth, the abbots of the various chos grwa customarily comment on and interpret the Lam rim chen mo of Tsong kha pa.

The sixteenth day of the sixth month is a holiday in the chos grwa, although some dge bshes organize public discussions on questions of
religious doctrine before the gate of the central chapel. In this case the debate is transformed into a real popular festival (dus ston), at which laymen are encouraged to give gifts to the monastery, and indeed to provide the cost of food for the entire monastic community for four days. On the occasion of this festival the other monks carry out a thorough cleaning of all the sacred utensils and gaily decorate the surroundings of the temple.\textsuperscript{14}

The great winter festival of the doctrine (dgun chos chen mo, also called byams sman lam dgun chos or bzang spyod chos thog) takes place from the seventeenth day of the eleventh month to the sixteenth of the twelfth. During this festival four assemblies are summoned each day in the chapels of the individual colleges, where the debates last without a break for two days and two nights. On this festival too laymen compete in generosity to the monastic community.

\textbf{Figure 14}  
Temple ornamentation and objects carried in processions 
(a) rkya dar: an object similar in form to the thug found on the temple roof. A cylinder made of black wool threads or yak hair, stretched over a central frame or structure, with a trident on top. The whole device is enclosed by vertical and horizontal strips of white cotton.  
(b) dar: flag of whatever colour, quadrangular or rectangular, with fluttering pennants (lce) of indeterminate number.  
(c) gtags: parasol, somewhat smaller than the usual parasol.  
(d) phang tshar: banner (cf. Figure 6).  
(e) rgyal mtsas: another kind of banner, the top of which resembles a small parasol. 
All these objects are used in processions; they belong to lamas invested with high dignity, or are used in special ceremonies (the setting up of a mandala, etc.) in which the presence of a great lama is regarded as essential.
As is apparent from the examples given, the activity of monks in the *dGe lugs pa* monasteries extends over two regions. On the one hand there is a liturgical life consecrated by custom, enveloped in ritualism, fixed by tradition, which has many traits in common with that of the other schools, even if it keeps clear of many of the outgrowths of esotericism which prevail there. On the other hand there is the deep doctrinal study, which is however, on account of its difficulty, only for a few chosen ones. Logic and disputation predominate here, and lead to the formally correct posing of a thesis being taken as a guarantee for its truth, and to preference being given to the cold logical architecture of scriptural interpretation over the emotions of inner spirituality.

If in the above account we have stressed primarily the role of doctrine and disputation among the *dGe lugs pa*, this should not give the impression that this tradition neglects Tantric study. The Tantras are, rather, cultivated by special schools, the *sngags khang*, which can only be entered after completion of a preliminary course of teaching (cf. p. 137). However, what distinguishes this tradition from others is the smaller number of Tantric texts which they recommend and the stricter selection which they make.

It should be remembered in this connection that *Tsong kha pa* himself wrote not only the treatise called *Lam rim chen mo*, which deals with the non-Tantric teachings, but also the no less famous *sNgags rim* on the Tantras. One of *Tsong kha pa’s* students, *mKhas grub rje*, is known as the writer of one of the most important texts on the Tantric literature and its sub-divisions.

With respect to Tibetan monastic liturgy in general the following still remains to be said. Liturgical life in Tibet has many aspects and equally many formulations. In the works of the Tibetan polymaths ritualistic treatises (*cho ga*) are present in abundance, and particular texts among these have been accepted by the various monasteries. The daily liturgical action, in which the monks are bound to participate, is often an act of spiritual uplift only in theory. In reality it becomes a magical practice, though as such it is to be clearly distinguished from Tantric ritual, to which one cannot deny a higher emotional content. An active and automatically released power is ascribed to the continually repeated words and formulae (often in a more or less deformed Sanskrit incomprehensible to the monks themselves) and to each separate moment of the ritual drama. This power is innate in the liturgical act as such; it is released by it with the same inevitability as, for example, merit is released through the recitation of a sacred text.

In conclusion it should also be noted that the Tibetan monasteries can be divided into the following three groups, *gdan sa*, *gzhis dgon* and *gzhung dgon*. *Gdan sa* are the central establishments of a particular school. In Tibet before 1959 these included, for example, *sMin grol*
gling and rDo rje brag for the rNyingle lag pa; Se ra, dGa’ ldan and ‘Bras spungs for the dGe legs pa (cf. above, p. 137); mtshur phu and ‘Bri gung for the bKa’ bregyud pa; Sa skya for the Sa skya pa; Rwa sreng for the bKa’ gdam pa. Each of these monasteries has branch monasteries of the same sect attached to it; these are called ‘dependencies’ (gzhis dgon or dgon lag). Colleges (grwa sa) are found only in the central establishments, where monks are generally divided into ‘local’ (that is monks born in the neighbourhood of the establishment, who entered it in boyhood) and stranger monks (byes grwa). The latter come from the branch monasteries (gzhis dgon) to the central establishment in order to spend there the prescribed number of years of study for the completion of their education. During this period the college has to defray the food and lodging of these students. It also happens, however, especially when the monasteries concerned are not to be considered in a strict sense as ‘dependencies’ of great monasteries, that their monks visit the colleges of other larger monasteries according to old custom.

The branch monasteries (gzhis dgon) only contain a limited number of monks in general, and meet their expenses from the produce of their property and from donations from charitable persons. Often the monks support themselves from their private property. In West Tibet and Spiti it is usual for the family to assign a piece of land for this purpose to their son if he is about to enter a monastery. In such cases this property goes on his death to the member of the family with the right to inherit; otherwise it is incorporated in the monastery, except for the personal effects of the deceased.

The dGe legs pa monasteries of Se ra, ‘Bras spungs and dGa’ ldan are generally referred to as ‘State Monasteries’ (gzhung dgon) because, while they possessed their own property, they often received assistance from the State in case of need. This custom, however, was restricted to Central Tibet, as is the corresponding term.

2 Religious calendar and festivals

The daily existence of the monk, unfolding through ritual, study and disputation, is periodically enlivened by religious festivals and ceremonies, whose solemn rituals draw the entire monastery within their power.

Here one should distinguish between the celebration of the calendrical festivals, by the monks responsible for the cultic acts, and the participation of the laity in the festivals. The monks are actors, the laity are spectators, though spectators free to move. It should not be forgotten that, at least in theory, the laymen are always beneficiaries of these religious performances, since the ceremonies generate merit
which spreads out over everyone. Through the transference of the result of a good action (Skt. *parinamana*) it brings profit to all. The believers are thereby encouraged to contribute to the fruitful performance of the sacred ceremony through donations and other services, since it is to their own moral advantage.

The Tibetan calendar of festivals goes back in its essentials to the precepts laid down in the Vinaya (full moon, new moon and so on) along with the various celebrations commemorating important events and actions in the life of the Buddha. Buddhist doctrine divides the Buddha's life into twelve 'acts' (*mdzad pa bcu gnyis*), a scheme whose influence is also felt in sacred art. These twelve acts represent a development of a more limited scheme which recognized only eight essential acts in the life of the Sublime One, each of which was celebrated through the erection of a *mchod rten* (Skt. *stupa*) of a particular shape. As is well known, the religious calendar reaches its climax in four of the Buddha's acts: birth, Enlightenment, setting into motion of the Wheel of the Teaching, entry into *nirvāna*. All of these four festivals are celebrated on the same day, namely on that on which the attainment of Enlightenment falls. To these principal moments in the life of the Master (*ston pa*) are added the memorial festival of his descent from heaven (to which he had ascended to preach the Law to his mother), and also that of the most famous of the miracles ascribed to the Buddha, that of Sravasti, where he multiplied himself into an infinite row of manifestations while flames streamed from his head and feet alternately. In this way he vanquished the heretics who had challenged him to a magical competition.

The following are the most important days in the Tibetan religious calendar:

*First month*: tenth to fifteenth days, anniversary of the great miracle of Sravasti, which follows on from the festival of the *sMon lam*, the Great Vow; it is the most important ritual event of the year. One can easily understand how the miracle of Sravasti, the Great Miracle (*cho 'phrub chen mo*), became inserted into the New Year's Festival (*lo gsar*); it recalls the defeat of the heretics, who were opponents not only of the Buddha but also, and above all, of the Law, and thus of the moral and religious order which Buddhism introduced into Tibet. It was a natural step therefore to equate these heretics with the forces of evil, with the world of Mara (*Tib. bdud*), a world which on Tibetan soil had been enriched by numerous new traits that India had not known. This world also included the intransigent forces of the indigenous religion which Buddhism had overcome. The Great Miracle thus became the symbol of the triumph of the *novus ordo* and the overcoming of its enemies.

*Fourth month*: seventh day, festival of the birth of the Buddha.
Fifteenth day, festival of the Enlightenment and of the entry into
nirvana.

Sixth month: fourth day, feast of the first sermon.

Ninth month: descent of the Buddha from heaven.

Each of these days or series of days is, like the New Year’s Festival,
a festival, a ‘great time’ (dus chen).

The preceding enumeration in no way exhausts the religious calen-
dar of Tibet. The fifteenth day of the third month, for example, is
sacred to the memory of the preaching of the Kalacakra Tantra, a
famous Tantric cycle first revealed at dPal ldan ’Bras spungs (Sri
Dhanyakataka in East India). In addition, each monastery celebrates
the day on which, according to tradition, the particular rgyud or
Tantra to which the school concerned attributes special importance
was revealed.

In the rNying ma pa school numerous festivals have important
events in the life of Gu ru rin po che (Padmasambhava) for their subject.
On the tenth day of the first month, his flight from the world, taking of
vows, meditation in cemeteries, receiving of the name Santaraksita;
tenth day of the second month, taking of vows and receiving the name
Sa kya seng ge; tenth day of the third month, the occasion when, on
being consigned to the flames by the King of Zahor, he changed the
holy fire into water, and established himself in meditation on a lotus
blossom which blossomed forth in the midst of the lake he had
summoned by magic. On this occasion he chose Mandarava as his
female companion, and took on the name Padmasambhava. A series
of other famous episodes from his life are also commemorated on the
tenth day of this month.

Among the Sa skya pa monks, the summer ceremony (dbyar mchod)
takes place from the seventh to fifteenth days of the fourth month. At
its centre stand the liturgical formulae sacred to dPal Kye rdo rje. On
the fourth day of the sixth month the festival of the (sixteen or
eighteen) Arhat (Tib. gnas brtan) is celebrated, also called stong mchod
chen mo; at this festival a thousand lamps (lha bshes) are kindled. From
the twenty-second to the twenty-ninth days of the ninth month the
exorcism called gtor zlog, sacred to the mgon po Mahakala, is performed.
This consists of the erection of a great gto, of which more will be said
below (cf.p.155). On the occasion of this festival the ceremony called
the great ma ni dung sgrub is also performed. This involves preparing a
mandala of sPyan ras gzigs, at the centre of which is placed a vessel (bum
pa). A thread comes out of this vessel, and is held in the hands of the
monks celebrating the ceremony, who form a circle. The ceremony
must last for seven days without the chain of monks ever being
broken. If one of them goes off to eat or sleep he is immediately
replaced.

148
The Tibetan liturgy is rich in variations which depend not only on the different ritual forms in the various sects but also on the particular character of the gods or festivals concerned. In addition there is a natural distinction between the general everyday liturgy and the very much more complex liturgy which precedes or accompanies mystical practices. There are however certain common elements, mostly forming a prelude to the sacred action proper, which are present almost without exception: the purification of the place provided, first of all, and then the elimination of all the forces and influences injurious to the performance of the ritual or the sacred condition of the locality.

The ritual performance is prefaced by the solemn pronouncement of the triple formula of refuge (skyabs 'gro) 'to the Buddha, to the Doctrine, to the Community'; on this follows the repetition of the vow to strive for Enlightenment, and the contemplation of the four 'immeasurables' (tshad med bzhi). The seven parts (yan lag) of the ritual follow: (a) act of homage or veneration (phyag tshal); (b) offering proper (mchod pa, cf.p.116); (c) confession of sins; (d) expression of rejoicing over the good deeds done by living beings and by the Buddhas, which benefit us all (dge la rjes su yi rang ba); (e) request to the Buddhas to preach the doctrine; (f) request to the Bodhisattvas to renounce their entry into nirvana and to continue their work of salvation in the world further; (g) allowing all living beings to share in the fruits of the ritual. All this is followed by the singing of hymns and the offering of gtor ma.

Many festivals result from the adaptation of old local celebrations to the world of Lamaism. Buddhism in Tibet, far from forbidding the festivals in honour of the various dei loci (yul lha, sa bdag, klu), has rather impressed its own imprint on the traditional rituals and festivals, which have been allowed to continue and to preserve essential features of their ancient forms. There is scarcely any place in Tibet where these old indigenous forms were not preserved from destruction by admitting them into the festal cycle of the Lamaist calendar. Even in such important festivals as the sMon lam, which took place in Lhasa from the fourth to twenty-fifth days of the first month, the ancient festival of the New Year, attested from almost everywhere in Tibet, is still clearly perceptible.

The 'Great Vow', sMon lam chen mo, cannot be separated from the exorcismatic custom of driving out the evils stored up in the course of the preceding year (gtor bzlog). We are concerned here with an extremely complex series of public and private observances which accompany the onset of the New Year. The rituals and festivals concerned occur, with local variations, in all parts of Tibet. This period of time, always regarded as menacing, was celebrated through special cult acts in all areas and schools. In Derge, for example, the introductory ceremonies
climax in a great liturgical performance (sgrub chen) centred upon
the deity dPal Kye rdo rje and the seven mandala of the Ngor school.
At the end of the year the festival of good omen (bkra shis dgu rtsegs) is
celebrated. This festival is intended to close one cycle and introduce
a new period of salvation under favourable signs. The festival consists
primarily of a musical performance at which the great trumpets and
the shawms sound forth. It begins in the night of the thirtieth day of
the last month of the year and is constantly repeated until the evening
of the fifteenth day of the first month of the new year. The apotropaic
character of this custom is evident, and it is equally clear why it lasts
unbroken from sunset to dawn for two full weeks; during these nights
the powers of evil lurking in the dark are at their most dangerous. In
the second half of the last month of the year (on the 16th, 21st, 22nd,
23rd, 25th, 28th and 29th) the rituals of the Phur bu cycle also take
place, though the liturgical details vary. The feast of the twenty-
eighth and twenty-ninth days is called phur chen, that of the twenty-
first and twenty-second phur chung. The former are also called ‘Upper
action’ (stod las) and the latter ‘Lower action’ (smad las). While the
former festival is essentially positive in nature and is intended to ease
the way to Enlightenment (byang chub sgrub) for living beings, the
latter has the task of chasing away hostile powers (dgra bsegs bsgral ba).
The climax of the ritual action is the expulsion of the powers of
demonic destruction (gto zor). On these two occasions impressive
ritual dances (tha 'cham) are organized, which for many parts of
Tibetan society constitute the quintessence of the New Year
festival.
Large-scale festive occasions like these are not only an affair of the
monks. The functions of these ceremonies (exorcism of evil influences,
invoking a better era, calling up good fortune for the year which is
beginning) grant them an all-embracing range. The performance of
this festival, with its common hopes and common struggle, not only
for the welfare of the individual but for the good of the community,
integrates the monkhood and the lay world into a social totality. It is
not surprising then that this occasion has become a national festival
of the whole Tibetan people. Even if the laymen are not called upon to
participate directly in the cult, but are merely present as spectators,
their presence underlines the participation of all in the central impulse
of the monastic community. The layman bears an active joint respon-
sibility for the efficacy of the rituals; he makes his contribution to the
process of accumulation of good and wholesome powers, among other
things by taking part in the ritual circumambulation of the sacred
buildings, which also include the monastery press. Through such
religious acts he pays homage to the word of the Buddha, the verbal
body of the Buddha, and collects merit not only for his personal
salvation, but also for the collectivity whose future welfare the communal ritual ensures.

The transition from one year to another represents a critical moment for the entire country, and thus requires, to balance this moment of danger, the common exertion of all positive forces so that the passage will turn out fortunately. One can hardly be surprised if on this occasion ancient indigenous customs of exorcism of harmful spirits come to the surface again and are reflected in the liturgy which Lamaism has adopted, even becoming tied up closely with the ethics of Buddhism. Thus it now becomes a question not merely of repulsing the adversaries which are threatening but also of an active performance aimed at accumulating good karma. The good karma arises from the co-operation between the monks performing the ritual ceremonies and the laymen giving their material support through donations and charity. Thus the karmic content of the festival does not remain isolated; it benefits all, and provides the ethical counterpart of an efficacious defence against evil, the result of a symbiosis between old and new, between the original religiosity of Tibet and the moral doctrine of Buddhism.

Given this context, one can understand how it came about that the sMon lam celebration introduced by Tsong kha pa was inserted into the total picture of the ceremonies described above. The sMon lam results from the incorporation of archaic rites of passage on the occasion of the change of year, which are found everywhere in Tibet, into Lamaist ritual, in this case through the mediation of the dGe lugs pa school. The dGe lugs pa also perform exorcistic rituals (gtor bzlog), but they have given the festival a more monastic character, along with the appropriate symbolism, without being able by this means to prevent the people from continuing to preserve their old customs in this new dress. The symbolism which has been grafted on to the old custom is in any case not understood by all. Given the existence of a ritual form regarded as indispensable for the common good and for future security, the old tradition had to be carried on, if in new clothing.

The overlaying of the old New Year festival by the sMon lam celebration emerges very clearly from the fact that the festival is now equated with the anniversary of the victory over evil and heresy in the miracle of Sravasti (cf.p.147). This struggle and victory over the forces of evil forms the principal theme too of the lha 'cham dances organized at the end of the year among all schools. It is true, however, that the spontaneous, popular character of the New Year festival is encumbered to some degree by the symbolism which serves to admit it within the doctrinal structure of the dGe lugs pa reforms.

In this context the sMon lam vow has (at least in theory) not only the
task of ensuring the coming of a prosperous year. The dGe lugs pa have
given it an additional, more secret meaning. The community is
situated in a period of general decline, in which evil grows and the
doctrine preached by Sakyamuni is becoming obscured. It thus
becomes necessary to overcome or at least to lessen the evident marks
of this period of time, plagues, war and famine, and above all to help
the saving activity of the next Buddha, Byams pa (Skt. Maitreya) by
preparing for his coming. The symbolism behind these ideas carries
over into the liturgical and practical aspects: the government distri-
butes medicinal plants (sman) to the monks as an antidote against
illnesses, pieces of silk cloth (dar ’jam) for defence against the danger of
weapons, and foods, meat, soup, money and so on against the threat
of famine.

The liturgy is determined in all its separate sections by the doctrine.
For example, the ritual circumambulation of the temple of Byams pa
has the symbolic meaning that the new age of the doctrine, the
descent of the divine word, is already an accomplished fact. Even the
exorcism (gtor bzlog), which the dGe lugs pa too practise, here undergoes
a transformation taking it far from its original sense. Having entered
Buddhism from the indigenous tradition, it takes on speculative
subtleties in this context, for example in the idea that non-knowing
(ma rig), the origin of moral defilement (nyon mong s), and therefore also
of the corresponding karma, is inborn in myself and all others and
must therefore be burned up in the fire of transcendent consciousness
(ye shes kyi me). The image which is at the centre of this ceremony is
therefore intended to take non-knowing onto itself and is to be burned
up in the fire of wisdom, which is represented in this way. In order not
to depart too far from the usual concepts through such interpretation,
the opponents of the religion and the country, the demonic powers,
are also conceived of as conjured into this image (called ling ga).
Through the ritual action they are overcome or killed, after their
conscious principle (rnam par shes) has been driven away onto the plane
of infinite spiritual existentiality (chos dbyings).18

All along the line a new interpretation of the traditional rituals has
been undertaken under dGe lugs pa auspices. Instead of awaiting the
New Year, it is the annus magnus whose coming is awaited; the short
space of twelve months thus becomes a section of a chain stretching on
into infinity, and thus bringing good fortune and blessings, worthy of
the renewal of the doctrine, of the coming of the realm of Maitreya,
whose epiphany will take place after the conclusion of the progressive
decline of the present cosmic period.

Along with the sMon lam ceremonies there used to take place
another New Year custom, analogues for which can be found in many
other cultures. This is the temporary overturning of the social order
such that power is placed for a short (or sometimes for a longer period) in other hands. On this occasion a monk from the community was chosen to be city magistrate of Lhasa. During the sMon lam festival he supervised the monasteries and also the city government, he inflicted fines and other punishments. A similar custom existed in Derge (where the monk chosen was not called zhal ngo as in Lhasa but 'du ba'i gsol dpon chen mo).

One should always remember that in the exorcism (gtor bzlog) a positive act of driving out the evil is taking place in which the society must take part with all its energy. At this critical moment of transition from past to future the fighting spirit of all of society and of each individual must be called forth to the utmost possible degree. The participants in the sacred dances brandish weapons in their hands; horse races, archery competitions and athletic games complete the picture of the festival. This is certainly a question of very ancient, doubtless pre-Buddhist, traditions, in which an agonistic and military character predominates. The festival is celebrated at a time when war and hunting begin again. The competitions described are thus rooted in tradition to such a degree that they still today play a role of the first rank in the New Year festivities. This is especially true of the horse races which have represented one of the best-loved attractions of this festival since the most ancient times. With the easy excitability of spirits and the lowered discipline, however, these competitions do not pass off without some danger. According to the narrative of the Pad ma thang yig (No. 3 pp. 406f.), it was during these very horse races at the New Year’s Festival that King Khri srong lde brtsan was killed by an arrow, after his ministers had forced him to ignore Padmasabhava’s advice to abolish the old custom.

Faced by the uncertainty of the coming year, man chooses not to abdicate but to oppose his utmost power. The agonistic element thus becomes a decisive factor of this festival; it is reflected in the military ceremonies, in the gestures of the dances and so on. The Lamaist adoption of ancient customs is apparent in many of the New Year customs which were practised in Derge. At these festivals the usual rivalries between the sects were also temporarily attenuated. Sa skya pa and rNy ing ma pa share together in the ceremonies (the drug cu or tshogs rab festival) from the twenty-third to twenty-ninth of the twelfth month, which form a rite of preparation for the glo on the twenty-ninth day of this month, a ceremony of evocation and propitiation of dPal rDo rje ’jigs byed according to the Sa skya pa method.

The glo, along with its meaning and significance, has been discussed already, and it will be returned to again later (cf. p. 177). Here we will draw attention to the competitive games of all kinds, essentially similar to those described above, which are arranged at these festivals.
Lamaism could not remove these customs, which were difficult to uproot. On the occasion of these festivals martial games take place even in the course of the religious ceremonies. On the morning of the twenty-third, the first stroke of the powerful drum resounded from the balcony of the second storey of the temple, directly above the entrance gates. With loud shouts, and clearing their way with hands and feet, the monks gathered at the two gates to the right and left of the great temple, which had previously been closed by the two ministers (blo na po) of the King of Derge. At the second stroke of the drum the two doors were pushed open by the officials mentioned, and the whole crowd of monks rushed out together riotously, as if completely beyond control, to crowd together again before the main gate of the temple. On its two wings were situated high up two metal fittings, on each of which a metal ring hung with a multicoloured silk scarf knotted on to it in such a way that the rings turned upwards. On the second drumstroke the monks rushed forward with their usual violence into a thick heap before the door. The competition which now began consisted in trying to be the first to put the metal ring back into its normal position, so that the scarves now hung from the lower half rather than the upper. Only the occupants of the monastery were admitted to these competitions, and not the guests who had streamed into Derge from other monasteries for the festival.

On the third drumstroke the great gate opened, and the tumultuous crowd moved into the inside of the temple. Each monk tried to be the first to reach the sitting-places situated right and left of the two principal pillars. There was a legend connected with these pillars. No one had been able to succeed in transporting them from the forest to the place where the temple was being built. One day, however, they were found already in their place, a deed of the deus loci (gzhi bdag) of Derge, 'Bri gnyan gdong. He who succeeded in taking his place on the seats in front of these pillars, to the right and left of the throne (chos khrims khri) reserved for the King of Derge, received from the government a mdzo (a cow-yak hybrid) and a leopard skin. These pillars were therefore called mdzo ka, 'mdzo pillars'. The taking of these seats was thus bound up with a competitive struggle which quite often developed into a real tumult (according to Professor Namkhai Norbu, to whom I owe these particulars). As soon as the King of Derge, his ministers and all the heads of the monasteries sat down on their thrones, and the king gave a signal with his hand, silence was established and the great gathering for the cult act began. Thus a popular element from the realm of the New Year festivities, in the form of the competitions, has crystallized about a purely liturgical cult ceremony belonging to a particular Tantric cycle.

While this festival was taking place from the twenty-third to the
twenty-ninth in the Sa skya pa temple, the rNying ma pa sect simultaneously celebrated its rituals consecrated to ‘jam dpal tshe bdag in other monasteries. Both liturgies pursued the same goal, to eliminate hindrances (bar chad), causes and occasions of misfortune (rkyen ngan) so as to assure good fortune in the coming year. This meaning emerges even more clearly from the festival which was celebrated on the twenty-ninth day of the same month. On this day the exorcism (gto) already mentioned of the drug cu chen mo (cf.p.153) was performed together by Sa skya pa and rNying ma pa monks. The Sa skya pa who streamed here from the principal monasteries and their branches went by in procession. Then the rDo rje ’jigs byed dance took place, after which the great offering (gtor ma) was brought to the bank of the gTang chu. Subsequently Sa skya pa and rNying ma pa gathered in the Tshe bdag lha khang and led the gto chen (cf.p.180) of the Tshe bdag on to the dancing place. The dance lasted the entire day till sunset. More than a hundred monks dressed as deer30 took part in it, along with a further hundred in the dress of black women (the so-called nag ga ma). As evening fell, the great gto was led to the bank of the gTang chu, where the Sa skya pa had prepared the offerings (gtor ma). On the way the gto chen was turned towards a little valley (Ngul chu), then towards a rock (rdo pha wang). This custom rested on the idea that the power active in the gto had the ability to avert harm caused by water and mountains. Then the gto was brought to the bank of the gTang chu and a representation of the ling ga, drawn on a piece of paper, was proffered towards it. During these processes about three hundred richly dressed and ornamented men fired ancient muskets with gigantic barrels and fearful detonation.

The New Year celebrations, which are tied into the religious calendar, and on which the participation of the monastic communities confers a particular solemnity, are to be distinguished fundamentally from the primarily secular and popular festivals such as that of the harvest time. More will be said about these in the chapter on Tibetan folk religion. The New Year’s Festival and the Harvest Festival apparently attest through their juxtaposition the coexistence of two calendrical systems of different origin. In the older calendar, that of the lo gsar (New Year) an echo of a society based essentially on hunting is still perceptible. At the first thaw the mountain paths became usable, the animals come out of their hiding places, every human activity becomes less restricted, and hunting and war begin again. Thus military dances, competitions, martial games and so on announce the new phase in the rhythm of communal life.

The feasts for the end of the harvest stand in another kind of cultural context. With the harvest a period of grace in the community’s activity comes to an end and a new cycle of work, that of ploughing
and sowing, begins. The type of ritual bound up with this is of a
different kind, because determined by different religious and cultural
premises. In reality the dividing line has become blurred in the course
of time; the two modes of being standing alongside each other have
affected each other, and reciprocal influence has become the rule. A
unifying sacred order has been constituted and the inevitable fusion of
elements of different cultural and social provenance brought about.
Nevertheless the presence of two calendrical systems of different
origins can still be clearly seen. The New Year, having become official
through its adoption by the monastic community, is bound up very
closely with the sacred regulation of the monastic life. The Harvest
Festival is beyond such control, it is a form of expression of the
agrarian life of the community, in which the banishing of hostile
spirits by the village magician plays a more important role than the
direct involvement of the monastery.

3 The hermits’ way of life

Tibetan monks do not only live in monasteries. Apart from the monks
in the monasteries, there are first of all the wandering lamas to be
considered, whom it is true often merge into the class of exorcists
(sngags pa). They offer their services wherever the formulae and arts
which they consider to be their unique property are in demand.
Another group of monks is that of the hermits (ri khrod pa). Monks of
all schools practise temporary seclusion in hermitages intended for
this purpose or in rocky caves more or less apart from their monasteries.
Such seclusion is not restricted to those who have devoted themselves
to a life of contemplation and to yogic exercises; it is also resorted to by
those who wish to meditate or to write in solitude. In Tibet there were
whole towns of hermitages which were attached to particular
monasteries. Here we will mention out of many only the Yer pa, the
hermitages in the neighbourhood of Gyantse, where each monk spent
his life in his own narrow cell. The confinement can take on very
severe and harsh forms, notably in the bKa’ brgyud pa and rNying ma pa
sects. In these cases it is no longer a question of temporary seclusion,
but of complete withdrawal from the world, of the breaking off of all
relations with mankind. Occasionally this hermit life recalls certain
details of the Egyptian monasticism so exhaustively studied by
Festugière (1965), so that perhaps the question of the origin of certain
aspects of these penitential practices, for which parallels scarcely exist
in India, should be raised again. In any case the confinement, which
is chosen freely, is fully entered upon only after exhaustive preparation
and the use of special liturgical formulae. The flight from the world is
dominated here by the desire to participate in special mystic revelations through the aid of appropriate yogic techniques. The ascetic (\textit{mal 'byor pa}) must therefore first undertake the prescribed initiation under his master’s direction. After this the ‘four hundred-thousands’ are recited among the \textit{bKa’ brgyud pa} or the ‘five hundred-thousands’ (‘\textit{bum ther}) among the \textit{rNying ma pa}. This refers to the obligation to perform a hundred-thousandfold recitation of the refuge formula (\textit{skyabs 'gro}; refuge in the Buddha, the Law and the Community), a hundred-thousandfold drawing of the \textit{mandala}, a hundred-thousand prostrations (\textit{rkyang phyag}, complete prostrations in which the forehead touches the ground, corresponding to the Sanskrit \textit{astanga-pranama}) and a hundred-thousand recitations of the mantra formula of \textit{rDo rje sems dpa’}.

This fourfold propaedeutic is extended among the \textit{rNying ma pa} by a meditation to be repeated a hundred-thousand times by the candidates. These preparatory acts take place either in the hermitage (\textit{ri khrod}) itself or in the colleges for yogic practice (\textit{sgrub grwa}) which were mentioned above (cf.p.114). There the beginning hermit awaits after his vows the sacred assent of the guardian deity (\textit{yi dam}) appropriate to his goal, namely \textit{dpal 'Khor lo bde mchog}. Then in an isolated place, not far from a hermitage or small monastery apart from the world (\textit{chos sgar}), he builds himself an earthen hut (\textit{dam sbyar}), or else he may seek refuge in a cave in the rocks (\textit{brag phug}) large enough for him to walk, lie down and sit, with a latrine in one corner. The cell is then completely closed, except for a small opening through which the attendant (\textit{sgrub g.yog}) assigned to him passes him food and water once a day, at midday, without being allowed to speak a word. The food is passed to him by means of a kind of revolving basket of food which fits exactly into the opening, so that the servant cannot see the meditator’s hand. If no answer comes from inside the cell for three days, this indicates the hermit’s illness or death. Then the lama in charge is summoned. This lama is also present at the closing of the cell, which is accomplished by a special ceremony to banish any possible interference (\textit{bar chad sel ba}). Then two to four heaps of stones (\textit{mtshams tho}) are rolled before the entrance, and ritual gifts (\textit{gsior ma}) offered for the \textit{chos skyon}, and \textit{rgyal chen}\textsuperscript{21} and especially for the \textit{deus loci (gnas bdag)}\textsuperscript{22}. Also the magical formula \textit{hum} is written in ink on a wooden tablet and this is fixed in front of the opening of the cell.

The period of confinement usually lasts seven years, but it is at least for five. In case of illness the lama in charge of the hermitage can be summoned in order to banish the causes of harm (\textit{rkyen sel}).

Concerning the \textit{rNying ma pa} we have yet to add that the hermits of this school have themselves enclosed in cells or caves into which not even the smallest ray of light can enter. Such caves for hermits are
called 'dark retreats' (mun mtshams). Their occupants perform a special type of yoga which equates the mind (sems) with light (‘od gsal), and which we have already alluded to in Chapter 4. They hope that through this practice the inner light will break forth from the mind which is of the same nature as it and illuminate everything with its shining radiance. Some ascetics go so far as to let themselves be walled up without food or drink; to their spiritual faith the 'essence' of water (chu'i beud) or the ‘essence’ of a stone called cong zhi will provide sufficient nourishment.

4 The property of the monastery and its administration

As already mentioned (cf.p.137) the property (spyi) of the monastery is of four kinds: landed property, herds of large and small livestock, trading goods, interest on loans.

The landed property (gzhis ka, chos zhing) results in part from repeated donations, in part from the incorporation of the lands of other monasteries as a consequence of the frequent disputes, and in part from new investments. Its administration is in charge of the spyi pa, in other words the official responsible for the common property (spyi). With regard to the administration of great monasteries such as Se ra, dGa’ ldan and so on, applicants for the office of spyi pa apply to the government with an appropriate request, as a consequence of which the office is generally bestowed by the state on a particular official.

There are two types of administration. In the first the spyi pa transfers the usufruct (bog ma) of specified parts of the communal property to particular families, who are called bog bdag. The fields are then cultivated by the monastery peasants (mi ser), who instead of remuneration receive a piece of land (’tsho rten) serving for their support, and as monastery employees need to pay no taxes. The leaseholder (bog bdag) has to deliver a part of the harvest to the spyi pa according to a previous agreement, and to pay the taxes to the government. Arrangements of this kind usually turned out to be very lucrative, and nearly all bog bdag belonged to the aristocracy. The other procedure is the following: the spyi pa delegates a representative (sku tshab) for the monastery domains, who is charged with the overseeing of the harvest work and the supervision of the peasants. The produce of the harvest is then delivered to the spyi pa. In both cases there is a substantial profit-margin.

Besides their lands, the monasteries possess considerable numbers of livestock, yak, mdzo, sheep, goats, which are looked after by herdsmen (’brog pa). The most important aspect here is the monastery's production of butter. Butter (mar) on the one hand serves for nutritive
purposes, and on the other hand is used extensively in the liturgy (in particular for lamps, mar me, chos me). During the so-called ‘butter-harvest’ (she sdud pa) an agent of the spyi pa makes the rounds of the monastery property to collect the butter and to determine the number of animals born in the course of the year. On this occasion it is the normal practice to give the spyi pa’s agent five measures (khal) of butter for every mdzo or yak. There are two procedures used for the sheep and goats. In one case the births and deaths that have taken place in the herd are counted, and the living animals evaluated at three measures (khal), the dead at one measure. Verification of the number of animals which have died is made on the basis of their horns and skins, which the herdsmen have to show to the spyi pa’s agents. The other system of counting does not include the new-born animals in the reckoning and is therefore called skye med, ‘without the born’. If the animals have died, the agreed quantity of butter still has to be delivered; if, however, the herd has increased the producer only needs to keep to the amount agreed, and he can deliver a smaller quantity of butter than that corresponding to his actual production.

Another source of revenue for the monastery is trade (tshong), primarily the buying and selling of goods from China and India, apart from barter transactions with the herdsmen (’brog pa). These barter exchanges are called ‘buy in summer, sell in winter (or spring)’. Because of the herdsmen’s pressing need in summer for barley, wheat and other products, the spyi pa advance all their needs to them at this period according to their agreement. When the ’brog pa descend from their hills in the autumn or winter to trade in the markets, they first of all have to reimburse the spyi pa, in butter, wool, skins and so on, the value of the provisions advanced in summer. The result of this system was that the warehouses of the spyi pa (spyi khang) in the bigger cities, especially in Lhasa, were better supplied than other shops.

Loans to private individuals also represent a not inconsiderable source of revenue for the monks. These loans mostly work according to the rule of thumb ‘out of four make five’, in other words the interest consists of a quarter of the loan.

Not to be forgotten, finally, are the special revenues: endowments and pious gifts of believers made on the most varied occasions, as well as the gifts which the government makes, particularly to the monasteries of the Yellow Sect (the dGe lugs pa), for example at each new issue of coinage (dngul lo).

In many regions of Tibet those monks who come from the class of small landed proprietors have a dwelling belonging to their family within the monastery. In such areas one member of the family always takes up the monastic career. Such a monk can look after his own upkeep, since his family has a piece of land always set aside for this
purpose, which guarantees his economic independence. In theory, however, all the private property of the monks belongs to the monastery. When the monk dies he is not able to appoint members of his family as heirs, though this does not mean that his relations cannot be provided during his life to a greater or lesser degree with an allowance from his property. In accordance with his last wishes, his property can be inherited by his favourite disciple (sras, spiritual son), whom he has usually chosen when the disciple was still young, in the first place to serve as his attendant. In any case the question of property is met by a peculiar piece of casuistry: private property is tolerated because it enables the monk to share in the expenses of the monastic community for his upkeep, clothes and so on, and in addition his personal means allow him to take over on his own account the hospitality provided by the monastery on occasion, at least as far as his own visitors are concerned. The monastery has no right to claim back from a monk a loan that he has made to another person, nor can it reclaim gifts to his family or to those who look after him when he is ill. Nor has the monastery any control over objects belonging to the monk which he has placed in someone else’s house.

Each monastery forms a self-existent economic entity (dgon gzhung). All the property which it has come to possess by inheritance or any other means belongs fully and entirely to the monastic community living in it, as do donations made for the benefit of the entire community with the exception of special gifts to individual monks on the occasion of special ritual presentation (sku 'gyed). The great monasteries have attached to them small daughter-monasteries (dgon lag) of the same sect, which almost always have control over their own property, which supports their own existence. Their inmates are bound to spend a certain period of training in the mother monastery.

It can be seen that monastic life in Tibet deviates more than a little from that of the great monastic communities which once existed in India. While we are poorly informed about their organization at the time of Buddhism’s adoption in Tibet, the monastic organization nevertheless, thanks to its central role in the country’s life, had to take up new tasks and functions during its progressive development to its eventual gigantic proportions. This process had already begun in the time of Khrisrong lde brtsan, when the first monastic communities, founded at that time, possessed not only special rights and freedom from taxation, but also landed property and serfs for the upkeep of the monks and as a material foundation for the ritual life they cultivated. This already gave the monastery a position independent of the lay authorities, an occasion, as we have already discussed in another section of our account (cf.p.12), for violent differences between the aristocracy and the church authorities. During the renewal of
Buddhism during its second diffusion in Tibet, and through the
growth of the great monasteries (Sa skya, 'Bri gung, Tshal, mTshur phu
and so on) the pre-eminence of the church authorities was ever more
clearly displayed. This led to the consolidation of monastic feudalism
through a kind of symbiosis between a religious 'chief' and his lay
patron, who was responsible for the protection of the monastery and
became its 'secular arm'. A division of labour developed between the
purely religious and spiritual functions of the abbot or incarnate (sprul
sku) on the one hand and the duties of the administration on the other.

The union of political and economic power achieved in the monas-
teries inevitably led to the public authorities taking on a theocratic
character. The Yellow Sect (dGe lugs pa), from the time of the Fifth
Dalai Lama onwards, only brought to its conclusion a process whose
foundations had already been laid further back. This evolution was
the work of numerous factors, including not only the great economic
power of the monasteries, through which they brought under their
control in many ways the most important sources of revenue in the
country, but also their undeniable aptitude for satisfying appropriately
the religious desires of the Tibetan people. The monastery rapidly
became the central point of the entire life of the part of the country
concerned, providing the region's economy with an outlet. Above all,
however, the monastic community with its church liturgy assured
spiritual assistance to the laity. The monks, through knowing how to
present the beneficial results of gifts given to the community in the
right light with respect to the donor's whole future salvation, succeeded
not only in increasing the monastic revenue but also in infusing into
the multitude a feeling of confidence concerning the fate of each
individual. In each situation of life, in birth, illness and death, and at
harvest time, the monk was present, and always and everywhere he
made the most of the basically magical outlook native to the Tibetans.
Every act and achievement of the believers, in short, was under
supervision of the monks, and they sought their salvation only through
the monks and their ritual. Besides, Lamaism took under its pro-
tection those festivals and local rites which since time immemorial
had served to banish or render favourable the spirits and demons of
the depths, although it made a point of clothing the old myths and
rites in Buddhist dress. In this, Lamaism took account of the Tibetan's
characteristic inclination towards the spectacular; thus the monks
promoted the growth of a kind of folk theatre which was certainly
founded upon Indian models diffused by Buddhism, but progressively
took on an individual character accessible even to the multitude.
While these spectacles, through their visible character, awoke religious
feelings in the spectator, at the same time they reinforced the masses'
confident faith in the Buddhist doctrine of salvation and in its priests.
The sacred dances associated with these spectacles contained a guarantee of the victory of good over evil, of the coming of an age of general prosperity, of the banishing of demonic powers. Obviously this development still contained seeds that could have dangerous consequences. The individual monasteries, as strictly organized and economically strong structures, were as little inclined as the lay aristocracy had been to renounce their self-government and independence. This promoted the continual tendency to splitting up which gradually smouldered under the unitary veneer of official faith, all the more so as the majority of the monks were scarcely able to master studies only accessible to a limited élite, and thus provided an easily swayed monastic proletariat always ready to take action on suitable occasions.

We will pass over here well-known occurrences such as the active interference of the great monasteries in the political intrigues at the time of the Sixth and Eighth Dalai Lamas, and recall only certain later events after the death of the Thirteenth Dalai Lama in 1933. The great monastery of Se ra intervened forcibly at that time with its monk-soldiers in the troubles which lasted in Lhasa throughout the regency of the Taktra Rimpoche. The monasteries thus formed, up to the time of Tibet’s absorption into the realm of Chinese domination, an obstacle to the striving for unity attempted by each central government. The Thirteenth Dalai Lama attempted to restrict the power of the monasteries in various ways, but he was hindered in these efforts through the circumstance that he himself was only an exponent of the monastic life, to which he remained bound for better or for worse. On the other hand the great power of the monasteries was a constant source of discontent among the lay aristocracy, who saw themselves hampered at every step in their efforts and claims at domination by the monastic communities, and were never able to summon up the power to shake off this yoke.
SIX

THE FOLK RELIGION

1 General characteristics

In the preceding chapters it was emphasized that the development of Lamaism was significantly influenced by the nature of religious life in Tibet before the spread of Buddhism. This religious life was made up of, on the one hand, doctrines and cults introduced from India and other countries (discussed in the next chapter), and, on the other hand, a true 'folk religion'. The beliefs, myths and customs of this folk religion are widely known and followed among the ordinary people ('jig rten pa). They govern the daily life of the Tibetan, and determine his behaviour with respect to the supernatural powers which surround him.

This 'folk religion' has flourished alongside the teachings and liturgy which are the special province of the monks and which are passed on in the various religious schools; everywhere among the Tibetans one can perceive in the beliefs of the people the survival of the multifarious and all-encompassing pre-Buddhist beliefs of the land of snow. Besides, the observation that every new religion seeks to incorporate within itself the totality of beliefs which it finds already in existence is as true here as elsewhere. In Tibet the situation was particularly favourable for the admission of indigenous religious elements, because there were remarkable analogies between the local traditions and the world of Tantrism, and both were governed by a similar psychological atmosphere. Already in India Mahayana and Vajrayana Buddhism had willingly accepted the heritage of folk religion. It is enough in this connection to recall scriptures such as the Mahamayuri and other tendencies common in many places, e.g. in Uddiyana (Swat), or in Bengal, where an important part of the Tantric scriptures was written down. One can also think of certain doctrinal formulation such as the inclusion of folk deities ('jig rten pa) in Tantric 'families' and so on. This theme became once again in Tibet the object of heated debates, because the problem of the compatibility of the indigenous numina and dii minores with the deities of
Buddhist theology necessarily intruded upon the realms of theological debate. In the course of time it was decided to consider as 'gods of the everyday world' (jig rten pa) those governed in only a vague and fitful way by the thought of 'Enlightenment'. These included the local gods of mountains and rocks, 'dre, srin, btsan and so on. These were now to be explained as 'protectors' and 'defenders' of the Buddhist Law, since they had obeyed the command of great teachers such as Padmasambhava and let themselves be converted by them. They possess supernatural power, they are capable of working miracles, but not without restriction, nor exclusively in the service of salvation; if they are offended in some manner or are discontented, their violent nature wins the upper hand. Many of these jig rten pa gods are, however, basically benevolent in disposition and ready to fight against evil powers. It was in this way, for example, that gNyan chen thang lha, one of the most widespread and popular of the divine figures of the pre-Buddhist period, became a Bodhisattva, and it was similarly that the planet Rahu became, according to some authorities, a Bodhisattva of the tenth 'earth'. The field of action of these gods is confined to the various basic magical operations of pacifying, bringing good fortune, increasing the possibilities of good karma, and destroying evil powers; to participate in bringing about the highest goal, that of salvation, is not allowed to them. This task is reserved to the supramundane gods (jig rten las 'das pa). The Buddha himself expressly recommended that one should not have too much to do with the worldly deities. These lower gods are given auxiliary functions of a very subordinate kind. In connection with the mandala for example they act as guardians of the 'doors', and so stand at the edge of the specifically initiatory sphere. According to certain doctrinal writings these deities are no more than emanations of the god (gtso bo) to whom the mandala is dedicated, manifestations which he has freely taken on for the defence of believers. This question became in the course of time the subject of endless discussions, in these debates it was also suggested that many 'mundane' gods had the power to become 'supramundane' through spiritual purification, while others must remain irredeemably evil.

Theologians speculated upon why such evil numina should exist; they were not the result of some kind of 'black' creation opposed to the 'white' or good but arose exclusively from the karma of the divine beings themselves. Because of their bad actions they became 'dre (No. 52, cf. No. 74, p.1), their mind is 'contaminated' (sems la gdon sems), in addition some of them have not kept the vow which they made to protect and defend Buddhism (dam tshig nyams pa, No. 74, p.2). Such examples make it clear that Lamaism in its folk aspect is a complex product of elements of very varied origin, age and content, containing both prehistoric traditions and more recent influences. It is in this
way that the religious life of the Tibetan has acquired its extraordinary richness of forms.

To come to a just evaluation of the specific nature of Tibetan folk religion one needs to apply the concept 'folk religion' in a perhaps rather wide sense. The Buddhism understood and practised by the educated monk must of course have certain basic traits resulting from his monastic life and his function within the social structure. By contrast the Buddhism of the layman appears in forms which are substantially different, freer and above all simpler. Whether the light of the Law shines more or less brightly in the spirit of the layman, he is still, through the simple fact of existing outside monastic life, released from over-strict rules. In general it can be asserted that the religious practice of the layman is still strongly under the influence of the pre-Buddhist and folk heritage. He is familiar from his childhood with the epic deeds and marvellous happenings with which the literature and traditions deriving from this heritage are filled. The particular kind of religious feeling which gives life to them regulates all the relationships between the Tibetan people and the immense, uncertain world of the demonic and the divine. The numina who reside there assist him in his difficulties, they stand by his side in his incessant struggle to defend himself against obstacles and dangers, open and secret adversaries, who everywhere threaten his existence, his wellbeing, his property. Often enough, however, it is precisely these numinous powers who are at the root of his misfortune.

The life of the Tibetan is, as it were, enclosed in a world of multifarious divine manifestation, in which all appearances are suffused with religious significance. The numinous powers accomplish their inexhaustible epiphany, so to say, in classifiable groups and sub-groups. The Tibetan is free to respond to the invisible, but nevertheless unquestionable, presence of the powers in his own individual way and according to his personal inspiration. Monastic Lamaism rarely opposed the hardy, cleverly contrived fusion which took place between indigenous religious customs and the magical and religious concepts and experiences introduced into Tibet through the Vajrayana scriptures. Naturally the layman holds to the old heritage more tenaciously than the monk and tries to preserve it more faithfully.

But if Lamaism allowed the numina of the indigenous religion to continue to exist, it went to some trouble to adapt their invocations and festivities to its own ritual world. Even the dGe lugs pa order did not blush at accepting Genghis Khan among their chos skjong, when they set about sending missions among the Mongols, although in general they gave in to this tendency less willingly than the other schools. Many indigenous deities found entry into the Lamaistic pantheon through the simple pronunciation of the word rdo rje,
THE FOLK RELIGION

diamond, (a word which, as indicated previously, enshrines a profound symbolism), or through the granting of new names to the deities which corresponded better to Tantric terminology. Thus the twelve terrible brian ma (or bstan ma) goddesses kept their original names as 'secret names' but their new liturgical names were transformed in accordance with the new requirements. Rong gi Jo mo kha rag, for example, the deity of the mountain between dBus and gTsang, became rDo rje dpal gyi yum (Nebesky-Wojkowitz, 1956, p.183). However, the majority of the numina kept their old names.

Faced with the exuberant profusion of the pre-Buddhist mythological world, of its pantheon and its numerous local manifestations, a need for orientation became operative. In part use was made of the old divisions, in part new ones were devised. So there came to exist different lists of the sa bdag in which one finds the most important genii loci along with others which vary considerably according to the places of origin of the list, long lists of dgra lha, dregs, bstan ma or gnyan, and so on. None of the local communities was ready to renounce its old protective gods. Even the srung ma and chos skyong of particular monasteries are quite often local numina converted through various miracles to Buddhism. Admitted into the new religion as guardians of the Law, they now punish each violation of the Law or transgression of the Buddhist vow. However, even in such retributive functions their old demonic violence breaks out anew; in their duty as defensores fidei they know no forgiveness, they can be carried away by their inborn brutality, and reveal themselves as implacable avengers of evils committed. The demonic powers of this type appear in groups: 'bar ba spun bdun, 'the seven 'bar ba brothers', phyugs lha spun bdun, 'gods of the flocks, the seven brothers', ma mo mched dgu, 'the nine ma mo sisters'. Many of them live in a copper castle or in a lake of blood, or drink blood (khrag thung). Yum shud dmar feeds on the flesh of men and horses; assimilated to Tshi'u dmar, chief of the btsan, he was originally it seems a god of death and judge of the dead. This central trait places him alongside the srog bdag, 'lords of life', guardians and protectors of life but also, like the dgra lha, destroyers (srog gcig) of their enemies; or alongside the 'sixteen executioner-brothers' who seize upon the spirit of life (dbugs len gyi shan pa bu cu drug). Many of these numina are of terror-inspiring appearance, such as the Cyclops (mig gcig) or the One-footed (rkang gcig) like The'u rang rkang gcig, or again the goddesses Gangs dkar sha med 'White Snow-goddess without flesh' and Sha med (fleshless) g.yu sgron ma. Certain special social groups worship their own deities, for example the 'brog pa (nomadic pastoralists) worship a group of nine 'brog mo ('brog mo spun dgu), and the farming population have the god of the fields (zhing lha). The numina of the rocks accompany the god of the mountain, who exceeds in importance almost all the
other gods; practically any rock which overlooks a path, village or bridge in a threatening manner serves as the seat of a brag lha, whose favour must be made sure of. The attire and the mounts of these gods indicate unmistakably the pastoral and warlike nature of the corresponding social strata; the numina of this type ride on antelopes, yaks, wild asses (rkyang), wild dogs; they wear armour, often a copper helmet or a felt hat (phying zheua), with bird feathers on the hat and a mirror in their hand. This latter of course belongs among the essential items of equipment of the shaman.

In accordance with the general tripartite cosmological division the realm of the numina is divided into three parts, that of the heavenly spaces, that of the depths of the earth and that of the intermediate world (tshang rigs: lha, snang rigs: btsan, 'og rigs: klu), although there are no strict lines of separation between them. In the god-lists of theological literature the attribution of particular numina to one or another of these three realms is quite often indeterminate and ambiguous (e.g., concerning the gnyan), but greater (che) and less important (phra ba, phra mo) deities are distinguished; thus the enumerations proceed from the highest to the more lowly (man chad) and close with the lowest of all.

Attempts at other types of division seem to indicate the influence of certain aspects of the Taoist pantheon. In these cases the gods are surrounded by a court; in the manner of kings they have consorts, ministers, generals and a whole following. So infinite in number are the transcendental forces surrounding the Tibetans, so indeterminate for the most part are their characteristics that it is difficult to subject them to a fixed and intrinsically justifiable system of ordering. So it happens that the pantheon is continuously extended and regenerated out of the powers of imagination (filled with fear or joyful with hope) of its believers, for whom any thing or any process can take on sacred character in a spontaneous hierophany.

The numina of this type are not only ambiguous and indeterminate; at times they do not even have a name. They are then no more than a vague indication of a sacred presence. If one asks why it is better for one to keep away from a certain place, or how one should behave oneself there, then one receives an almost universal answer: ‘Because there is a lha (god, spirit) there’. On the other hand some numina have kept their past glories to such a degree that they are today still invoked in the liturgy as protectors of Tibet, for example the twelve bstan ma, who are also called ‘patrons of Tibet’ (bod kham skyong). A phyi lha mo is similarly patron of Tibet (bod skyong). This tradition is so deeply rooted that these patron deities maintain their fixed place even in the liturgies of the dGe lugs pa (No. 70, p.2), and one offers bsangs, incense, to them so that they will take the locality, the dwelling places (gnas
gzhi), the monastery (gdan sa) or the hermitage (sgrub gnas) under their protection. sPu rgyal, the mythical king, is also patron (skyong byed) of Tibet (No. 70).

All these indigenous numina acquired, as it were, rights of citizenship in Buddhism after the introduction of the new religion. Although this process of naturalization took place gradually and without interruption, it was believed that its origin could be precisely established; it was due to the acts of Padmasambhava. Padmasambhava did not merely possess magical powers (mthu), he commanded also another miraculous gift (mthu stobs), true speech which could never lie, the genuine word of the Buddha (bden pa bslu ba med pa'i mthu).

The description in the Thang yig (No. 3, p.244) of the triumphal procession of Padmasambhava, set forth in epic language, reveals very clearly a long series of sacred localities of the pre-Buddhist epoch, and also the traces of certain powers who enjoyed high reverence there. It is concerned throughout with local and mountain gods, and often also with lineage and ancestral gods. Thus the eulogy reports about the region of Myang (Nyang), which has its capital at Gyantse, how Padmasambhava, before making his entry there, brought about the submission of no fewer than thirteen demons, each of whom is mentioned by name (No. 4, p.8b). Many of these mountains have preserved their sacred character up to the present day, and also their names which go back to the pre-Buddhist period: btsan, khyung, brong (wild, demonic yak as opposed to the white yak, g yag dkar po).

The numina whom Padmasambhava met and overthrew on his victorious journey through Tibet eventually accepted their new role as defensores fidei, while retaining their fear-inspiring character. The vanquished numina brought the conqueror their 'heart' (snying), that is to say mantra which represented their secret substance; they promised to behave in future as ardent defenders of the Law. By this solemn oath (dam bea) they were admitted into the Law. Their submission brought about the construction of a new world over the old, the establishment of a structure consecrated according to the scriptures and symbolizing the novus ordo. King Srong btsan sgam po could only propagate the law after the preliminary defixio of the Srin mo or female demon who lay on her back under the land of Tibet, which was carried out by erecting on her shoulders, feet, hands etc. as many temples. The construction of the monastery of bSam yas, which was consecrated in the presence of Padmasambhava, put the seal on the final submission of the gods he had vanquished and converted; bSam yas is the symbol of the Buddhist world planted magically and irrevocably in Tibet, superseding what had been there before it.3

The legend here referred to (Tucci, 1956, p.279) thus symbolizes a significant turning-point in the history of Tibet. It ascribes the fusion
between new and old which was accomplished at that time to the action of a single personality, Padmasambhava. As far as possible Tibetan Buddhism continued what was traditional in Tibet, although with those restrictions which it had to stand by if it was not to be untrue to its own basic ideas, for example, the prohibition of blood-sacrifices.

In his everyday religious life the layman should constantly repeat the formula of the triple Refuge (in the Buddha, in the Teaching, in the Community) and devoutly worship his guardian deities (yi dam), along with those of the most important deities of the Buddhist pantheon in which he has particular faith. For this reason there is in the house of every Tibetan who is not entirely without means a chapel (chos khang), on the altar of which one will find images of the gods made of wood, terracotta (rdza sku), bronze, as well as books and paintings (thang ka) representing the gods, cycles of gods or religious teachers who enjoy particular veneration in the family concerned. Great tolerance is the general rule in the choice of these representations; in the family context there is no trace of the strictness to which the monks are committed by their affiliation to particular doctrinal schools. The layman knows no partiality in his worship of monks and monasteries. In his eyes every monk possesses the sacred value which comes to him through his belonging to the Community, the third of the 'Three Jewels', and is therefore deserving of the greatest veneration, without distinction of doctrinal affiliation or sect.

In the domestic chapels one finds the most indispensable utensils for the simpler liturgical celebrations. Every morning the oldest people in the family give water (yon chab) to the images of the gods, while a lamp (mar me) is kept continually burning in front of them. It is the general practice to offer suffumigants, incense (bsangs) in the early morning, through burning sweet-smelling trees and shrubs, especially juniper (shug pa), ba lu, a type of rhododendron, birch (stag pa), and so on. One bsangs, to be considered later in more detail, is consecrated to the dgra lha and is confined to men, though in Lhasa women may perform it, since Lhasa enjoys the protection of a female deity, Mag gi dpal lha mo, who has a karmic relationship (ren 'brel) with women. Here it should be noticed that bsangs, while certainly a liturgical act (mchod) in its own right, is distinguished from cho ga, that is ritual whose practice is the responsibility of the monk, either alone or with other monks, in accordance with the prescriptions of the Buddhist liturgy. A ritual act can only be designated cho ga (Skt. vidhi) when it is performed by an initiated person, in other words by a monk consecrated in accordance with due form. Failing this, the act would not only not be able to bring about the desired end but would be bound to have harmful consequences.
As well as the recitation of the mantra dedicated to one's personal yi dam, the repetition of the mantra of the six sacred syllables (om ma ni pad me hum) is very common. It is connected with a special manifestation of Avalokitesvara, known as Sadaksara. In the morning, in addition to the formula of the triple refuge, passages are recited which are taken from certain very widely used prayer-books, for example from the Tshig bdun gsol ’debs (part of a text called Le’u bdun ma and attributed to Padmasambhava) or from the bSam pa lhun grub, where one can read the following:

In the time of iniquity, in the last age of the Kaliyuga
Every morning, every evening I will come for the salvation of Tibet.
I will come as a rider mounted on the crown of rays of the rising sun,
But on the tenth day in the form of the waxing moon.

It has already been explained (cf. p. 146) that the Tibetan calendar is rich in festivals, which take place for the most part within the grounds of the monastery; at many of them the lay population of the region is admitted as spectators. Besides these there are festive occasions to which the monks are naturally invited, in order to give the occasion greater splendour and to assure its effectiveness, but which are essentially the affair of the lay population, for example the ma ni dung sgrub, the festival of the recitation of the 'hundred-million six-syllable mantras' which is celebrated in the villages in winter time. Another example is the sixteen-day long period of fast known as the 'Eight pairs of white fasting' (bsnyen gnas dkar po cha brgyad), during which the fasters take white foods (milk, rice, cereals) in alternation. This custom is particularly widespread in the province of Khams. It includes prayers (gsol ’debs) to the deities, and also to the great teachers of Buddhism who even if they have reached the level of nirvana have retained their connection with the world out of compassion for mankind. To these latter is addressed the invocation (e.g. No. 59) to direct their compassionate gaze upon those praying to them: 'From the realm of the essential identity of samsara and nirvana, look down upon me' ('khor 'das dbyer med klong nas gzigs cig).

Other ritual acts, varying from place to place, which are not tied to precise points of time but are generally linked with the summer period are grouped under the general concept of lha gsol. These are basically festive gatherings, on mountain-tops close to villages, for the purpose of offering bsangs to the sa bdag, btsan, lha living on the mountains and imploring their protection for the well-being of the community. These are survivals of very ancient cults in reverence of the sacred mountain, the spirit of the region (bla ri) or the seat of the ancestral spirits.

It is difficult to find a precise concept corresponding to the folk religion of Tibet. The expression mi chos, customarily used in this
sense has, according to some authors, a considerably wider range of meanings; it covers an extremely rich cultural and spiritual domain which is only partially and indirectly connected with the religious sphere of experience (at least in the usual sense of the word religion). The entire existence of the Tibetan, his knowledge and desires, his feeling and thinking, is suffused and coloured by the experience of the sacred. His folk religion is not restricted to myth, to liturgy, or to a reverent attitude towards the numina we have discussed; it is also the living interplay of traditions of cosmogony and cosmology, genealogical legends of particular groups and families, rituals of magic and atonement, proverbial folk wisdom (such as is known in the Blon po bka’ thang). It is in short, an all-embracing heritage of the centuries, which has certainly been everywhere exposed to the influence of all the religious systems which have taken root in Tibet, but which at the same time has continued to safeguard from them its diversity, its own particular nature, and even the contradictions contained within it.  

A folk religion of this kind could scarcely present a unified picture; it is dependent upon geographical peculiarities, on ways of life of very diverse kinds, linked to the contrasting pastoral and agricultural economies, to the nomadic and sedentary ways of life (not without a distant echo of the primitive hunting society); it is closely connected with the traditions of particular clans and lineages, which have preserved for later times the heritage of earlier strata. For reasons of space we must restrict ourselves here to indicating certain specific aspects where the symbiosis between indigenous and foreign, between lively spontaneity and systematic rigour, which is so characteristic of Lamaism, emerges with particular clarity.

2 Man face to face with divine and demonic powers

The relationships between things and events on the one hand and man on the other are in the main of two kinds: bkra shis and bkra mi shis, that is favourable and auspicious, or hostile and harmful. Whether man is favoured by fortune, or is her victim, does not depend on chance. It is rather the fruit of his karma; but there are other factors too that aid the effectiveness of karma. Every fact, every event is the result of the intervention of a conscious will or of a conscious power, that sometimes takes material and visible forms of manifestation, but at other times remains indeterminate and impossible to grasp. Many of these powers are hostile under all circumstances, evil in nature, but most behave in an ambiguous and inconstant manner. The way they act depends on the way men conduct themselves towards them. They are touchy beings, inclined to anger, demanding respect and veneration.
In a certain sense, however, they are dependent upon man, they must be nourished and worshipped by him. If he neglects to do this, he can be sure of their revenge. In the liturgy of atonement and the bsangs they are invoked and induced to descend from their seats; they are imagined as being present. It is for them to accept (bzhes) the invitation, the offering, of whatever type it might be (’bul or gtad; ’bul for the gods, gtad for demons to be exorcized), or the presentation of chang (phud rgod⁸); the sacred action ends with the wish that the receiver of the offerings may be appeased, be satisfied, be happy.

There is a close connection between many of these beings and mankind. If, for example, a man through his negligence causes the illness of a klu,⁷ then the offending man will meet the same fate himself.

In general the supernatural powers can be divided into two groups; white (phyogs dkar) and good, and black and evil (phyogs nag, n gan), a division according to Indian tradition, resting upon the working of karma, though also corresponding to the division into two created worlds in certain theological doctrines of Iranian origin which were taken over by the Bon po. The consequence of the enmity of these malefic powers, whether it is innate or provoked, is always a gdon, a pernicious influence against which man must protect himself in advance. The relevant rituals and magical formulae have two principal objectives in view; in the first place prosperity, well-being, good fortune (bde legs) in the most material sense, as well as long life (tshe ring), health (nad med), riches (longs spyod) (No. 12), victory over enemies etc., and then the driving out (bzlog) and elimination of all which stands in the way of this bde legs, such as poverty, illness and early death. The activity of the exorcist (sngags pa) thus has an infinitely wide field open before it; in case of drought he can invoke rain, he can banish hail or conjure it to inflict vengeance, he can call a halt to epidemics among men and flocks. In this immense area of ritual techniques for the furtherance of good and defence from evil the traditional heritage of Tibet and the contributions of India and China can be clearly distinguished. In the field of astrology the contribution of China (nag rtsis, as contrasted with rgya rtsis, astrology of Indian origin) is particularly noteworthy, and in fact not so much in its learned expression as in its popular, magical and exorcistic form. India’s contribution primarily derives from Tantrism and its particular interest is in the magical rituals which have for their aim the pacifying (zhi) of hostile powers, furtherance (rgyas) of well-being, acquisition of power (dbang) or acts of a terrifying nature (drag). Thus there has come about an extremely complex syncretism, a symbiosis of the diverse elements which have found fertile soil in the particular psychic disposition of the Tibetan. The Tibetan lives in a permanent
state of anxious uneasiness; every physical or spiritual disturbance, each illness, every uncertain or threatening situation leads him to embark upon a feverish search for the cause of the event and the appropriate means to ward it off.

According to a book ascribed to Padmasambhava (No. 20, p.77) man is inevitably condemned to unhappiness and misfortune, because, often without being fully aware of it, he has committed various acts in this life or in previous existences which must necessarily have as a consequence for him corresponding reactions by particular demonic powers. Certain female divinities, however, can come to his aid, provided that each is invoked on those particular days on which her tutelary function is operative. He who is attacked knows, then, not only the nature and original cause of his illness or his misfortune, but also the appropriate means to relieve himself from misfortune. Illness does not merely have a physical origin. In it one has to distinguish the primary cause (rgyu), which consists of a disturbance of the equilibrium of the three ‘humours’, from the contributory cause (rkyen), which is to be sought for in an impurity (mi gtsang), a shadow, a defilement (grib). This impurity (mi gtsang) or shadow can be of various kinds; it can originate in a sinful action, but also from other causes, for example from eating various impure foods (mi gtsang pa’i zat). Thus food offered by a widow or a murderer brings about a dangerous condition (No. 75). Burnt foods (zas thab can), which offend the phug lha (cf. below, p.188), also cause defilement, as does the pouring on the hearth of liquids (cf. No. 56) or substances producing evil smells or smoke, which anger the god of the hearth (thab lha). Other causes are lighting fires on mountains (ri la me rgyab, No. 76, kha p.18), and staying in neighbourhoods where gnyan live (gnyan sa). Impurity also arises through associating with men who emanate a dangerous sacredness, as for example with smiths (mgar pa, No. 56, p.3b) and armourers (the ’das log treatises consign these to hell, No. 76, ga, p.6b, p.22b), though the prescription is not a universal one; the idea seems to have had more effect in western Tibet (including Ladakh) than in other regions. It is evidently a survival of prehistoric connections between the craft of the smith and the infernal powers, connections which in many communities give the smith great prestige, while in others, by contrast, because of the gradual progress of demythologizing, they merely cause the demonic shadow of commerce with dangerous powers to lie upon him. In the same way associating with bandhe and Bon po can cause impurity; they are accompanied and protected by particular numina (their srung ma) and so can unleash gdon (No. 22, p.6a).

Sacred impurity obstructs a favourable destiny and renders one receptive to all that is unfavourable. The gdon take advantage of such
Figure 15  Accessories for the mdo ritual
(a) mdo: a miniature three-storeyed building, inside which is the glud (cf. p. 177) of the person for whose benefit the ceremony is being performed. In front of it is the pho glud or mo glud, glud for a man or for a woman (cf. Figure 16), with the eight signs of good fortune and representations of terrestrial, aquatic and domestic animals, fruits and grains all around, and also nam mkha', that is threads wound around a cross (cf. Figure 18), twigs of sweet-smelling plants and lamps on the four sides. The figures are made of coloured tsamba.
(b) glud: modelled reproduction of the person concerned in the form of a gtor ma (of tsamba and butter); in front, representation of foods which are conceived
occasions. They form a very numerous class of demons who are admittedly lacking in precise features. As a general rule the powers who bring about illness are referred to as *gdon*. In the medical treatises they correspond to the Indian *graha* or *bhuta* (in the translation of the *Aṣṭaṅgaḥkuḍāya* VI, 3 and VI, 5 *gdon* is used in the first case for *graha*, in the second for *bhuta*); for this reason they are generally called ‘*gdon* of illness’. *gdon* must be distinguished from other unfavourable and malefic forces (*mi mithun*). *gdon* are powers in many ways like the planetary spirits (*gza*), with whom they are often brought into relationship. These bring about what appear to be psychic maladies and madness, rob man of the consciousness of his actions and take him fully into their possession. Thus King *gLang dar ma* was brought to apostasy and led to persecute Buddhism because a *gdon* had brought him under its power and robbed him of all sense of responsibility. Thus *gdon* is the condition which breaks out as the result of a sin or, more generally, a defilement. By performing the appropriate ritual actions, for example through an ablation (*khrus*), every stain left by bad actions is cleansed, and the *gdon* lose their power over the man so purified. Essentially they are no more than the embodiment of disturbances of psychic and bodily equilibrium, primarily caused by the influence either of the planets, of the *byung po* (= Skt. *bhuta*; the expression is ambiguous in Sanskrit and also in Tibetan, referring both to the elements and to the demons) in the world above, between heaven and earth, or of the *gnyan* in the underworld.

In describing the *gdon* it should also be mentioned that they appear in three groups, outer, inner and secret (*phyi, nang, gsang*). The outer *gdon* appear in material form as demons, planets etc.; the inner *gdon* are released as powers of destruction through the commission of evil, sin and defilement; the secret *gdon* arise from a faulty control of the vital breath of respiration (*rlung*) during the process of yoga.

To prevent the calamitous consequences (*gnod*) of acts which provoke the *gdon* of ‘king’ spirits (*rgyal po*, like *Pe har*), of *btsan*, of male and female *'dre*, of *sa bdag* (‘lords of the soil’) and so on virtuous actions

of as provisions for the journey, and also of other gifts, thought of as a payment of accounts for debts towards the powers who are causing the misfortunes threatening the person commissioning the ritual. In front, a lamp (cf.p.183). (c) *ling ga* (cf.p.185): triangular, with tongues of fire represented all around, in the centre an image of the supposed enemy (*dgra*) bound hand and foot with chains.

(d) *bshral chas*: utensils for disposing of the *ling ga*: a black-coloured standard, a *phur bu* or ritual dagger, a stone for crushing the *ling ga*, an iron triangle enclosing white stones (*rdog bshun*), a knife to cut the *ling ga* into pieces, two fly-whisks made of owl-leathers (*sgra g.yab*).
are the most useful defence. These actions include the reading aloud of sacred texts, chosen according to the particular case and with regard to the nature and occasion of the evil and the affliction; the restoration or redecorating of a mchod rten⁹ fallen into disrepair; the repainting of a lha khang (temple) or of sacred images (lha khang sku dkar gsol); the votive offering of jo dar,¹⁰ the incising of images (rdo lha) or of the om ma ni pad me hum formula on rocks; the setting free of animals intended for death (tshe thar, srog slu); recitation by oneself, or by others one has commissioned, of particularly efficacious books, above all the rDo rje gcod pa,¹¹ and so on. We are dealing here with the same pious actions which are recommended by those condemned to the torments of hell to persons whose fate it has been to descend to hell and to be able to return to earth (׳das log); these actions are also the most efficacious way to influence favourably during this life the inexorable ripening of karma (No. 76). The auspicious (bkra shis) elements will according to Buddhist teaching be strengthened through the accumulation of virtuous deeds. Out of good works flows dbang thang, a psychical and material strength and security resting upon the knowledge of past karma. This is not all; faced with the unfortunate (bkra mi shis) events which approach realization, man has available also an inexhaustible mine of formulae and rituals, rituals of driving out (bzlog) of adverse forces through powerful exorcistic actions (gto), and rituals of ransoming (bslu, glud). The bla, the soul, can for example be ransomed from danger (bla bslu), as in cases of unconsciousness; one can also ransom from death (׳chi bslu) at the very moment of death, and so prolong life. One can even fetch back the life-force (srog bslu) at the moment it leaves the body.

The mdos, yas, glud and gto, which are now to be discussed, are devices to extricate oneself from the threatening dangers of hostile powers. These powers can be of bodily and material (gzugs can) or immaterial and invisible (gzugs med) nature.

Since yas and glud are included within the concept of mdos and can be considered as variants of mdos, it is first necessary to outline the characteristics of mdos and gto. The first-named ritual gives protection, either for he who performs it or for him on whose behalf it is performed by another, against dangers, hindrances, injuries, illnesses, obstacles of any kind whose origin is attributed to the evil powers. In an application more closely connected with Buddhist doctrine, this ceremony can also be performed to overcome obstacles on the way to the achievement of the highest goal, Enlightenment. The sacred action consists of offering gifts which are particularly valued by the hostile powers, so that, contented (mnyars) and satiated (tshims), they will calm themselves (zhi ba) and abstain from further persecution. mdos is therefore a way to remove (bzlog thabs) the hostile powers
through a kind of expiatory offering, such as when a condemned man ransoms himself by paying a fine, or when an enemy threatening war is appeased by offering tribute payments.

In the mdo s ceremony the offerings are either real things like grain, barley, clothes, or representations made out of tsamba of animals, sheep, horses and so on.

The yas ceremony is less important, and the offerings are scantier too in this case. While the mdo s ritual is performed by a sngags pa, here the person giving the offerings frequently acts on his own behalf, throwing down the offerings at a crossroads at the edge of the inhabited area with great shouts and cries.

Behind every mdo s lies implicitly the concept of ransom (glud). The ritual accordingly requires an image of the person (ngar glud, ngar mi) on whose behalf the ransom is to be effected or who is to be protected (srung bya). In the case of the illness of an animal, its image will be made. If the image is of a man it is fitted out with clothes or shoes of rags; if it is an animal it will have hairs taken from the animal’s neck or tail. Sometimes various personal objects of the sick person are also represented. Essential requisites for the ritual are pieces of tsamba which have special symbolic value according to the particular case, for example a hollowed-out disc with butter placed in the middle, representing food for the demons (ting lo or til lo). The shape called chang bu is obtained by squeezing a piece of tsamba in the closed fist so that it takes on the form of a small rod, out of which the points caused by the hollow spaces between the several fingers project tiny pieces of tsamba (theb skyu) which are used to symbolize gifts for the gods. The glud thus obtained serves as a substitute for the sick person or for the sick or endangered animal, it is offered to the demonic being causing the evil in question as a ransom.

The distinction between glud and ngar mi consists in the fact that the first expression refers to the ritual concerned in its entirety, its arrangement and all its accessories, while ngar mi indicates the image representing the human being seeking to be ransomed. To the right and left of this figure are placed the chang bu; in its folded hands it holds the ting lo; in front of it is put a lamp.

Sometimes the glud is a living scapegoat, most often a beggar who for a small payment or in exchange for a new piece of clothing agrees to take upon himself the illness afflicting another person. The glud (scapegoat) even has his official place in the calendar of religious festivals of the church at the time of the New Year celebrations, of which he is one of the most remarkable features. At any rate it is a question here too only of a local version of a custom found all throughout Tibet.

The gto by contrast is a powerful exorcistic ritual (drag po). He who
Figure 16 Magical ransoms (glud) for a man and for a woman
(a) ransom for a man: (1) shing byang = wooden board; (2) pho ris stag gos can = representation of a man dressed in a tiger skin.
(b) ransom for a woman: (1) shing byang = wooden board; (2) mo ris gzig gos can = representation of a woman dressed in a leopard skin.
(c) arrow (in the magical ransom ceremony for a man): (1) mda’ stong kha = notch; (2) sgo bzhi = four pennons; (3) tshon sna lnga dkris = five-coloured ring; (4) mdel = arrow-point.
(d) board for keeping the arrow.
(e) spindle (in the magical ransom ceremony for a woman): (1) skud pa = thread; (2) phang yu = shaft; (3) snal ma = wool threads; (4) phang ’khor = ring; (5) phang khab = nail.
(f) board for keeping the spindle.
is to carry it out must be expert in the meditation of one of his guardian deities (yi dam) who is here invoked in his fierce and terrifying aspect. The offerings (gtor ma) consecrated in the gto are thrown in the direction where the powers causing the evil are believed to dwell. The gifts offered symbolize the flesh and bones of enemies, and the protective deities, srung ma, chos skyon and such, are to use them to bring about the destruction of the hostile powers. After the countless host of the srung ma has been set on the track of the enemies in this way, it is expected that they will fall upon the adversaries and overcome them. For this reason there are weapons among the accessories (yan lag) of the gto either made of tsamba again, or sometimes real, which in their separate receptacles indicate, together with the gto itself, the means of attack which the srung ma should use in their war against the hostile powers. The gto must always be triangular in form; it is made out of flour ground from black corn; the bloody entrails of animals are spread out around the gto; a hedge or fence (ra ba) of twigs of black, thorny shrubs (tsher shing nag po) represents an enclosure; at the

Figure 17  Ransom for misfortune striking the village or home
(a) wooden knife: (1) ral gri rtse gayis = two-pointed sword; (2) nyi ma = sun; (3) zla ba = moon; (4) skar ma = stars; (5) sprin = cloud; (6) ri bo = mountain; (7) mlo = lake; (8) sba mgo = frog’s head.
(b) same in a simpler form.
corners of the enclosure are pieces of black wood (rtsang), while a human skull (thod pa) reigns over the whole assemblage (cf. Tucci, 1966, p.148, Figure 7).

Lan chags is the bringing to actualization and overcoming of a misfortune arising from karma acquired in the past. Lan chags is a kind of accumulated debt (bu lon), so that both expressions are frequently used side by side in the liturgy. Debts can be conceived of numerically; as many little balls or rods of tsamba dough illustrate the corresponding numerical quantity, for example a hundred, or one can set them out according to the years of life of the man for whose benefit the ritual action is being performed, or one can follow various other sorts of criteria. At the end of the ceremony the formula lan chags song, bu lon sbyang is repeated: ‘the burden of debt is gone forth, the debts are settled’.

As the above description indicates, he who is celebrating the ritual acts, along with his employer, moves on two different levels; the level of ordinary reality, at which things and events are what they seem, and a magical and hallucinatory level, dominated by a special psychological state, such that representations enter in the place of things and lay claim to the same unimpeachable reality as the things themselves.

On the basis of a psychic certainty in which all partake and which is subject to doubt on no one’s part, through the state of receptivity and emotion so produced, which is further strengthened by the formulae recited and the meditation associated with them, a temporary reversal of the two levels is achieved—experienced by each of those taking part with greater or lesser intensity. The hostile numina display themselves in the forms handed down by the iconography. The ritual, and the hopeful expectancy of those taking part, conjures up a multifarious world. In it the offerings to the numina, modelled with tsamba and butter into strange symbolic shapes, also take part, as also do the other immeasurable, inconceivable powers (‘exceeding all that can be thought of’), runs the formula concerning them), which cannot be made directly visible, but which are present to the interior vision; their grace overflows the universe, and can be summoned to the struggle against the hostile powers of evil. The operations performed in this ritual have for those who take part the same reality as ordinary experience. The psychic forces brought into the fight through the combined action of the factors mentioned are in no sense incompatible with everyday life, rather they lead it without break into another dimension, for they represent always the hidden, but not for that reason any less powerful or effective thread in the web of existence.

If we now return to the mdos, we observe first that their basic scheme is always that of a cross. The arms of the cross are joined
together by threads of different colours forming a diamond-shaped pattern (nam mkha').

Figure 18  Nam mkha'
(a) in an elaborate version; (b) in a simpler form.
(1) bya sбу or ba'i tshan = bird feathers or wool threads;
(2) dar or shog bu'i dpyangs = cloth or paper fringes;
(3) nam mkha'i lag pa gnyis = the two ‘hands’ of the nam mkha';
(4) dar gyi dpyangs = cloth fringes;
(5) yungs kar gyi sgang bu = box with white mustard-seeds.

In the mdo rituals the world is so to say reconstructed in a magical manner in accordance with the traditional schemes; on a platform reigns Mount Meru (ri ral), the seven-staged (bang rim) axis of the world; above it is placed the vessel (bum pa) containing the ritual substances (rdzabs); around it are disposed the four main continents (gling bzhi) and the eight subsidiary continents.

Such a magical recreation of the world is necessary because he who performs the ritual must return to the beginning of creation or to express the concept differently, he must put himself into a special situation which is brought about through a radical abolition of time. It is therefore not surprising that a ritual of this kind is quite frequently linked with recitals of the creation of the universe (lo rgyus), which sometimes give the impression of alien elements in the Buddhist context. One also finds elements of this kind in the writings of those authors who have taken it upon themselves to cloak pre-Buddhist or foreign cults, rituals and mythic themes with a mantle of relative
ORTHODOXY, as for example with Pad ma dkar po, where at any rate such elements occur side by side with the classical cosmogonic teachings of the Abhidharma (No. 66).

It goes without saying that the strict doctrinal position would maintain, when justifying the mdo s rituals, that they are to be seen as one of the countless modes of experience of the cosmic illusion, and that the powers (lha, 'dre etc) addressed in them represent only deceptive products of our own ignorance (No. 66). At the same time this does not detract from their practical usefulness in a world where the existence of a thing is the same thing as its imagined existence.

The powers called upon in the mdo s are ready to intervene in their quality of great helpers (snyer chen) of the Doctrine (No. 66, p.9a), as subjects ('bangs) of the 'Three Jewels' (loc.cit.).

The evil powers to be warded off either accept the offerings and allow themselves to be appeased, in which case they tacitly reaffirm their promise of obedience to the Law, or else they disdain the gifts and prefer to persevere in evil. In the first case they are invited to continue in their obedience to the Law; this is made easier for them by showing them the way which they should follow (lam bstan) (No. 63, p.5a). So that they will not lose their way in the darkness of night, a lamp, made, as always, from tsamba, is specifically placed in front of the curative image (ngar glud). The retreating powers are warned not to look back (phyi mig ma lta zhi). If they refuse the offerings more drastic methods are required: 'If you break your promise, the king who holds the diamond in his fist (assimilated to the exorcist in the ritual) will flare into anger and you will be reduced to ashes' (No. 66, p.13).

Sometimes (No. 21) the exorcistic action is accompanied by a dialogue between the exorcist and the malignant power. After becoming one with the deity ruling over the ritual (without such an identification his actions would be useless), the exorcist is in a state of trance in which he enters into combat or discussion with the power inflicting harm upon his protégés. In this state of mind he reports on all the vicissitudes of the imagined confrontation. (This does not exclude the possibility of ceremonies where the conflict is between two people, the exorcist and the man incarnating the demon.) The image of the person afflicted by illness or misfortune, the accompanying shapes of tsamba dough (chang bu, theb skyu, etc.), the little tsamba figures of men and animals all round the main figure—these are all transformed in a magical fashion into real things and beings able to satisfy the desire of the demonic power, even though this power may only acquiesce after a long struggle. If the confrontation takes place without success, then recourse is had to threats and finally to means of magical compulsion.

183
Figure 19  rGyang bu (lus kyi glud)
(a) in an elaborate version; (b) in a simpler form.
(1) shing gang rung = wood of whatever kind;
(2) bya spu = bird feathers;
(3) bal tshon sna tshogs = wool threads;
THE FOLK RELIGION

In certain cases exorcism (bzlog) aims at the effective annihilation of the evil powers or even of persons believed to have hostile intentions. In the latter circumstance the magical action brings about their death or fatal illness. The enemy to be overcome is represented by a tsamba figurine called ling ga. It is, however, quite distinct from the ling ga used in the glad-ritual, which is also made out of tsamba, though in that case mixed with blood. On a piece of paper the syllable nri (Skt. nr, man) and the name of the hostile person are written and all around them the formula maraya (‘kill’) and the invocations to particular classes of demons with the injunction to them to trample on the enemy and annihilate him (non). After the sngags pa has transformed himself, along with all the assembled ingredients necessary for the ceremony, into a divine state of being, he must bring together on the twenty-ninth day of the month, at the time of the waxing moon, nine armoured warriors, nine widows, nine left yak-horns, nine little heaps of earth, nine sharp stones, nine peppercorns, nine dry branches of alpine willow (glang ma), and nine plants of a kind called tsha rgog ram pa. If he cannot manage to assemble all these accessories, the exorcist takes nine skulls of dogs or wolves or the left eye of a horse and divides everything between the eight parts of the world. In the next section of the ritual the life of the ling ga is evoked (ling ga bskyed); then comes the moment which will bring about the annihilation of the enemy and his dismemberment. At this point in the action the magician proclaims his identity with the fourteen terrible deities, headed by Heruka, under whose patronage the ritual process stands, then he recalls previous subjugations of enemies brought about through the intervention of these deities, and finally he fetters the adversaries threatening from the four celestial directions and banishes them into the left yak-horn and so on. In the further progress of the magical ritual the victories of famous figures of antiquity over the hostile powers are recalled. The deeds are laid down as a precedent; just as they succeeded, according to the old traditions, in discovering and destroying the hiding-place, receptacle or bearer of the spirit of those demons in, for example, a stone or a tree, so the actions of the present-day magician will be crowned with success. As the masters of old performed these deeds at the command of the ancient kings, so the magician of today proclaims himself, in the service of his employers, as ‘the king of the terrible deities’, ‘the executioner of foes and demons’ (dgra and

(4) yungs kar kyi sgang bu = box with white mustard-seeds;
(5) dar sna’i dkris = cloths of various colours.
(The rgyang bu are small pieces of wood forming part of the mdos, cf. Tucci, 1966, p.118n.–G.B.S.)

185
THE FOLK RELIGION

take). He places all the dreaded enemies in fetters and imprisons them in the left yak-horn, or in the other objects named above. Then he secures the horn under a hearth-stone (though not one from his own hearth), at a crossroads or under a mchod rten. He then prepares an arrow made of metal fallen from the sky (gnam lcags drag po = mtho rde'u) and soaked in poisoned or impure blood, while the upper part of the bow is made of human ribs, the lower from human skin (zung chen lchags). As he fires the arrow, the magician cries out to the winds that the enemy, wherever in space he might be, will meet annihilation. When he deposits the horn in which the enemy's spirit is imprisoned at a crossroads, he commands the adversary to stay in this prison and not to cause any injury for as long as he is unwilling to take the binding vow of Enlightenment; a manifest concession to the world of Buddhist concepts in the course of a magical ceremony which has little or nothing in common with Buddhism.

Although the concept of the ling ga in the procedure we have just described differs from that in the glud, and although the intended goals also differ in nature (here killing, there ransom) this kind of ling ga is sometimes used in the glud, for example in a special ritual (called glo nag dgra zer) where the representation can even be made life-size. In this case the ling ga is stuck in the mouth of the glud. This is meant to show that the exorcistic ritual is not merely intended to overcome the harmful influences of the adversary through the ransom, but that it is desired in addition to deal with the enemy decisively, to kill him.

How did it come about that Buddhism, at least in its Lamaistic form, could tolerate the killing of an opponent, even if only for purposes of defence? Here we meet a very subtle distinction; the assistance of the 'Protectors of the Law' is certainly invoked for the total annihilation of the demons, such that their bodies leave no more than dust behind, but this request is accompanied by the prayer that their conscious principle may be liberated in chos dbyings, in the realm of absolute potentiality (No. 21, p.4; mam shes chos dbyings su sgrol). Besides, even Indian Buddhism permits the killing of an enemy in certain special circumstances, for example on the pretext that it will bring him spiritual gain in that he will be prevented from loading his conscience with further heavy sins.14 Examples are not lacking to show that even famous masters of the Doctrine did not disdain to have recourse to incantations with such an intention, even in war or out of personal motives. Urgyan pa for example, during a pilgrimage in Swat when he met some brigands, consigned those of them who threatened his life from life to death through the use of particularly effective magical formulae (Tucci, 1967, p.183).

It is not always superhuman powers who threaten and persecute man. There are also human creatures, especially of the feminine sex,
who can change themselves into demonic beings. They then become
demons in human form and can cause the same misfortune as real
demons. Such beings are called 'living demons' (gsdon 'dre).

Meeting such women in the evening can trigger off fever and illness. While their body lies lifeless as in sleep their spirit (bla) becomes at
night a demon ('dre) which wanders around restlessly bringing
misfortune and lingering illness to those with whom they come into
contact. Those who see these demonic women from close up can
certainly ascertain their identity.

A dead man too can change into a demon (which is called shi 'dre), if
at the moment of death he makes a vow of vengeance (sman lam)
against someone, or if he dies through violence. The principle of
consciousness of the murdered man is then ruled and driven on by the
desire to kill his murderer; he desires to break off his vital spirit (stog).

3 Personal protection and protection of the house

The previous pages have been entirely concerned with apotropaic
actions performed in specific cases, in accordance with the particular
circumstances. However, the entire spiritual life of the Tibetan is
defined by a permanent attitude of defence, by a constant effort to
appease and propitiate the powers whom he fears. These powers have
their residence everywhere: thus on his right shoulder there is the dgra
lha ('enemy god', a heritage of the primeval traditions of a warrior and
hunter society!), in the right armpit the pho lha, in the left armpit the
mo lha, in the heart the zhang lha. The last three Tibetan expressions
literally signify male god, female god and god of the mother's brother.
These beings incorporate the continuity of the family, the paternal
and maternal ancestors who watch unceasingly over the continuing
existence of their lineage. Further to be mentioned in this connection
are the thab lha, the god of the hearth, the phug lha or khyim lha, the deity
of the home who dwells in the inner pillar of the house, and finally the
god of the store-room, bang mzdod lha. These last-named lha and others
of similar kind are not only linked to man as such, but more particularly
to his dwelling-place, to that place where the Tibetan truly feels
protected and secure, provided that he has not injured or offended the
invisible powers living there alongside him. For this reason the tent
and the house are not places like all other places; not only is the
indissoluble community of life between present and past perceptible
here, but besides this, the home is capable of being interpreted
cosmologically as a projection of the universe into earthly existence.
The house renews and represents the original act of creation; the
symbolism which is thereby enshrined within it is evoked in all its
details in the wedding songs (Tucci, 1966, p.105). To the parts of the door (lintel, sill, four surrounding beams) correspond specific colours (turquoise, gold, rock-crystal, the colour of a conch shell) and these colours recall the four world-eggs out of which came the entire creation (Tucci, 1949, p.722), of the four doors of heaven, likewise watched by animals of various colours (shell-coloured, gold, turquoise, iron).

The correspondence is extended to, for example, the staircase linking the ground-floor with the floor above. It has thirteen steps, as many as the layers or successive stages of heaven. The entry of the bride into her new home and her ascent into the upper storey is symbolically equated in tradition and in songs with the ascent to heaven; the bridegroom’s father and mother represent the heavenly powers.

In a similar manner in the tent the opening at the apex which lets out the smoke corresponds to the highest gate at the summit of the world, which opens into the unbounded space where sun and moon describe their eternal courses.

In the house the defence system is, so to say, condensed into two parts of the building. One of them is the pho lha mkhar, ‘castle of the pho lha’ (also called ggas mkhar), which is either an extension in the middle of the ridge of the house roof or else four extensions at the four corners of the house. The great age of this custom is already apparent from the name indicating the residence of the pho lha, especially in Khams; ggas mkhar, an expression where the old word ggas used for the holy buildings of Bon (ggas khang) reoccurs.

The ggas mkhar (also called spo se or pho lha mkhar), the seat of the pho lha, is provided with a cavity which serves to receive the offerings of bsangs (bsangs khang).

In many houses, but especially in monasteries, the pho lha mkhar shares its protective function with a large cloth cylinder fixed on a wooden support, girded about with hairs from yak-tails and overlooked by a death’s head and also a trident (thug). The whole assemblage is exclusively intended for apotropaic purposes.

A similar function to that described for the protection of the outside of the house is possessed as guardian of the interior of the house by the phug lha (the name itself signifies ‘interior god’) or ‘maternal god’ (molha), also called simply ‘house god’ (khyim lha). His seat is customarily found either in a pillar, or in a branch of wood in the most hidden corner of the kitchen. While the pho lha is considered to be the god especially of the men, the phug lha is the god of the women; he is entrusted with their protection and has his place in precisely that part of the house where the women’s life mostly takes place. Like all lha, the phug lha is ambivalent in his behaviour. He can easily be offended; he does not like it when exorcists (snags pa) or Bon po come too close to
him, because they are accompanied by their protective deities (srung ma); the phug lha will not tolerate the interference of these rivals and adversaries. He is not even too happy to see women belonging to other families come into his proximity, because this could lead to a conflict with the phug lha of another family group. The presence of a stranger is also not always welcome to him. If the bride becomes restless or ill in her new home, it is presumed that the phug lha has no particular liking for her; he must then be made favourable through appropriate ceremonies. The phug lha also controls the property of the family, especially the live-stock. If the flocks are transferred to a new owner but do not appear to feel at ease in his house then it is necessary to appease the phug lha. He is the symbol of the house and of the property. When moving into or building a new dwelling-place and abandoning an old one the phug lha must, so to say, take part in the removal. A branch of the auspicious tree attached to the central pillar, generally of juniper, will then be taken along with great care and without allowing it to be damaged; it is the 'inner receptacle' (nang rten) in which the phug lha has its seat. Thus it appears that the pho lha and phug lha share in the protection of the house and of the family who lives there; the pho lha is concerned with their external protection, still having his combative nature as one of the dgra lha, the phug lha by contrast looks after the inside of the house and the property of the family.

As already mentioned, the thab lha is the god of the hearth. The hearth is the central point of the house or tent and so of the entire life of the family; it has a sacred character not only as the place where food is prepared but also as the spot where the fire of the family burns. The hearth tolerates no impurity; any defilement arouses its anger and draws one of the family members in sympathy into a state of weakness and vulnerability to evil. An impurity of this sort can however be brought about by chance, inadvertently (cf. above, p.173), as for example when the liquid contents of a cooking vessel flow over spreading around a bad smell or vapour. In order to secure oneself in advance against dangers of this kind and to give the thab lha no occasion for anger, one has recourse to the usual bsangs. The sacred character of the house, its homologizing, as reproduction or projection, with the universe, man's desire to enclose himself within the invulnerable security offered by the house,¹⁵ and almost as it were to become a god within it—all this is reflected also in the structure of religious communities; these are conceived of after the manner of a house, and the masters of this house are described, according to their greater or lesser importance, as pillar (ka ba), beam (lcam) and so on, all this with the aim of reinforcing anew the scheme or archetype of an order beyond time ruling within such an institution.
The Tibetan experiences the house as a microcosm, as a secure enclosure, in contrast to the space outside, which is the playground and hiding-place of countless, omnipresent powers continually threatening to ambush him. So it is evident why nothing which has been in contact with these powers, which is consecrated or forfeit to them, may be kept in the interior of the house. Such objects must always be removed, be carried out into open country, particularly to crossroads—favourite places of the numina.

4 The soul

In a large part of popular magical ritual the word bla is used in the sense of ‘soul’. If someone becomes unconscious it is said that his bla has left his body; if someone is dying this means the bla has become separated from the body, it is wandering around somewhere, it has been taken away. In each of these cases specific rituals are performed to call the bla back into the body (for example bla khug, bla bstu, ‘chi bslu, ransom of the bla, ransom of death; Lessing, 1951). Other rituals have the object of prolonging one’s own life (srog bslu) or saving the life of another, as for example with the so-called golden bridge (gsers dam) built of stones inscribed with the formula om ma ni pad me hum.

The ritual which has the ransom of the soul (bla bslu) as its purpose is too extensive for it to be described here in detail. It must suffice to indicate that care is taken to trace this custom too back to a traditional precedent, to its revelation by a god or its first performance by a particularly famous wonder-worker of the past such as Padmasambhava. Through this precedent the nature and mode of this ritual performance was established once and for all, unalterably (as in No. 51 in the case of the illness of rgyal bu Mu khyud ’dzin). The withdrawal of the bla from the body and the consequent danger can be the work of a lha (god) or a ’dre (demon). Therefore it is necessary to establish first of all which of the two is responsible for the seduction of the bla in the case at hand, because, according to which it is, quite different kinds of rituals are employed. This basic preliminary decision is made with the aid of dice (shwa = sho), and in doing so the white die is offered (’bul) to the lha, while the black is thrown (glat) for the ’dre. High scores (shwa chen) are assigned to the gods, low (shwa chung) to the demons. If high figures are thrown, it is certain that a lha is the cause of the illness or the threatening death of the man for whose benefit the ritual is to be performed.

The ceremony requires all sorts of accessories; a bla figure modelled out of tsamba and resembling the endangered person, the right thighbone of a sheep, a piece of wood, a white stone, water, precious
substances, a white die, a coral, a turquoise and so on. These are all placed in a bowl (sder), which is then covered with its own lid and placed on a vessel or a measure (bre) of barley. After this the white die is offered to the lha, the black is thrown to the 'dre, while an arrow from which hangs a white cloth is brought over the previously mentioned vessel. Around the tsamba figure of the sick man, which is if possible smeared with his sweat or spittle, are placed his shoes, his hat and a living animal which has been specially liberated in order to free it from being killed (tsho tshar). The magician now announces that the sacred action he is performing is a repetition of that accomplished for the first time by Padmasambhava. After having established in the manner mentioned above in whose hands, those of a lha or a 'dre, the soul of the sick man has fallen, he requests the lha, if the die has fallen in favour of a lha, to accept a white lamb (tsho tshar), while he offers the bla as support the right thigh-bone of the sheep and implores him to take up his abode in this (bla skang) and then successively in the white die (bla yi shwa), in the turquoise, in the coral, in the stone (bla rdo), in the piece of wood (bla shing) and so forth.

To finish, the exorcist declares that the figure offered as ransom (glud) is not a lifeless or dead thing, but a living creature; then he invites the lha to set at liberty the soul enchained by him and to accept the glud in its place, while the soul is cautioned not to go astray (po), not to stumble, not to disintegrate (nub), not to break apart (chag), not to wander about.

The utensils mentioned, especially the bowl (sder or phor pa), must always be kept by the actual person for whom the ceremony is effective, because all these ingredients are now very closely linked with his bla, having actually become its residence (gnas) and support. Their loss or theft would expose the person concerned to the greatest danger. The bowl particularly he must henceforth handle with care and make constant use of. The measure of grain however belongs to the exorcist.

The same ceremony, naturally mutatis mutandis, is used in the case of the seduction of the soul by the 'dre; in this case the demonic powers coming into question are enumerated by classes (ya bdud kyi sde, lha yi sde, gnod sbyin, klu, bdud kyi sde, rgyal po'i sde mu rje, skyes bu lung btsan, gnyan chan thang lha, sman kyi sde, the'u rang, rgyal chen bzhi, yul gzhi bdag).

If it is a question of saving a human being whose safety is of importance for religion, on account of his learning or his holy behaviour, it can also happen that the powers who have determined upon his downfall can be directed to another goal, provided that another person is prepared to offer himself in his place; such a person is called 'substitute in flesh, substitute in bone' (sha tshab rus tshab).

The bla has a definite shape (gzungs); despite this it resides in various kinds of objects, in the wood, in the stone, in the die, in the coral, and
so forth. If it can be extricated from the clutches of the lha or 'dre, it is exposed to the danger of disintegrating or stumbling. It can also break apart. It gives out its own light, it can need food; it is almost omnipresent, because it allows itself to be localized in so many different places.

Although in Buddhism, at least as far as its doctrine is concerned, there is no place for a soul, since the decision-making centre of karmic continuity resides in vijñana (Tib. rnam par shes pa), the new religion of Tibet was not able totally to suppress older concepts such as the pluralism of souls, which as we know was particularly common among the ancient Chinese and the tribes of north-central and southwest Asia.16 The bla is a kind of living double of the individual concerned; to gain control over it means to gain control over the person to whom it belongs. Certainly it is not as easy to destroy as any material body, but it can be injured, and it is also subject to wear and tear.

Alongside the bla exists the srog, that is to say the vital force identical with the duration of life (No. 9 (Bon) Ch. 2, p. 8b, srog ni tshe ste). It flows in the breathing (dbugs), has its seat in the heart and penetrates the whole body (loc. cit.). Although the concepts involved here frequently vary and can only with difficulty be reduced to a common denominator, it is at least clear that they mean the principle which is the opposite to the state of death. The disappearance of this force is equivalent to death. Thus we are concerned with a kind of life-impulse, respiration (dbugs, Skt. prana), vital spirit, that becomes weaker along with the life as such. So it is that in certain texts (No. 51) there is mention of the duration of life of the soul (bla tshe), of a vital duration of the srog and so of the respiration (dbugs tshe), and thus it is that the gods are invoked in specific cycles of deities to hold back 'the time of life' (tshe khug), since the life in this its triple aspect has become injured and damaged (nyams pa). The various forms of bodily incarnation, assumed one after the other, are dependent upon the srog (No. 10, p. 14b), but here we enter into a vicious circle, for these bodily incarnations in connection with the principle of consciousness and with moral responsibility determine the causation of a greater or lesser stock of merits (dbang thang), and this in its turn determines the variation in the following srog. Bla is accordingly a mobile soul, which can take its residence anywhere, in a tree, a rock, an animal, but nevertheless remains linked most closely with the life of the person concerned. The soul always needs a support (rgyab rten). Thus the invocatory prayer aims to prevent this support from becoming ill, breaking up or being destroyed (No. 11, p. 5b, and No. 51). The srog, which can take up its dwelling in any desired object (e.g. ljon shing, No. 11, p. 11b) is obviously exposed to similar dangers. There is also a
kind of collective soul; thus mountains are the bla ri of those communities who worship them as ancestral deities. Mount Ti se (Skt. Kailasa), for example, is looked on as being the bla ri of Zhang zhung.

The respiration (dbug) too has the same duration as the life as such. It is always spoken of, as already mentioned, in close connection with the srog (the dam sri, demons of death, seduce away the srog and dbugs of man, so that he falls ill and dies, No. 75). We are concerned here with the double aspect of the breathing/soul found widely distributed in the beliefs of many peoples, and in which the traces of much more complicated ideas can still be perceived. Such ideas are particularly evident in the group of the 'go ba'i lha, the 'guiding deities', and also in that of the dgra lha. These concepts rest upon especially ancient foundations. The lha with which they are concerned are enumerated and classified in a quite different manner; in groups of 5, 7, 13, 21 'go ba'i lha.

Here we must limit ourselves to the group of five 'go ba'i lha, who have become protective gods. They are addressed in order to obtain their protection, and yet they are born immediately together with man (lhan cig skyes). One of them stands, as we will see, at the side of a person after his death at the moment of judgment (cf.p.194). In this group we come across lha already known to us. We should not overlook the circumstance, in this connection, that all these lha have their seat in the human body, are born together with man and accompany him throughout his entire life. In the invocations addressed to them they are requested not to allow the vital force (srog) of the person placed under their protection to come to harm (No. 69, p.3) and similarly with the bla and the mdangs. The last word designates the glowing appearance of a man in good health and full strength, thus corresponding to the Sanskrit concepts of ojas or tejas. It can also be supposed that in the case of this group of five 'go ba'i lha we are concerned originally with the deifying of forces which are rather inherent within the human being, with what were protective souls, before they changed into protective gods on whom depend the bodily integrity of the individual.

5 Death

In relation with what has been said above it can be seen that, according to the Tibetan conception, death is not merely a question, as in earlier Buddhism, of the consequence of the process of maturation of karma which has effect at a particular time and in a particular manner; it is also a separation of the life-principle, bla, from the body, which can be traced back to factors which are fortuitous rather than
karmic in a strict sense. This separation is, however, not irreparable, for there are appropriate techniques available to call the bla back into its bodily shell and so give life back to the body. The subversion of the basic teachings of Buddhism, already continually making progress in its Tantric expression, takes on such great proportions in Tibet that the previously mentioned indigenous conceptions persist ineradically. Because of its representative nature the Bar do thos grol, the recitation of the ‘Book of the Dead’ by the pillow of the dying or dead man intended to awake the liberating consciousness in his consciousness principle, can here be referred to again. In its various versions (cf.pp.74-5), adapted to the doctrinal systems of each tendency, this book stands at the centre of the Lamaistic technique of liberation. The salvation practice of the Bar do thos grol, especially in the sense in which the nNying ma pa and bKa’ brgyud pa understand it, has a remarkable peculiarity; its final goal is always to afford relief from the appointed processes of karma.

In the Bar do thos grol the consciousness which the lama performing the practice attempts to awake in the consciousness principle of the dead man has a purification as its object. The lama who whispers the syllables of the book in the ear of a dead man still retaining a trace of his own consciousness principle is in reality a psychopompous who accompanies the dead person step by step on his difficult path during the forty-nine days of the intermediate state (antarabhava) between death and rebirth. If the recitation of the book does not succeed in awakening the consciousness of the dead man, and so in bringing about his transition into a better form of existence, then his consciousness principle will be led before the god of the dead for the last judgment. Then before him (Tucci, 1958) he sees darkness, from behind the storm assails him, and the messengers of gShin rje (the god of the dead) strike him. However, he does not arrive in front of his judge alone, but attended by two accompanying figures; one is the ‘demon of evil works born with man’, the other the god born with man. One is black, the other white; one has black pebbles in his hand, the other white, to reckon at the moment of judgment the good and bad actions committed by the dead man. These spirits, who exist and are present simultaneously in man, enter into existence together with him and grow to maturity along with him as the embodiments of the good and evil deeds he has accomplished. At the moment of his death they take on a concrete form. Here the dgra lha, discussed above, is faced by his counterpart; however, on this occasion we are no longer concerned with a purely material protector in the dgra lha, but with a kind of counsel for the defence of man before the last judgment. 59

A new idea breaks through in these eschatological representations;
the dividing of conscience into two and accordingly its twofold embodiment in a defending god and accusing demon—a division which evidently arises from ethical preoccupations. The reckoning of good and bad works is made through the black and white pebbles mentioned above, and also with the help of a mirror and of a balance (to refute the sinner’s protestations of innocence) quite apart from a register in which all the past acts are inscribed. Certain particularities seem to suggest prototypes in Iranian eschatology, where the conflict between the good and bad consciences, particularly, is a characteristic feature, a conflict which stretches on into the hereafter and upon which the fate of the individual soul depends.

Thus according to the Dāstān-iDENIKE, during the third night, as dawn begins to break, the guardian of good deeds comes in the form of a beautiful girl in the prime of life to meet the soul and shows to it the accumulated store of good works, while on the other side the soul is faced by its sins, embodied in a fear-inspiring old woman burdened with all the evils the soul has committed.

In the same way, in another book, the guardians who watch over the good and evil deeds of men struggle with each other for possession of the soul. If the guardian of good actions wins, he then frees the dead man from the clutches of his accuser and leads him before the Great One who sits upon his throne and further into the presence of the Luminous. But if the guardian of sins turns out to be the victor, then the soul will be torn from the hands of its defender and delivered over into the realm of hunger, thirst and excruciating illnesses.

Even more marked are the correspondences with the Iranian CINMAT bridge, that bridge of judgment in the world beyond over which only the pure succeed in crossing, while the damned plunge into the river of hell beneath it. Ideas which correspond exactly can be found in the 'das log writings (e.g. No. 76, ka, p.6a and ga, p.4b), where the river is called pShin chu nag po nga ro can, the bridge pShin rje zam pa, ‘bridge of pShin rje’. In the text cited in the second place there is also mention of a passage narrow as a hair, through which only the righteous can pass, while the others fall down with fearful screams into the floods of hell.

For all this it could in no way be maintained that the theory and practice of the Bar do, as presented among the tNyEng ma pa, are entirely the result of Iranian influences. Apart from Indian elements, one can also clearly distinguish others of a shamanistic character, as for example the mention of the terrifying noise which blocks the way of the soul of the dead man, or torments it, and also the belief well known in the shamanistic realm of a sojourn, shorter or longer (lasting up to forty days), of the soul in the neighbourhood of the grave (that is if we are not concerned here with a purely Lamaistic element), the conception of the soul being severely threatened on its journey beyond.
the grave, the conception of a multiplicity of vital principles or souls and so forth.

The elements of diverse origin which one comes across in the Bar do have naturally been adapted to the eschatological framework of Buddhism. Besides this, the Bon religion has a literature of its own, complete with practical applications, which has as its subject the cycle of peaceful and fear-inspiring deities (zhi khyo) who appear in the Bar do state. It goes without saying that the deities in question have here other names, but in both cases we are concerned with the same principle, so that one is led to think that the parallel versions of the Bon po and rNying ma pa are derived from the same prototype.

Other rituals which Lamaism offers to its followers to free the dead person from the fate prepared for him by his own deeds seem to be less complicated. Liturgical prescriptions of this kind are included in the works of the great doctrinal masters of Buddhism; they follow the usual plans of Tantric ritualism. Although they are basically of Indian origin, they represent in their actual formulation a concession to Tibetan beliefs. This is particularly so in regard to the hope which they arouse of being able to alter the fate of the departed in some way. The Mahayana and Vajrayana had already found ways to circumvent the law of karma; it surely ought to be possible to bring about some modification of its inflexibility, in the first place through pious practices and works or through the transferral of one’s own merits to another person, especially to one’s own relations. Thus one finds the formula repeated, in for example the inscriptions of Ladakh and the dedications of the sKu ’bum in Gyantse, that the consequences arising from a meritorious act, such as the building of a mchod rten, a ‘mani wall’ or a temple, may benefit one’s deceased relations. All this implies unequivocally that quite apart from the Bar do thos grol liturgy there existed the belief that it was possible to have an influence in some way on the fate of the dead.

The practices of the Tantras, and the liturgical processes connected with them, set themselves the basic task of bringing about a sudden reversal of the planes of existence, from the time-bound existence of samsara to the extra-temporal plane of nirvana. This goal ought necessarily to be the most precious thing of all for the Tibetan, but all his thoughts and endeavours go to escaping from the inexorable maturation of karma or at least to mitigating its consequences. Thus ingenious liturgies were elaborated in Tibet which either aim at procuring directly the entire cleansing of karma (sdi sgrub sbyangs, Nos 25, 26) or else intend to bring about the transformation of bad karma into good karma and so offer, as an immediate consequence of the ritual performance, a guarantee of a rebirth (new life) opposed to that allocated by the karma which has been accumulated. This kind of
process has to be achieved through the awakening of the consciousness principle of the dead man, since it is required that he respond to the ritual invocation. A powerful reversal of the planes of existence is then called forth for his benefit. One of these liturgies, composed by Ngor bla ma, has as its centre the cult of Kun rig, a special manifestation of rNam par snang mdzad (Vairocana).

It is unnecessary in the present account to go into the details of the introductory ritual through which is brought about the purification of all that can be thought by its identification with the void (stong pa nyid), and the becoming one in substance of the celebrant and the deity. There follows the evocation of the Buddhas of all directions of space, who reveal themselves through their radiance, so manifesting their apparent bodies, while they preach the doctrine of salvation. The centre of the ceremony is formed by the evocation of khro rgyal bgegs tshogs 'dul, the 'conqueror of khro rgyal', the overcomer of all bgegs'. This leads into an invitation to the demons (bgegs) to depart and leave the field free.

The specially made mandala is now clothed with an aura of immaculate sacredness, and the deification of the celebrant achieved according to the prescribed manner (Nos 25, 26). Afterwards a piece of bone (rūs) belonging to the dead man is placed upon the mandala, or else a piece of paper or wood on which his name is written (ming byang bu), apart from the ingredients necessary for the purificatory ritual (sbyang ba'i yo byad), grains of sand (bye ma), white mustard-seed (yungs kar) and so on. Now the dissolution of these things into the void is brought about through the meditation process. Behind this act lies the idea that the objects to be ritually purified (sbyongs stegs), among them the piece of paper or wood inscribed with the syllable nr (Skt. 'man') and the appropriate initial letter of the dead man's name, then emerge anew from the void. In the following phase the image of the dead person, his name, his bodily appearance, in short the totality of his visible components (phung po, khams, skye mched, with the exception of the consciousness principle), is visualized. Now two lights shine forth from the syllable nr conceived of as being in the heart of the dead person and the hum visualized in the meditator's heart, in order to draw to themselves the consciousness principle of the dead man, wherever it might be, and to bring it into the piece of paper or wood already mentioned. If it appears to be white in colour, that is in its original state, then a ritual circuit is made of the mandala, turning to the left the rdo rje (rdo rje gsor) held in the right hand, while the little bell is placed in the left, meanwhile offering gtor ma (ting lo and chang bu, cf. above p.177) to the gdon and bgegs as recompense (rphan). The gdon and bgegs are now requested to go away and to leave the consciousness principle of the deceased, since this latter has forfeited its innate
purity through their entry. If the powers reject this request, they are compelled to let loose their prey by the diamond consciousness (rdo rje ye shes) which is identical or analogous to the spiritual nature (thugs) of all the Tathāgata. The sins weighing down the dead person next materialize, first as a black point, then as a scorpion; this burns in the fire to the right or dissolves in the water to the left. The sins which have become materially visible in such a way having been overcome, nine mantras are next recited before the bone of the dead man or the piece of paper or wood which bears his name, apart from other purificatory rituals, which can be passed over here.

The special role of the bone in this connection is noteworthy. It is in the ceremony just described not only the support of the dead man, but also, in accordance with ideas distributed over all Central and North Asia, the principle of life; the soul has its residence in the bone and life can arise again out of this element.

The extent of Buddhism’s tolerance towards popular ideas appears clearly in the ritual described. As we have seen we are concerned here with a kind of ‘summoning to judgment’ of the soul (that it is referred to in this context as nam par shes pa, consciousness principle, has little significance), in order that the bad karma should not merely have its efficacy limited but be directly annihilated. The sins are here conceived as something material and physical which takes possession of the soul, as a pernicious black substance that can be eliminated from the soul through the ritual action so that it attains once more its original white colour.

Ideas analogous to these are common in another genre of Tibetan literature, in the stories told of human beings who have temporarily died or who have returned from a journey in the world beyond (’das log) into this world in order to report here what they have seen. Lamaism uses writings of this kind to impress its teachings on simple people and to spread its ethical precepts. Sometimes these ideas recall very closely the journeys of the soul common in the world of shamanistic culture, apart, naturally, from the transformations brought about by Buddhism in the basic religious conceptions.

In most cases a grave sickness (nad drag po) precedes the journey to the hereafter, an illness which strikes man unexpectedly and has particular symptoms; fever, burning in the throat, cold shivers. Before the journey the ’das log has terrible visions and hallucinations, he imagines himself in the middle of frightening storms and whirlwinds, he hears a fearful noise, he believes himself attacked by mighty hailstorms, which shatter his bones and lacerate his head (No. 76, ca, p.2b), he feels like a shipwrecked man at the bottom of the sea or as if thrown to the heights of the sky, he believes himself to be dead, for the real world disappears from his view and he sees the world of the
hereafter. Sometimes he throws himself into the air in front of his house on a horse which has suddenly appeared in front of him and he is led on his journey by the command of invisible beings serving him as guides. His reawakening too is slow and painful. These and other similar details recall many of the experiences of enrapturement that accompany the journeys through heaven and descent into the underworld of the shamans, but one cannot mistake a certain difference between such shamanistic visions and the reports of the 'return' described. While in the realm of shamanism the shaman undertakes his journey of his own free will, here the event befalls the person concerned in a quite unexpected manner, it has an expressly fortuitous character, although those particularly suited by their natures for adventures of this kind are preferred. Both realms have in common the exit from oneself and return, the journey to the hereafter and the healing of the soul, while in the Buddhist milieu such healing is synonymous with the overcoming of moral defilement and sinfulness.

While the representations of the world hereafter have changed from the older conceptions, such as those characteristic of the Bon tradition, one can still see today that the idea of a continuous connection between earth and the regions of paradise has not totally disappeared from the Tibetan folk imagination, and that the belief is still common that the dead person keeps in the world beyond the appearance he had while alive, that he undertakes his voyage to the heavenly fields on a cloth scarf, carried by his meritorious works, along with similar ideas. Evidently the piece of cloth here has the role of a bridge—a concept certainly different from that of the rainbow body mentioned previously (p.86, cf. Tucci, 1949, p.733), although even in this case the archetypal background remains the same.

6 The bsangs or suffimen (offering of incense)

We have already mentioned the bsangs above (cf.p.169) as being one of the most notable liturgical acts of Tibetan folk religion. It is a suffimen which, accompanied by prayers, is offered every morning, more rarely in the evening, by the father of the house, or, in his absence, always by a man. In Khams, for example, performing bsangs in the evening is in fact considered to be dangerous, in that it can bring death to horses. This daily ritual act belongs to those liturgical ceremonies which are referred to in Hinduism as nityapuja, daily divine service, and which are distinguished from those rituals performed only for a particular reason, or on festive occasions. The bsangs exhibits diverse variations in its actual performance; its essential nature, however, is always that of a suffimen, a fumigation using
aromatic and perfumed herbs (bdud rtsi shing) such as juniper. A
purifying and atoning action is attributed to the sweet-smelling smoke
of these offerings, which spreads in all directions. The fumigation
is the basic element of these rituals, even though there can be attached
to this suffmen the offering of valuable gifts or also of reproductions of
animals. In the accompanying invocations and fervent prayers the
world of folk religion, with its many levels looking back far into the
past, is mirrored with particular clarity. Closely associated with the
bsangs is the reward-offering (brtman) to the equivocal powers peopling
space, who need to be rendered favourable through such donations of
desirable and costly things ('dod pa'i mchod pa), for the most part
simply represented by reproductions. The person making the offerings
takes up his position at an idealized centre of space and time, so that
through his suffmen and the gifts associated with it all conceivable
powers will be purified and appeased (zhi ba): chos skyong, dri za, grul
bum, powers of the ground and the earth on which the maker of offerings
lives (sa bdag), and also the various lha, the deity of the house, of the
herd, of the store-room (bang mdzod lha), the pho lha (with his seat in his
mukhar), the god of the door, etc. To which are added the countless
indeterminate powers who have a protective function and who can
bring all sorts of misfortune on man and on his property if offended or
neglected: the god of horses (rta lha, rma dpön), the god of the herds
(phuyug lha), and also the numina who watch over the fields (zing lha), or
those of the subterranean region (the klu), of the region above the earth
(the sman), then the srung, the twelve great brtan ma, the thirteen mgur lha,
apart of course from the powers who by their nature cause nothing but
ill, the 'dre and bgegs.

Once these powers who surround man have been pacified and the
offerings have been gracefully accepted, the invocation is addressed to
the five gods born with man (cf. p. 193). All the powers appeased in this
way are implored for prosperity and blessing (g.yang and phya).

For such a prayer to be granted presupposes moral and ritual purity
in the petitioner. As already indicated (cf. p. 173), in the domain of the
ritual conceptions which have control here the impurity which can
bring forth anger and vengeance of the powers, and for which pardon is
implored, is not to be understood merely in an ethical sense. It has
rather a considerably wider range of meaning; guilt of this kind can be
brought about through acts which are free of any ethical valuation. The
underlying idea of guilt here does not only result from the transgression
of Buddhist moral laws, since it is not limited to the plane of karma. We
are not exclusively concerned here with a sin whose retribution comes
to maturity according to the law of karma. Karma is individually
conditioned, it is a sort of settlement of accounts, and the author of each
act is well aware that this settlement must be made under all circum-

200
stances. The law of karma prepares for each one of us a continuum closed in upon itself, which from its very origin, because of the given suppositions, excludes all external influences. Things are quite different in the folk religion. Here it is a question of a pollution, an impurity, a shadow, a contamination (grib) which brings about in man a particular state of weakness, which opens the way for hostile and evil-wishing powers (gdon), the lha, 'dre, bregs, as was shown before in the discussion of gdon (cf.p.173) but is easy to illustrate through further examples. The dregs also are demonic beings, but dreg in addition means uncleanness, filth. Grib is not only a group of dark, evil numina, but also means spot, shadow, in short always a lack of lightness, a stain. Such a state causes the deities inborn with man and his protective deities to abandon him, to 'turn away their sight' from him, since he has become polluted and impure. The meaning of bsangs as an essential element of this liturgical action can thus be understood; bsangs is derived from sangs, to purify, and so it denotes an act of purification, by which every impurity, dreg, grib, gdon, is overcome. At the same time this act of purification does not only extend to he who performs the offering, and who as a result is immune to any attack by hostile powers and made worthy of the requested protection of the appeased deities; it also applies to the deities themselves whom he addresses. The ritual purifies them too and obtains for them the condition of purity. This is why we find in many formulae bstan srung bsangs, gzhi bdag bsangs 'purified are the bstan srung, purified are the gzhi bdag', (No. 70).

Two of the many occasions which provoke the ill-humour and vengeance of particular powers (in this case the klu ruling the underground or the sa bdag) are the carrying away of stones (rdobl stag) and the digging of the earth (sa brko). Such actions must therefore be preceded by a ritual of propitiation based upon the bsangs. These actions are dangerous in themselves and for those who perform them because they represent a damaging irruption into the domain of the powers of the underworld. Since the moment when the first king, Ye smon rgyal po, introduced agriculture, this impurity has weighed upon man. The working of the earth by man signified the coming of a new order of things, upsetting the previous state. The klu, gnyen, lha, lha mo, sman and all the other countless numina burned in anger at this and punished man's lack of consideration with all kinds of harm. Thus man was obliged to assure himself of the assistance of the seers, those first institutores of a civilized common life, who instructed him in the necessary rites of atonement and defence operations. The customs related to the bsangs (and similarly to the gto, glud and mdos) which are prescribed on laying the foundation stone of a house go back to these very teachings and models. The celebrant, whether acting in his own
interest or commissioned by another (the sbyin bdag) renews a sacred action first accomplished in illo tempore (sngon gyi bskal ba’i dang po la, No. 63, p.4), his action repeats a liturgy of atonement revealed ab initio. In the ritual act once becomes Now: ‘I am the body which destroyed the three poisons, I am identical to all the victorious ones, I am the forefather of the triple world, I am the father of all creatures. The lhā and srin, who cause harm to all the world, are all slaves awaiting my command’ (No. 67, p.3).

7 Looking into the future: investigating the favourable or unfavourable omens for an action

In view of the dependence of man on the powers afflicting him from all directions and his being at the mercy of their good will it is understandable that he looks in all directions for appropriate means and ways to obtain indications of his future fate and hints on how best to conduct himself. On such preconditions rests the enormous success of astrology, which had in part already taken a firm foothold in Buddhism with the Tantric scriptures, but which now also entered at various times from China (cf. pp.142, 172). The oracular teachings of the Yi king, as embodied in the symbolism of the eight trigrams (pa kua) and five metals, penetrated to Tibet and here provided the preferred theme for the amulets or fortune-telling cards which the Tibetan carries around with him or keeps in his house. However, in the course of time these objects lost more and more their divinatory and astrological character and came to take on a more narrowly apotropaic function.

Alongside the mood of expectation, suspicion, anxiety which overshadows the entire existence of the Tibetan runs the conviction that the future of man can in some way show itself through indicatory omens (litas), good or bad. It therefore becomes extraordinarily important to acquire the ability to uncover, to understand, to interpret rightly omens of this kind. In the present context we cannot go into more detail about all the modes of predictive experience, which represent a common possession of almost all cultures. Their great significance holds too in Lamaistic contexts. Here a truly initiatory role is often conferred upon dream visions, but Tibet is not alone in these matters and in this regard it has little to offer that is essentially new and individual. Besides there are other methods to discover the imminently approaching fate of an individual person, thanks to which he is put into a position to take appropriate remedies.

Procedures of this kind are prophecy and the drawing of lots, which are already indicated in certain inscriptions and documents (Tucci,
1950, p.52) of the dynastic period, and which were officially used at
this period whenever there were important decisions to be made.
Thus we are concerned here with a survival from pre-Buddhist times.
One of the most frequent methods of inquiring into the future consists
in the use of dice, sho, a method which is placed under the patronage of
dPal ldan lha mo, dMag 'orz ma or some other deity; an unmistakable
indication of the taking over of an old, indigenous custom by particularly
popular Buddhist deities. Besides this, predictions of the future and
advice at moments of uncertainty rely also on the oracular pro-
nouncement of a btsan (in such a case referred to as mo lha) such as
btsan rje snying krun.

This last btsan belongs to the circle of those numina with which the
so-called pra-liturgy is concerned. In this procedure a person, usually
a woman or a child, is able to uncover the future because the btsan has
descended upon the person concerned; he is then referred to as the
'support of the pra' (pra brten). An essential utensil here is the mirror
(me long), support of the ritual and of the revelation of the future (sgrub
rten). Other requirements are an arrow with the usual five-coloured
cloth, the offering of milk and chang, of flour mixed with butter (phye
mar) and of barley. The btsan who is evoked and called upon to accept
the offerings appears in front of the magician black as pitch; he is
dressed in a jacket (go zhu) of black material and rides on a dark horse
with black hooves; on his head he bears a black feather; his speech is
resounding. He is asked to accept the gift and then to decide in favour
of the good and against the bad, for good fortune against evil fortune.

But sometimes the situation is much more complicated (No. 55).
The support of the pra is then a boy or a girl; if a boy, he must be
between eight and sixteen years old, if a girl, she must be between
twelve and sixteen. The deity descends upon his bearer (the
relationship is expressed in words as rten-brten; rten the bearer of the
pra, brten what is born, the deity entering into him) in order to give
signs predicting the future through the 'person taken into his possession'
(who looks fixedly into a mirror where appears all the good and evil in
the world, snang srid kyi legs nyes 'char ba'i me long). Through having
been taken possession of, if only temporarily, by a lha, the person
concerned is set off from the crowd of his equals, he becomes a lha pa,
'one whom the lha has descended', indeed in whom it has as if it were
incarnated. The person to be 'possessed' must be prepared and
chosen for his task; among other things he must somewhere pick up,
unseen, a stone, which, carefully wrapped in a black and white cloth,
is hidden by the sngags pa conducting the ritual (pra mkhan) under his
knee. This stone is called bla rdo, soul-stone — a further indication of the
incorporation of shamanistic ideas in this new context. The celebrant
must be clothed in white. Though the formulae used are more or less
Sanskrit in character, the entire plan of the ritual betrays a far more ancient foundation, for example in the meditation on the divine yak, in the designation of the female goddesses as sman bsun, turquoises (in the Buddhist context their names are preceded by rdo rje, Skt. vajra, ‘diamond’). These goddesses descend from a tent which is made out of a ‘heap of precious clouds’; or the deity dwells beyond the heavenly spaces, beyond the sun, on the peak of a mountain which is as white as a shell. In the middle of a lake, similarly white as a shell, there is a tent of rock-crystal (shel gur) in which the god rests who is now called on to descend, without wearying himself, to foretell the future. The lots of destiny are of three kinds, those which concern the house (khyim phya), life (srog phya), or the birth of a son (srid phya). Besides using the mirror, the revelation can be brought about by staring at the finger-nails (sen pra).

In this whole area of folk religion the fundamental principle of Lamaistic liturgy remains valid; the celebrant is only qualified to perform the sacred action when he has transformed himself into a god (lha bskyed) through the appropriate meditation. It is only thanks to this deification that he can become master of the opposing powers. In this context the taking possession of a human being by the deity is not excluded, as the pra-ritual shows. In the latter case however the ceremony does not bring about a deification, it serves rather to put the subject of the process into a passive and receptive state; thus he becomes the support and the bearer whom the deity invoked uses for his temporary stay. The numen needs a human support to be able to act and speak. Here we are not concerned in any way with a mystical rapture, but with a specific state of possession.

Among the many forms of oracles and divination, for example for decisions in cases of doubt, we will cite here only the practice of scapulimancy, divination with the aid of a shoulder-blade, which is in use in Tibet as elsewhere.

8 The protection of property and of flocks

Apart from his own personal protection, man must also be concerned about the security of his possessions. The dangers which threaten him also bring into doubt the sources of his well-being. According to whether we are concerned with a nomadic pastoralist or a sedentary agriculturalist, the liturgical form which is used varies. For the agriculturalist the most important thing of all is that he be spared by bad weather, especially hail, mildew (btsa) and drought (than), and on the other hand that he be favoured by rain at the right moment (char chu dus su rgyun mi 'chad par phebs) so that he obtains an abundant
harvest (lo tog, lo thog, lo thog dang 'bru'i tshogs phun sum tshogs) and so on. He also wishes to keep illness, poverty and hunger (No. 12, p.9) away from himself and his family. Thus invocations to the god of the fields, zhing lha (No. 60), and to a whole host of other deities, some equivalent to Indian gods (Tshangs pa=Skt. Brahma, etc.). others local, are followed by offerings to the powers who damage the harvest. Here too are inserted in a liturgical practice which is probably of Indian origin (e.g. Skt. ghasthāpāna; in India there is similarly an extremely rich magical and exorcistic literature on the protection of the fields) some names of pre-Buddhist numina; most of the time these are no more than names, the skeletal residue of a very ancient vanished mythology.

In the case of a bad harvest recourse is had to the ‘ransom of the year’ glud (No. 61), a glud which is primarily directed towards the evil powers bse rag, 'gong, dam sri and 'byung po, considered to be the authors of the damage suffered by the performer of the exorcism. Here the magician identifies himself with Khrag thung Heruka: ‘I am khrag thung (blood-drinker) Heruka’. In the course of this process the demons, if they do not accept the offerings and will not renounce their evil purposes, are driven back by the magician with threats. He faces them, armed and armoured, a sword in his hand, and cries aloud the magic formula gi ha. However, before going to such extremes the demons are offered yas (cf.p.176) in order to pacify the 'gong po, the ‘Nine Brothers’ divided according to cosmological tradition, and persuade them to change their evil disposition (zhe sding) into a feeling of compassion (byams pa'i sems) for all creatures. In this case too we are concerned with the settling of a debt entered into with respect to the powers and arising from man’s conduct (No. 61).

The nomadic part of the population ('brog pa), whose economy rests on pastoralism, especially on the yak and the horse, possesses a special pantheon of its own, at whose centre stand the Phyugs la spun bdun, the ‘Seven Brother Gods of the Herds’, namely the horse-god, the god of the yak, the god of the tame domestic yak ('bri), the god of the mdzo (yak-cow cross), the god of oxen, the god of sheep and the god of goats. In the case of illnesses of horses one carries out the ransom of the horse (rta glud), a ceremony connected with the giem chen. We must content ourselves here with these particulars and with indicating in a general manner that the religious world of the nomads presents peculiar features, along with reminiscences of ancient origins from many different levels, which would justify a special investigation.

9 Final considerations

The folk religion of which an outline has been given in the previous
pages reveals a religious and magical heritage, a structure of rituals, beliefs, oral traditions and legendary accounts behind which stands centuries of past history and which has only been able to integrate itself slowly and hesitantly into the world of Buddhism. Convictions which had been widespread since ancient times flowed into the new religion through the sngags pa and the bandhe, who themselves depended upon the same beliefs, but were more easily able to unite them into a systematic liturgical system. Tantric ritual afforded a stronger and better-defined framework for the customary religious practices. Invocations of Buddhist deities had to suffice to lend a Buddhist veneer to rituals which originally had not the slightest connection with Buddhism. The divine figures introduced through Buddhism from India thus co-exist with the indigenous deities, even though they sometimes bear openly the signs of intruders (cf. for example the insertion of Heruka into the ritual described in the preceding section). Tantric liturgy with its ritual superimposition on the practice of gtor ma, mdoś, bsangs, glud and so forth nowhere eliminated the ancient religious sub-stratum. Reproductions of animals made out of butter and flour, pieces of tsamba modelled in countless ways each having a name according to its form and destination—all this has nothing to do with the Tantric ritual of India, even if individual words correspond, as for example gtor ma to the Sanskrit bali. The nature and construction of the customs in question are basically different from those of the Indian rituals which provide a mere exterior covering for them. We are dealing here with ancient customs which cannot everywhere conceal their primitive crudity. Thus we come across clear echoes of shamanistic ideas in the plurality of souls, in the possibility of a soul being possessed or made captive, in the journey of the soul to the world beyond and so on. The liturgical instruments are often those of Bon and of the shamanistic world; the pole-drum (mga) and the damaru, both essential instruments in every ceremony, are employed not so much to frighten the hostile powers as rather to help bring about a state of inner composure which will facilitate the descent of the divine powers invoked and their taking possession of the exorcist who is thereby to some degree deprived of his consciousness. The arrow with its attached piece of cloth of five colours, the mirror which is an indispensable part of the Bon po's armoury, are of similar provenance. The celebrant must make it known that he has accomplished the return to the initial state (e.g. sngon gyi srid pa'i dpe bzhin, 'according to the example laid down at the beginning of existence'), in other words he identifies himself with the teacher who introduced the ritual in question (e.g. bdag 'dra Pad ma 'byung gnas, 'Padmasambhava who is alike to me'). In order to achieve its full efficacy the ritual must be performed by someone who has transformed himself into its first
author. Only the reversibility of sacred time guarantees the success of the ceremony.

Ideas of this kind govern the Tibetans of practically all classes of society. In the context of this social structure the 'das log literature (that of those who have died and returned to life), created for the people and among the people, in order to diffuse and deepen religious ideals among them, ascribes only a limited degree of importance to the monastic community in its own right. In these writings (No. 76, kha, p.35) the enumeration begins with the leaders of the citizenry, the lords (skyong chen, mi chen), then goes on to their counsellors or officials (drung 'khor) and only then names the monks, even then beginning with the 'great meditators' (sgom chen), the ascetics who are not necessarily tied to the monastic life. Among the members of the monastic order the dge bshes (Skt. kalyanamitra) are given a prominent place (in some lists of this kind it is however only dge 'dun, monks in general, who are mentioned), and further the btsun ma (the female religious), though in many enumerations they are preceded by those who practise goed (No. 76, ga, p.27). There follow the exorcists (sngags pa), and then the ma ni pa (Stein, 1959, Recherches, pp. 324, 330), and then men, women, beggars. Particular significance is attached to the ma ni pa (No. 76, kha, p.37). They preach to the whole people (rgyal khams pa), they are great tellers of stories, such as the narratives, known everywhere, of Visvantara, gzugs kyi nyi ma and 'Gro ba bzang mo, they recite genealogies of dynasties and families (rgyal rabs), which are regularly preceded by myths concerning the genesis of the world, accounts of the origin of particular Tibetan clans, stories from the garland of myths which surrounds Padmasambhava, from the epic of Ge sar and from biographies of holy persons (rnam thar). The ma ni pa thus act as guardians of a literature transmitted and recited orally, though often also preserved in writing, which has a double purpose. On the one hand it is concerned with the diffusion and inculcation of the fundamental ideas of Buddhism, in a generally accessible form, by illustrating them through famous examples (who often inspire also the religious dance-drama) in whom the supreme virtues recommended by this religion find their noblest embodiment.

On the other hand this secular literature preserves and transmits a popular heritage of varied content and manifold nature, including within it also mythological ideas about the origin of the world and of the races of man, not without glorifying the divine ancestry of particular familes, while epic narratives rescue the almost disappeared hoard of ancient legends and transmit them to people of today. In this respect the activity of the ma ni pa does not differ fundamentally from that of the bards (sgung pa), whose task is to celebrate the divine manifestations of ancient times and the glory of the ancestors. Or rather it would be
better to say that this task was given to them in the past, because nowadays the ma ni pa have in general sunk to the level of beggars who offer their wishes for good fortune at the time of the New Year festivities. As we have already indicated, pre-Buddhist and Buddhist elements appear alongside each other in these cosmogenies. The mountain preserves undiminished its sacredness as the ancestral deity. The powers of the underground, the prehistoric cycles of myths, the deities of the atmosphere and of the storm, are directly experienced in all their feared presence, but on the other hand they appear side by side with the Buddhas of the supreme pentad and with the Bodhisattvas. Thus is confirmed for us in a continually repeating manner the indissoluble co-existence of Buddhist and non-Buddhist traditions, which through their combined action produce the religious experience lived by the Tibetan. If some elements of this whole appear at first sight to have value simply as chronicles rather than genuine religious substance, it should not be overlooked that the religious expectation of salvation infuses everything with sacredness and so integrates this apparently disunited world into a total picture. It is true that Buddhist ritual also sometimes assumes a darker aspect during this process, at least in some sects, as in the fearful description of bloody sacrifices, even if these are only meant symbolically, or with regard to the sacrificial remains of rebellious demons killed by the protective deities.

We are concerned here certainly with traits which are not foreign to certain Indian schools, but which have here in Tibet prevailed to a disproportionate extent, thanks to the symbiosis achieved by Lamaism between old, indigenous traditions and the new world of religious experience. The bloody offerings, even if they are now substituted by gtor ma made of tsamba, which are however still thought of as being transformed back magically into their true nature, are an integral part of certain of the exorcistic rituals, particularly those dedicated to the srung ma, the ma mo and the brtan ma. To these deities the flesh and blood of certain animals are offered (e.g. the flesh of a black horse, a rkyang mo, a female wild ass, a black dog). The best of offerings (rdzas mchog) is a human heart (mi snying, No. 65, p. 7b), but as stated, all this is in general confined to the realm of symbolism, it is no more than a linguistic survival of older rituals whose names have been taken over in Lamaism. The places where many of these numina stay, for example the bdud, are described with an abundance of grisly details; gNyas r'ings khrag med ('long neck bloodless') lives in a bdud-castle built of skulls of men and beasts in the middle of a sea of blood (No. 71, p. 3b). It is precisely thanks to its extreme flexibility with respect to the indigenous magical and religious heritage that Buddhism succeeded on its entry into Tibet in becoming to a certain degree an integral part of the folk religion and in co-operating with it in all areas.
THE FOLK RELIGION

If victorious Buddhism had to accept a re-evaluation of many of its values, if Lamaism in adapting itself to the lay world seemed always prepared to comply with the most extraordinary requirements, it was nevertheless not willing to abandon the ritual structures it had brought from India, not even when dealing with powers entirely foreign to Buddhism, inherited from old, indigenous levels of experience. The activity of the sngags pa can expect success in so far as he, in accordance with the norms of Tantric liturgy, has transformed himself into a god, is born as a god (lhar skyes). The powers which he must invoke in order to obtain their protection and then to command them are compelled by him, summoned from their residences before his presence, drawn into the liturgical drama, thanks to the formulae he uses, thanks to the ritual he performs. Only these formulae, only the painstakingly exact performance of the ceremony guarantees the effectiveness of the ritual concerned (sgrub).

In this realm the soul of the shaman no longer goes on journeys to heaven, no longer does it descend to the underworld; at most the sngags pa or lha pa brings about in himself or in another (as in the case of the boy used for the pra) a state of possession by a particular power. Besides there always hovers over these half-friendly, half-hostile encounters with innumerable powers the incessant thought of the voidness of everything (stong pa nyid), in the light of which, devoid of all colour, and yet for that very reason blinding, all things dissolve and into whom all finally disappears. This ‘purification of all things which are empty by nature’ forms the prelude to every ritual act. However, in their practical application this precondition does not prevent the presence of the powers who are invoked, the hostile or ambivalent forces, the sa bdag, gnyen, btsan, klu and so forth, from being accepted in ordinary consciousness, within the limits of daily experience, as having an absolutely solid reality which must be taken into account most seriously, since the fortunes of men depend on it.

In this connection the importance attributed to the stone in domestic ritual is remarkable, going so far that certain authors (e.g. Hummel) would even see in it genuine survivals of a megalithic culture. We have already come across the stone on many occasions as support or bearer of the soul, we have also found it in rituals to foretell the future (pra) where the celebrant must place a white stone, evidently again serving as support for the soul, under his knee, as a secure and not easily visible place, apparently so that when the soul of the magician leaves the body during the ritual to give place to the lha it can descend into it and occupy it temporarily. Heaps of stones constructed of various colours and in various ways are also regarded in many wedding ceremonies of West Tibet (Tucci, 1966, p.175) and other regions as the seat of favourable powers and are used in driving away
those which are unfavourable. In the mountains stones form the preferred resting-places of local lha and btsan. Stone heaps at the summits of mountains or on mountain passes (lha btsas) are cult places, regularly visited; the community makes its way there each year on the days prescribed by the calendar of festivals in order to honour the deity who dwells in this locality or who sanctified it through his hierophanies and revelations in the time of the ancestors.

Through Buddhism a continuous process of demythologizing was let loose. It was at most fragments and echoes of the old indigenous world of myths which found entry into its ritual, mostly little more than the mere names or iconographical details preserved by routine at the time of the conversion to new religious ideas, as hidden allusions to the supposed seats of these deities, or as a feeble echo of the long-past contrasts and altercations between the two religions. More and more the architectonic and systematizing element, the complexity of this system of ritual unique to Tantrism and introduced with it, gained the upper hand. While doctrinal speculation remained confined to a few chosen people, the ritual system began to rule the entire Lamaistic world, whether we are concerned with its monastic expression or with the liturgical forms created for the everyday requirements of the layman, and intended to enable him to become master of his fears and find peace in his expectation of salvation. In any case one cannot fail to recognize that a new process of myth-formation began as a result of the Buddhist victory, even if it was not very deep-rooted. It appears in the cycle which has formed about Padmasambhava, who has become a symbol of the struggle between the old and new faiths and also of the peace and the compromise which followed. His historical role (lo rgyus) and his archetypal image (dpe), are constantly made present in the ritual action; a noteworthy example of the creation of a myth around a doubtless historical figure who under these circumstances has been reworked into the central figure of an epic and magical cycle. Admittedly we are here concerned only with a kind of secondary myth-formation founded on a conception primarily thaumaturgic and implicitly ritualistic, in so far as Padmasambhava’s actions arise out of his magical ability (mthu), which is so to speak to be reactivated and made once more efficacious in the ritual, and through that ritual too whose prototype he himself created, adapted it is true to the liturgy in normal use.

Another remarkable characteristic of Tibetan religiosity is its striking lack of social compassion. Authentic Buddhism counsels love for all creatures; at its centre is the vow to strive for the good of all beings to the uttermost limits of self-sacrifice; its goal is to free all beings from suffering and to lead them to the light of final salvation. Indeed, every prayer in Tibet closes with this vow, including those recited daily by
the layman, but the teachings enshrined in the vow rarely receive more than a vague theoretical assertion. Its simple enunciation brings peace to the soul of the Tibetan, along with the assurance that he has fulfilled his duty as a Buddhist. Apart from this and from the great celebrations organized with the intention of transferring to others the resulting merits, Lamaism in all its organization is oriented towards particular concrete ends; to bring benefit to this or the other person, above all to the *sbyin bdag*, the person commissioning the ritual concerned, to a particular family or a clan having a common origin, when the group in question feels itself threatened by a common danger or in its common interests. The community recreates the experience of its unity on the occasion of certain festivals, for example at the New Year celebrations, where the co-operation of all for the good of all seems to be required (cf. p. 150), or in the type of popular religious festivals which are dedicated to a mountain or ancestral god. This still remains restricted however to the particular group that believes itself to be watched over and protected by the same *sa bdag*, *gnyan* or *lha*. These apart, all the daily activity of the cult turns about the well-being or misfortune of the individual or of his family, the family unit like the individual being thought of as controlled and protected by a complicated system of *lha*.

The singularly variegated and ambivalent image and function of the celebrant is thus to be understood. Even if the *sngags pa* are not in general classified into 'white' and 'black', as is usual in relation to *Bon po* and shamans, their practical activity reveals an inclination to and preference for one or another system of magical and religious operations. One exorcist specializes, so to say, in the *ling ga* ceremony with the intention of killing a man, a second in the summoning of hail to damage another's property; both belong without question to the class of 'black' magicians. However, this distinction is not in current use; the exorcist has at his disposal a technique which can bring about good or evil results, but the choice in individual cases depends upon the desire of the person commissioning him. In all these matters this folk religion is naturally anything but uniform. It is uniform to the greatest extent in its psychological presuppositions and foundations, but certainly not with reference to its content. As we have already indicated, the forms in which the religious world of a nomad appears, a pastoralist who is not tied to the earth but more exposed to the powers of nature, are essentially different from those of the agriculturalist, the warrior clans, the peace-loving caravan traders. Way of life, mode of settlement and habitation and so on give to the folk religion an almost unbounded range of variation with respect to its content, its mythical equipment, and not least with respect to the reactions to its very existence. As a complex witness of archaic forms.
of life and of their local expression it offers us the possibility of penetrating into the pre-Buddhist religious world of Tibet, provided that we consider it in its own proper context, beginning from the total psychic disposition of the Tibetan, for whom the presence of the sacred manifests itself everywhere, in every place, in every object or happening. The world (snang srid) is for him not as it is presented to him, and also to us, by ordinary experience, it is not physical and material reality, but a complex of living forces and potencies, conscious expressions of will, psychic essences, which are in a situation of constant movement and violent conflict between each other. On many of the features of this singular religious picture of the world new light will surely be thrown by study of the popular magical and exorcistic liturgies of Tibet, which has so far scarcely begun in a systematic manner.

The Tibetan, overwhelmed by the powers who everywhere lie in wait for him, threaten him and humiliate him, has found in Lamaism an effective system of defence, always ready to function. The magical force (mtshu) radiating from the faultlessly accomplished ritual and the properly recited formula (that is, recited in full consciousness of its power and efficacy, at the prescribed moment of the total liturgical process) puts at his disposal a power thanks to which he hopes to emerge victoriously from the fight; it assures him of his superiority over the numina, so that these powers, rendered defenceless and harmless in the presence of the incomparable superiority of the holy word of the Buddha, must withdraw.

Against the unbounded turmoil of the forces, powers, numina who place in question, capriciously and unexpectedly, the existence of man, against this world of irremediable conflict, arbitrariness and disorder stands a sure, eternal standard, dominating the chaos of the world; the Law of the Buddha which determines and rules all the development and all the life of the universe.
SEVEN

THE BON RELIGION

The Bon religion is the indigenous religion of Tibet, which despite all the influences of Buddhism has preserved itself until the present day. (Bon is also the name of the country, Bod or Bod yul, Tibet.) Bon monasteries and Bon shrines are distributed throughout the whole country. They are especially numerous in East Tibet, and in the western border areas of the country such as bLo (Mustang) which belongs politically to Nepal but culturally and linguistically to Tibet; they are less frequent in the central provinces, though there is an important monastery near Shigatse. The religion we are discussing, then, is still alive today; it has its own adherents, cult places and monasteries. It has maintained itself in the midst of Lamaism, and has borrowed many of its concepts and teachings from it, without Lamaism ever being able entirely to suppress it. If we are discussing the Bon religion only at the end of our account, it is, among other things, because our preceding descriptions, especially of the folk religion, and of certain special aspects of Lamaism, have in some degree opened the way to understanding Bon.

If we can disregard some short texts found in Central Asia, we can deduce that the pre-Buddhist religion of Tibet had to undergo a vast process of evolution to become able to compete with the incomparably more solid doctrinal structure of Buddhism. We have to keep in mind also that many of the scriptures which confront us today as part of the doctrinal edifice of Bon were written at a comparatively late period, and under the obvious influence of Buddhism. From Buddhism too came the classification of the Bon scriptures into two collections, bKa’ ’gyur (containing the revelation of gShen rab) and bsTan ’gyur. The teachings of Bon began to take on literary form, it seems, at about the same time that Buddhism started to penetrate into Tibet. The ritual customs, for example, which had until then been transmitted according to tradition by the exorcists and Bon priests underwent a process of codification. This codification took on ever greater dimensions as the interest in doctrinal and theoretical matters grew for the reasons mentioned. The original rituals had at their base the goal of assuring
protection and assistance to the person of the king, the tribal chieftains and privileged families, as with the rituals of the folk religion today, still concerned with defence against the powers of evil in situations of crisis and of danger to life. Such customs provided the base on which a doctrinal super-structure could gradually be constructed. This took place under the influence not only of Buddhism, but also of other religious concepts and doctrines, knowledge of which the Tibetans owed to their Central Asian conquests, and to their contacts with China and India. The Bon traditions themselves preserve allusions to particular places of origin of the most famous masters and codifiers of their doctrine. Areas named include Bru zha (Gilgit and neighbouring regions) and Zhang zhung, a geographical term normally used for West Tibet but which also served as the name of a very much larger region extending from the west of the country to the north and north-east (a region within which eight main languages and twenty-four less important languages were spoken). In addition masters from Kha che (Kashmir), from China and from the Sum pa are named. Gilgit (the same goes for Kashmir) indicates an area whose religion was strongly affected by Saivism, and in the immediate neighbourhood of which, in Hunza, gnostic teachings of origin both Iranian and Saivite had spread. These gnostic teachings found their expression in a famous book of the Ismaili schools, and enjoyed great popularity in this area. Zhang zhung also, that vast frontier land, was destined to transmit not only its indigenous religious ideas but also the echoes of foreign concepts. The Bon po tradition also knows a country called sTag gzig, a name which in Tibetan literature refers to the Iranian (or Iranian-speaking) world, or even the world of Islam. From all this we can deduce the influence of Saivism in the doctrinal field—an influence which was recognized by the Tibetan writers of treatises too (cf. e.g. No. 82). Admittedly some agreements with Saivite ideas can be explained indirectly through the mediation of the rDzogs chen (cf. p.82); in other words they may have taken place after this sect, which had much in common with Saivism, had exerted an influence on the systematization of the Bon po teachings. Other, clearly older, elements indicate perceptible influences of Iranian beliefs, especially, it would seem, those of Zurvanism. For example, an original god of the world is spoken of, Yang dag rgyal po, a deus otiosus, who existed when there was neither sun nor moon, nor time, nor the seasons, but only pure potentiality. Then two lights were born, one white and the other black, and these in their turn brought forth two creatures: out of the black light arose a black man, and out of the white light a white man. The black man represents the principle of negation, of Not-Being. He is armed, and is called Myal ba nag po, 'black grief'. From him originate the constellations and the demons, and also drought; he brings along
with him pestilence and misfortune of all kinds. Thus the demons, 'dre, srin, byur, began their sinister work, while faith in the lha was extinguished.

The white man, on the contrary, is the positive god, the good god of Being (cf.p.235). His name is sNang srid sems can yod pa dga' ba'i bdag po (also 'Od zer ldan, the Radiant), the principle behind all that is good. After he appeared the lha were worshipped again and the struggle to overcome the demons began. Here we obviously move in a world of concepts which has been affected by Zurvanism.

Other works of a didactic and theoretical character (No. 10) distinguish three aspects of existence: being in itself, existing from eternity (ye srid), inactive (byed mkhan la mi llos); being as active (byed byas srid); and the material causes thanks to which being unfolds itself and differentiates itself (rgyu mishan gyi srid). This speculative conception is bound up with another, according to which things exist by virtue of an essential nature which is inherent in them, just as in the external world the flame according to its nature strives upwards and water seeks its course downwards, or in the same way that in the human realm the instincts are at work inside man. Thus there exists a world of potentiality which is actualized through the intervention of a creator (byed mkhan). In this way being manifests itself in the various aspects of the world of appearance (snang srid), our world of existence.

The figure of the creator, who corresponds to the Isvara of certain Saivite schools, bears various names, among them sNang ba 'od ldan (No. 10, p.9), Kun snang khyab pa and Khri khug rgyal po. That which he creates has two aspects, the exterior world (phyi snod) and that contained within it (bsnyad), a division that corresponds to that between the Indian bhajana-loka and satta-loka. The cosmology which is attached to this is surely very old, and is throughout constructed on a dualist basis. From the breath which streamed out of the creator there emerged the two syllables hu hu, and, progressively, the entire universe. The creation of the contents of the world was brought about through the agency of a beneficent father (phan yab) and a father who created evil (gnod yab). One arose from a white egg, the other from a black egg; the former is lord of Being (yod pa), the latter is the lord of Non-Being (med pa) and the origin of the demonic powers (bdud). The name of the positive god varies in its orthography between the original form, Shangs po yab srid, and an alternative, Tshangs pa (=Skt. Brahma) which clearly betrays a contamination by religious terminology of Indian origin. The god born from the black egg is called bsKal med 'bum nag, though he has a beneficent mother (phan byed yum) at his side, born from the water and therefore called Queen-Lady of the Waters, Chu lcmam rgyal mo.

215
THE BON RELIGION

With this an unending theogony begins to unfold. From the union of Shangs po and Chu lecam, the Water Goddess, were born the eighteen brothers and sisters (srid pa'i ming sring), nine male and nine female beings. The first-born of the male beings was Srid rje 'brang dkar, the first of the sisters was gNam phyi gung rgyal, Goddess of Heavenly Space. According to other texts she is called simply A phyi gung rgyal; she is Srid pa'i sman (No. 2, p.5a), resides on Ti se, Mt Kailasa (loc.cit.), and is also called sman mo gNam phyi gung rgyal (ibid., p.12a.). She belongs to the innumerable class of the sman, female goddesses who enjoy great popularity in the folk religion of Tibet.

The creations of the black, malevolent god produce illness, plague, famine, arms, and in brief all the forces opposing being, in the same way that Anra Mainyu (Ahriman) is opposed to Ahura Mazda (Ohrmazd) in Zoroastrian mythology, or that the nature of darkness is opposed to that of light. Each of the nine sons and each of the nine daughters is united in turn with other goddesses or gods (themselves emanations, sprul), and in this way various classes of divine beings are born. These beings, lha, are ambivalent in nature, not exclusively malevolent. In the same way the gods of the four seasons were born, and also the twelve goddesses who preside over the twelve animals over the twelve-year calendrical cycle, and other deities who have the power to rule various tribes of demons and make them submit to their will.

The malevolent creation proceeds in a similar way. It encompasses the shi, the dmu, the gnod, the bgegs, the sri, the klu, the bdud, the the'u rang and the spun dgu. Here we see a colourful world of gods and demons, in which opposing beings co-exist without being mutually exclusive. It is worth noting that even the tradition has preserved the memory of a layer of beliefs and rituals which were gradually modified and assimilated to each other, and of a primitive, preliterate state in which various forms of exorcism and magic co-exist. These forms, as we have seen, have survived in the folk religion, above all in the funeral rituals (as far as the placing of tombs is concerned) and in the protection of the living from the evil threatening them from the dead or from demons.

The idea of the multiplicity of souls (bla, la), of which we have already spoken, goes back without doubt to this primitive sub-stratum of Tibetan folk religion, and can be placed alongside similar concepts of neighbouring peoples. Concordances and differences will emerge more clearly if one bears in mind the historical situation in which the religion treated here developed. Tibet had still not reached political unity, but was divided into various little states or tribal divisions, according to a tradition which surely reflects an actual state of affairs (e.g. No. 85, ja, p.4b). The twelve Sil'ma, and later forty minor kings,
fought among themselves, besides having constantly to fear invasions by neighbouring countries. Each of these local rulers had power only over a limited area, which was ethnically not entirely homogenous; he gave his name to this area, or received his name from it. In these little states affairs were directed by a number of powerful families, who traced back their family tree to a heavenly ancestor, often in the form of a mountain, and performed corresponding rituals.

The sacred places, both those of the plains and those in the mountains, were called gsas mkhar or gsas khang. During the twelve years in which gShen rab mi-bo accomplished his work of revelation and carried out his first mission (No. 31) he visited each year a mountain which was a gsas mkhar. The use of the number 360 in this context is especially striking, and is surely not without reference to astrology. A well-known family of gods, the G'i khod or Ge k'od, contains 360 members, and there are also 360 gsas mkhar. 360 is the number of languages in which Bon was written, and from which gShen rab mi-bo translated them into only one language, the 'language of the svastika' (g.yung drung skad), out of which the various peoples retranslated the holy texts again into their own languages. The concept of the gsas mkhar has not vanished, though the name is now restricted to the special vessels or receptacles for the protective gods on houses or on mountains.

In a religious context in which mountains are held to be sacred, the motif of birth from a mountain or from a cave is found in connection with numerous localities centring about Ti se. For example, the King of Zhang zhung, Tun yar mu khrod, an emanation (sprul pa) of Tshad med 'od ldan, had no sons. One day a herdsman told him that, following his oxen who were at pasture, he had heard a voice coming from a rock. The king went to the place in question and had the rocks torn aside; there appeared to him an eight-year-old boy, whose form was woven from the light of the rainbow. This story has doctrinal ornamentation closely bound up with it; the child answered questions put to him by saying that his father was the void (stong), his mother gSal ba ye shes (radiant transcendent consciousness), and his radiant body the identity of light (gsal) and void (stong). He said that he came from beginning without birth (skyed med klong) and was going to immaterial being (dgag med dbyings) (cf. No. 2, p.25a). All these however are later additions, as can be seen from the terminology of Buddhist origin. To some degree it can be asserted that this Bon religion, like the folk religion, appears different in the various regions where it is found. Despite certain common characteristics, it expresses religious ideas of a variety that escapes any classification, although the nature of many powers remains essentially the same. The powers which survive in the folk religion, and the fragments of myths relating to them, are remnants of a religious world of the past, which have succeeded in entering
either Buddhism or Bon through the tenacity of the belief in powers which intervene in life and in the work of men.

The theogonic conceptions are equally numerous and various in nature, though here too we are essentially concerned with the same kinds of powers in all cases. The tendency to distinguish between the profitable and the harmful, in order to regulate the relations between man and man, appears to dominate. Traces of divine couples, father-mother, heaven-earth, are not lacking. Thus we find the union between the goddess of heaven, A phyi gung rgyal or gNam phyi gung rgyal, and a god of heaven, gNam gyi lha rgod thog pa, and also an earth-goddess, Sa rgyal dong gi dbal mo, along with an earth-god, Sa bla dog rum or Sa yi lha ’od. Similarly there is a water-god, Chu lha, from whom serpents come, or a water-goddess (Chu leam, cf.p.215), and so on. In some genealogies the sun is female. Many are the gods of the seasons and of the twelve-year calendrical cycle; then there are the gods of the arts and sciences, Yi ge pa (‘he who can write’), bZo lha (‘the artist’, bzo), gSo byed pa (‘the master of healing’). Some of these divine figures have a bellicose nature and are enemies of the forces of evil; among these are dgra ’dul, rgod ’dul and nad ’dul (‘defeater of illnesses’). To these can be added the ancestor gods of particular clans, sTod, A zha, Zhang zhung. Many classes of gods are ambivalent in nature, like the bdud, dam, gnyan; they oscillate between the good creation and the evil creation, where we also meet the mKha’ lding, a legendary bird of Bon po mythology which is the enemy of the Khyung generally associated with the good creation. The most malevolent powers against which man has to defend himself are the male sri and female srid mo, who dwell in cemeteries and at gates. An evil god rules over dreams which bring misfortune. As can be seen, we are dealing with a classification into pairs of opposites, though it is indefinite in that the same powers are cited sometimes in the good column of the list, sometimes in the bad, following the psychic reactions of men. Nothing however allows one to define Bon as a religion characterized exclusively by the worship of heaven. Such worship only takes place in special circumstances and at particular moments, that is when there is mention of a gNam Bon, a ‘Bon of heaven’.

It is impossible to classify these deities in a completely logical way, partly because it is often a question of local ancestor gods, another indication that each country originally possessed a chief god of its own, particularly an ancestor-mountain. The list given in the bibliography as No. 38 (cf. Tucci, 1949) provides an indicative example, in which the equating of individual gods (srid pa’i chags pa’i lha dgu, cf. above, p.210) with particular mountains emerges clearly, beginning with ‘O de gung rgyal, to this day the name of a mountain in the region of ‘Ol kha. The same can be seen from the kings of Tibet. Seven of them
descended onto mountains, three (beginning with gNya' khri btsan po) at Lha ri gyang tho in rKong po, two onto the Potala of Lhasa, and two at Sham po la rise in Yar klungs. The mountains where the ancestor descended or on which he lived acquire special sacredness, and cosmogonic or theogonic accounts or complex philosophical attempts at interpretation become attached to them. Because of their sacred nature such mountains become in a sense the soul of the country, they assure its perpetuity, and protection for the men living at their feet. The most famous example of this kind is Ti se, Mt Kailasa in West Tibet. It towers under the heavenly sphere like a parasol with eight ribs (rtsibs) and above the earth like an eight-petalled lotus, like a spread-out carpet (No. 2, p.3a). It is the navel of the world ('Jam bu gling lte ba, No. 2, p.28b), seat of the sky-goddess gNam phyi gung rgyal or Srid pa'i sman (No. 2, p.5a).

Ti se is Bon ri, the Bon Mountain, or Zhang zhung bon ri, the Bon Mountain of Zhang zhung; it is bla ri, bla ri gangs dkar Ti se (No. 2, p.21), Soul-Mountain. The Soul-Mountain of Zhang zhung is a ladder which simultaneously ascends to heaven and descends from heaven (mtho ris them skar), and it thus has the same function as the dmu thag or gnam thag, the 'heavenly cord' which links heaven and earth (No. 2, p.14b). The emanation-body of gShen rab descended onto this mountain. The host of Ge khod gods has its palace there. According to a tradition followed by the Pad ma thang yig (No. 3, p.245) there are 360 of these gods; the identification of Ti se with the axis of the world, about which revolves the year with its 360 days, is obvious. The mountain is imagined as an enormous mchod rten made of rock-crystal, or as a palace where various families of gods reside. It has four gates:rgya stag (Chinese tiger), rus sbal (tortoise), bya dmar (red bird) and g.yu 'brug (turquoise dragon), which have the duty of guarding the four cardinal points, East, North, West and South.

Through the adoption of elementary philosophical ideas representing a middle way between rDzogs chen and Saivism these concepts became transformed into symbols. The 'means' (thabs) leading to salvation was symbolically identified with the father—mountain, while Lake Manasarovar (Ma pham) came to represent the mother, the symbol of transcendent consciousness (ye shes) (No. 2, p.17a). Here we are evidently dealing with a gnostic interpretation superimposed on previously existing mythic concepts, in other words those of the mountain—father and the lake—mother. Elsewhere the question is raised of how the apparently existent world (snang srid) has come about. From where has this existence (srid) come forth, and how? It derives from a principle existing ab aeterno and designated klong (a term used also by the rNying ma pa); it is born from bon nyid, that is from ye nyid stong pa. The expression bon in this imitation of Buddhist
doctrine has the meaning of chos (Skt. dharma), so that bon nyid corresponds to chos nyid (dhamma), infinite potential existentiality, from which all that we ascribe reality to, or which appears to us as an object, as an element of existence (Skt. dharma) arises. Bon nyid is thus the void, ye nyid stong pa (cf. p.215). From this initial state or first phase there subsequently arises (second phase) a liberation, a process of actualization (grol) such that the possibility inherent within the ‘void’ frees itself and takes on form.

The third phase consists of the process of divine emanation (sprul) itself. In this complex of ideas the ancient indigenous cosmogonic concepts re-enter even more perceptibly. Characteristic of this moment is the apparition of light streaming out of the snow of Mt Ts'e and the waters of Lake Ma pham. The fourth phase is characterized by the formation of the five elements, which manifest themselves in the cosmic egg. The fifth phase is called brdol, springing forth, emanation, in other words each of the five elements manifests itself in accordance with its own proper nature. The sixth phase is formed by the birth ('byung ba) of a miraculously produced body (emanation-body, sprul pa), dBal chen ge khod, accompanied by his following, 360 gods in all. The seventh phase is that of illusion or miracle (rdzu ‘phrul) and is characterized by the birth of sridi kyi g.yag po dkar po, the White Yak of Existence. The eighth phase is the ‘fall’ of the yak, in other words its descent into Zhang zhung, the land of Bon. In the ninth and last phase takes place the ‘coming’ (byon), the arrival of Shel gyer in the form of the dGra bla of Bon; the yak descends from heaven on to the mountain and thus goes out into the world. Thereupon he tears with his horns the mountains to right and left, and the earth becomes covered with flowers (No. 2, pp.17a ff.). With this the creation is completed.

This cosmic myth, in which a yak is given the function of making the earth habitable and suitable for the epiphany of the dGra bla (= lha), has clearly been interpolated in a specifically doctrinal context. Ge khod is the principle of other emanations from his heart; (a) Ye shes lha bdud 'dul gsang ba drag chen, God of Transcendent Consciousness, Secret, Conqueror of the bDud or demons, Most Violent God (with nine heads and eighteen arms), accompanied by his paredra (yum); he in his turn emanates (b) Ku byi mang ske in the form of a body of co-fruition (longs spyod rdzogs kyi sku, Skt. sambhogakaya) of green colour (one head, two arms); from him emanates (c) A ti mu wer, without ornaments, naked.

According to another cosmogony or theogony contained within the same text (No. 2, p.2b) existence liberates itself from the Absolute-Void, from its spontaneous cause; the great mother of potential existentiality (dbyings) emanated existentiality itself. gShen lha 'od dkar was emanated out of the light, Shangs po bum khris from the rays, the
Master gShen rab from the wind, A ti mu woe from the plane of mind, Ku byi mang (s)ke from the plane of the word, dBar chen ge khod from the physical plane.

The simultaneous presence of various schemes in the same text is noteworthy here; their separate elements evidently came from different localities, social groups or traditions.

These cosmo-gonic, theo-gonic and genealogical ideas, differing from place to place, have remained alive as long as they have continued to be transmitted as tradition in particular families; the claims to divine origin contained within them naturally promoted their continuance. In other cases such family traditions were taken over by other family groups linked to them by kinship or otherwise. Such reciprocal influences and fusions are clearly recognizable if these myths are submitted to a careful examination.

Various types of fusion can be observed. The most important is that officially recognized by Buddhism and already appearing in early works such as the bKa’ thang sde lugs. Here we have works that transmit aspects of pre-Buddhist thought or of tenacious survivals within Buddhism. There are texts, for example, of the Sa skya pa, the g. Yu thog pa, the sTag lung pa or of the Phag mo gru pa, which begin from a creation of the world out of an egg and a first divine being, Ye smon rgyal po, and arrive progressively at the divine ancestor born on a mountain in a miraculous fashion and protected by a dragon, a tiger and a vulture.

The many-layered nature and the multiplicity of cosmogonic myths, which never fully fuse with each other into a single account, but are transmitted onwards in a literature clearly influenced by local traditions, confirms the correctness of what was said above: this mythical world is dominated by a basic cosmogonic interest (although it appears in the most varied forms), namely the question of the origin of the gods, of the clan chiefs, of the human race. These are all seen as proceeding from a primal state which is more than simply chaotic or formless; it is a primal state of void potentiality from which, directly or indirectly, the primal egg (one or several) is born, from which the world arises or rather from which is born the being who calls the world in all its aspects into existence. However, the tradition of a cosmic tree, from which four eggs of various colours originate, is also known. Alternatively the origin of the world is attributed to the fragmentation of an original being, the various parts of whose body give origin to the present world (srid). Another tradition places at the beginning a primal being (Ye smon rgyal po, Shangs po) equipped with demiurgic functions and given various names in different accounts (Tucci, 1949, p.712).

Often the primal state of non-being or of the pure potentiality of being consists simply of a light—an indication of the extremely ancient
origin of that ‘photism’, that doctrine of light, which was later organized into a theoretical system through the Tantras, but which had long been an object of reflection for the Tibetans, who had populated their indigenous Olympus with numerous gods of light. In another section of the cosmology the klu play a significant role. These beings correspond to the Sanskrit naga, ‘serpents’, and in general indicate the powers of the earth and of the waters on which the prosperity of agriculture is believed to depend. An entire cycle of myths has grown up around these beings, forming the theme of an extensive literature. The most important book is the klu 'bum, the ‘Hundred-thousand klu’, which is divided into three parts: white klu, multicoloured klu (khra klu), black klu.

The burning problem of origins, which so preoccupied the Tibetans at all times, is reflected also in the social domain; it finds an echo in religious organization and its function of protecting society. How and why did the various social and civil institutions, the various customs and arts arise? Since the world took form, since it became a mode of being (srid), man has intervened to create the necessary ordering and to give an appropriate form to the habits of his life. This process, however, has brought a new situation into existence which often disturbs or injures those powers who hitherto called particular domains their own. The building of a house, the erecting of a tent on a particular spot, building a bridge over a river, digging in the earth—each of these are intrusions into the domains of other powers which require expiation through appropriate rituals. The Bon po sources account for these rituals or narrate the origins of particular customs in the appropriate contexts. Generally they narrate an event which took place in illo tempore and then add ‘from this derives such and such a custom’ (gtan tshigs kyang de nas byung, e.g. No. 32, p.21b), in other words this event was the origin of the custom. The bards (sgrung) treat of these subjects (cf. pp.207,232) and their narratives not only provide an explanation for the origin of the custom concerned, but also contain the assurance that no harmful effect can arise from it, and that its repetition will evoke once more the primal moment when after an offence had been committed against the divine and demonic powers the sure means to remedy it was found. In short, the recital expiates the offence which has taken place and provides protection against its consequences. However, the sgrung can also recite stories of miracles, for example the extraction of gold with the aid of the spirits of the dead, the control of the ma sangs demons, and so on.

The same variety appears in the genealogical trees generally accepted by the historians of later times. Thus we possess an extended list of kings, in which one king follows another until semi-historical times, culminating with Srong btsan sgam po. Since this order of succession was
certainly not compiled until after Sröng btsan sgam po had unified Tibet, this genealogical tree is naturally to be examined carefully rather than accepted as literally true. The first thing that strikes our attention and awakes suspicion is the equating of the remote ancestor gNyā' khri btsan po with an Indian king. Here we are clearly concerned with a fiction established after the triumph of the Buddhist doctrine, which was intended to bring the royal family into connection with India, even (according to some sources) with the family of the Buddha.

This list of kings corresponds to the tripartite division of existence: gnam, heaven; bar, intermediate space; sa, earth. Two intermediate groups are however interpolated, stod kyi steng, the rulers 'above' (or the rulers over the high-lying part of Tibet) and 'og gi btsan, the 'lower' kings. In reality these interpolations indicate breaks or interruptions in the sequence. The later kings ('og gi btsan po) begin with Lha tho tho ri, the king to whom is ascribed the first miraculous contact with Buddhist teachings. Without doubt we are dealing with a legend here, but we can perhaps approach a more solidly founded tradition with its help. What, however, does the list mean as a whole? We have already spoken of gNyā' khri btsan po. Gri gum indicates a definite break according to most opinions; many things changed during the period of his rule. In this connection, an allusion is also made to a conflict between his majestas (mnga' thang) and magical power (mthu). Earlier he is placed in connection with Myang ni in gTsang; however, there is nothing to prove a special link with the family of Sröng btsan sgam po. Then, after his death, he was given the name 'Killed by the Dagger', although other sources call him Ge mun (No. 35, p.15). Some traditions, which connect his heresy with the arrival of teachers from Kashmir, appear to confirm that he belongs to the western regions of Tibet.

According to Myang chung (No. 4, p.139a) the palace of Gri gum was at Tshechen near Gyantse. The uncertainty betrayed by the hesitation between two different forms, and the eventual return to the name hallowed by tradition, in which the word gri, knife, appears as the basic element, leads one to think of the introduction of particular sacrificial rituals. The whole context suggests the possibility of an infiltration of ideas, carried perhaps by immigrants coming from the countries to the west of Tibet; survivals in many forms of local religious traditions, here and there suffused by Saivite elements (the disposal of the dead reminds one more of the customs of the Kafirs than of strictly Hindu mortuary practices), which may nevertheless have been indigenous in the areas in contact with Indian culture.

Here one should not forget that since the most ancient times the region around Mt Kailasa and Lake Manasarovar has been a significant centre of attraction for Indian pilgrims and believers from all the
adjoining regions. This is indicated even by the presence of Hindu temples and deities (Tucci, 1959).

What has been said compels us to bring up a related theme: the problem of the evolution within the Bon religion itself, the question of its development in the context of the transformation of the life and customs of Tibetan society, brought about through contact with other peoples or by the intrusion of religious concepts of other kinds. We find the echo of such modifications not only in the events of the time of Gri gum, but also in the traditions that have come down to us. Thus No. 82, for example, speaks of three consecutive phases in Bon: 'jol Bon (mjol Bon in Lalou, 1952, p.350), 'khyar Bon and 'gyur Bon. 'jol Bon was the first of these stages, still without literature. Here it was still simply a question of overcoming the harmful powers. The second stage of development, called 'khyar Bon, 'deviating Bon', to be equated with dur Bon, was concerned above all with funeral rites. It began with King Gri gum and was the result of a collaboration of many religious masters or heads of schools of whom nothing is now known. In other words, this phase marked the beginning of a period of development in theory and organization and of contact with other religious centres, possibly including some outside Tibet. The third stage is called 'gyur Bon, 'modified Bon', because in this phase the Bon religion felt it necessary to take on a doctrinal form, which it had previously done without, and perhaps also to change certain rituals, as well as making its own a significant part of the Buddhist teachings. This is apparently the period introduced by gShen rab, who is eventually portrayed in the Bon po literature as an explicit Bon po correlate to the Buddha. Even conversions and defeats of the demons of localities and mountains are ascribed to him, closely resembling those which the legends centring about Padmasambhava tell of that miracle-worker (No. 33). It is difficult to say on what sources such a tradition could have been based. However, this development evidently corresponds to an inner law; from a primitive starting-point of purely magical or shamanistic character, varying from place to place, we come in the time of Gri gum (who doubtless indicates an especially significant factor in the development of the Bon religion) to the first beginnings of an organizational process probably brought about through the contrast between the royal authority and the magical power of Bon. As we will see, it is also possible that Gri gum means rather more than this; he is perhaps to be seen as the representative of the cult of chthonic deities, in opposition to the cult of heavenly gods. Earth-burial, the appearance of dur Bon ('Bon of funeral practices') and so on indicate the return of the body to the earth; a megalithic culture, resting on funeral rites and the rites of constructing tombs, breaks into another culture, in which, although the klu still play a significant part (they have an important
and central role in the tripartite division of beings in the world into lha, men and klu), the heavenly gods, the gods of light, the gods of white light, enjoy the definite favour of believers. In any case it is well established that a significant break in funeral customs follows the death of Gri gum. Concerning the time before him the tradition speaks of an ascent of the king to heaven with the help of a cord connecting heaven and earth. In such a manner the dead king left no trace of himself behind; he vanished like a rainbow. At the time of King Gri gum however the cord broke, and the corpse was enclosed in a coffin and thrown in the river.

The memory of the cord connecting heaven and earth is also found in other family histories, though various causes are given for its breaking. The mode of disposal of the dead also varies according to the various classes or groups of kings listed in the old Tibetan classification of dynasties: in vessels, sarcophagi, rivers, as is still the custom today in many parts of Tibet. It is certain, however, that the technique and architecture of the royal tombs was determined in its fundamental traits by the time of Srong btsan sgam po (Hoffmann, 1950; Tucci, 1950). Concerning this king the tradition speaks of subterranean chambers, nine in number (nine and thirteen are the sacred numbers of the Bon po), and a central chamber. The corpse was placed in a silver coffin, while immense treasures were placed in the other rooms. Along with the funeral rites there took place sacrifices and the burial of men and horses (Lalou, 1952), though out of respect for Buddhism the appropriate chapter of the bKa’ thang sde lnga says no more about them. Tumuli like those of the Tibetan kings at Yar klungs are found in other regions of Tibet as well. Very frequent also are tombs of megalithic type in the form of a circle, with or without a central stone. I saw the greatest burial place of this kind near Seng ge rdzong, on a mountain peak. There clearly stands behind the nine chambers of the tomb of Srong btsan the intention of giving the tomb the form of a magical projection of the world (Tucci, 1950, p.9); the king at the centre was to represent the axis of the world for time immemorial, while the treasures piled up in the tomb, especially gold which was conceived of as the element of life, would guarantee the good fortune and prosperity of the kingdom.

Here one can point out that the figure of King Gri gum corresponds to King Glang dar ma in the Buddhist tradition (cf.p.12). Both are described as opponents of the prevailing religion, although in many Bon po texts Glang dar ma in no way appears as a victim of his zeal for the Bon po faith. Just as Glang dar ma was killed by a monk, dPal gyi rdo rje, in order to put an end to the persecution of the doctrine, so Gri gum was murdered by one of his ministers. The explanation for Gri gum’s murder appears to lie in his hostile attitude to the Bon religion as it
existed in his time, which he wished to submit to a renewal. Both kings were killed by an arrow-shot, though with respect to *Gri gum* the tradition wavers between a dagger (*gri*) and an arrow. Both kings were possessed by a *gdon*. In short, a kind of model of a schismatic king has taken form. The body of *Gri gum* was laid to rest in a closed coffin of copper and thrown into the river. The dead man reached *rKong po*, where a demon took possession of him. His sons sought in vain to ransom the body, but according to other sources a king, *Mang po rje*, succeeded in overcoming the ‘dagger-demon’ or ‘dagger-death’ (*gri shi*) and brought the corpse to *Yar klungs*. When the corpse was uncovered, the sound *nga ra ra* came out of it, and the place has been called *Ngar pa thang* since that time. People went around the corpse for 360 days (the *ge khod* circle around *Ti se* conceived of as the *axis mundi* for 360 days too); then it was buried on the peak of a mountain. Since then it has been considered as the *deus loci* of the mountain.

One of *Gri gum*’s sons, *Sha khri* or *khyi* (according to other sources *Bya khyi*) is equated with *sPu de gung rgyal*; he moved to *rKong po*. The same person is also called *rKong dkar po* (No. 28, p.127) and *rKong rje dkar po* (No. 110, *ka*, p.21b). Some sources, however, connect *Sha khyi* = *sPu de gung rgyal* with *Yar klungs*. Nor is it clear how the identification of *Sha khyi* or *Bya khyi* with *sPu de gung rgyal* was arrived at. (One should note however that in some sources his name begins a new list of kings, the so-called Six *Legs.* We can deduce that we here have to do with another family tree, which was inserted into the genealogy which had become orthodox. The most significant character trait ascribed to *sPu de gung rgyal* is his authorship of social rules aimed at creating a more secure and active existence for mankind.

The history of the first name on the list of kings, *gNyag khri*, also requires careful examination. The situation becomes particularly complex if one looks at the statements referring to his descent. While the official tradition states that his descent took place at *Sham po lha ri* in *Yar klungs*, other sources (including No. 85, *ja*, p.6b) place it at *Lha ri gyang tho* in *rKong po*. As I hope to have shown in a study at present under preparation, the entire orthodox genealogy of the Tibetan kings has an explicitly fragmentary character; we are concerned without doubt with a list revised to incorporate other dynastic and clan genealogies, originating from various centres and put together artificially. These centres include *Myang ro*, *rKong po* and *Yar klungs*. Much the same is true of ‘*O de gung rgyal*, who is also regarded in the Tibetan edicts as the first king, originating from heaven; he seems to have nothing to do with *sPu de gung rgyal*. As has already been indicated above, ‘*O de gung rgyal* is the name of a deity-mountain south of ‘*Ol kha*, but in this connection too there is mention of a descent from heaven, as occurs with almost all mountain-ancestors. *sPu rgyal* is not a
THE BON RELIGION

mountain; according to one tradition he descended from heaven (No. 110, ca, p.18), while according to other, more usual accounts he is identical with one of the sons of Gri gum, though no reason is given for the new name. For this reason too we come to the conclusion already drawn above, that in Tibet numerous genealogies existed side by side (as many family trees as there were powerful families!), and that the origin attributed to Strong bisan sgam po is a composite of fairly early date, as emerges also from the variations of the Tun-huang texts (Bacot et al., 1940); it can certainly not be taken as an authentic genealogy. Its compilers were probably motivated by the desire to incorporate into the new genealogy the genealogies of families allied by marriage with Strong bisan sgam po's family, but excluded through the play of political forces. Through this device the ruling dynasty came to form the crown and conclusion of a complex historical sequence, and became heirs to a sacredness based upon these heavenly ancestors and on the sacred ancestor-mountains. In this sense it seems probably to me that there are at least three different tribal chiefs or ancestral lords involved in this account from different regions and periods: gNyi khri, sPu rgyal and 'Od gung rgyal. Gri gum appears to be an isolated figure. The details given show what an impenetrable maze we are in when considering these cosmogonies, theogonies and genealogies. The confusion is increased still further in that in all the important centres the traditions predominating locally have had attached to them new, more or less arbitrary connections with particular powers which have gradually claimed and found general recognition, and been assembled in particular groups. The lha of Ngar pa thang, for example, were connected in this way with the cycle of myths concerning Gri gum. In this manner local cults came to be brought more and more into connection with other myths and to be merged with them. 14

The various kinds of Bon to which writers often refer, such as Heaven Bon, Bon of funeral practices and so on should also not be understood in the sense of a temporal sequence. The question is much more one of a kind of division of labour, or of an attempt to force into a unified system the multiplicity of lived religious experiences, each emphasizing one or another magical and religious motif according to the individual locality. In this way a classification into nine gshen was arrived at at a certain point in time. These gshen were classes of priests or magicians whose duties, according to some texts (No. 31, cf.p.228), had been assigned by gShen rab mi bo (cf. above, p.224) during the twelve-year period in which, after the fashion of the Buddha, he performed his twelve 'memorable acts' (mdzad pa bu gnyis). To each of these nine groups corresponded a 'vehicle' of its own; as I have already mentioned, after the systematization of the Bon religion its

227
followers speak of nine vehicles\textsuperscript{15} or groups of scriptures, as do the rNying ma pa. The principal scriptures of Bon are divided into ‘four doors’ (sgo bzhi) and ‘five treasures’ (mdzod lnga),\textsuperscript{16} and the nine vehicles are also divided into two groups, a first group of four called ‘cause’ (rgyu) and a second group of five called ‘fruit’ (bras bu).

Following this classification, the first vehicle was that of the phya gshen. In contemporary usage, outside of Bon circles, phya means chance, omen, good fortune, prosperity (in some writings on Bon religion the term is erroneously given as cha). We find phya in association with another term, gyan, which has a similar meaning of good fortune.\textsuperscript{17} The duty and function of this class of magicians consisted principally in preparing gto (generally nine in number, cf. No. 37, p.27) (cf.p.176). Three hundred and sixty types of gto were known, with 84,000 magical modes of action and remedies. They were practised according to the investigation of omens (dpjad bcas ka) along with the offering of libations (gsers skyems), participation in ceremonies with chang, meat and so on. Another function of these priests was the use of the ju thig\textsuperscript{18} (No. 85, ja, p.8b), primarily in divination. Through the ju thig they were able to distinguish the profitable from the dangerous, and therefore to function as diviners or augurs.

The second vehicle was revealed to the snang gshen, who specialized in the four ‘doors’ of the ritual songs (gsers sgo bzhi). They possessed a small drum made of juniper wood, thanks to which they could fly through the air. Their characteristic sign was the bal tshon sna lnga, five-coloured ornamental threads of wool (No. 85, ja, p.8b however attributes these to the ’phrul gshen). They specialized in the use of glud and yas (cf.pp.176ff.). On their heads they wore a woolen tuft (bal thod can, No. 85, ja, p.8b). They were trained in magical operations to bring about the well-being and prosperity of their clients. Rituals to create prosperity and blessing thus fell within their field of action.

The third vehicle was that of the ’phrul gshen, miracle-workers whose job it was to drive from the world the causes of misfortunes threatening or obstructing an individual or the community, in other words to remove hindrances (bar chad) of all kinds. They had the power of overcoming both human enemies (dgra) and hostile demonic powers (bgegs). They bore standards ornamented with figures of tigers, and wore jackets (stag sham thabs) and hats made of tiger-skin; they wore tiger-paws and tiger-teeth as ornaments. In their exorcistic ceremonies they offered tiger-flesh to the gods. These bloody sacrifices secured the continuity of the clan.

The fourth vehicle was that of the srid gshen, who took care of the living and the dead (gson gshin), in the sense that they protected the life of the living (gson po’i srog skyobs) and could recall the spirit of the dead.
This is a custom whose survival can still be seen in the folk religion (bla khug, cf.p.190). They could also secure a happy existence for the departed, although this is not described in detail. In any case it was they who influenced the fate of the dead, and they could even close the door of the god of death (gshed sgo) or of his assistants. They were armed; burial ceremonies and the construction of tombs fell within their competence. They correspond to the dur bon mentioned in other texts such as the Tun-huang fragment published by Lalou (1952). This text also names the two classes of phangs bon, great and small, as concerned with the funeral ceremonies (op.cit, pp. 351–2).

The fifth vehicle was that of the dge bsnyen gshen, who aided in the accumulation of merit and the cancellation of sins. In addition they were responsible for the exact separation between winter and summer, which probably means that they were responsible for the observance of the calendrical festivals.

The sixth vehicle contained the special teachings of the sixth Bon group, in other words those of the gyang drung bon, the ‘bon of the svastika’. The svastika of Bon is not identical to that widely used in Buddhism, but runs in the opposite sense (anticlockwise). The representatives of this group are also called Bon ascetics (drang srong bon); they had to follow a pure and irreproachable way of life (ma gisang ma spyod).

The seventh vehicle was reserved to the a dkar bon, the ‘bon of the white letter A’.19 They were trained particularly in the secret mantras (gsang sngags). According to the prescriptions of gShen rab they presided over the sacrifices offered to the divinities with nine vessels and nine gtor ma. Their symbol was the arrow (mi gyur mda’). They conferred the initiation into the secret mantras, they sang the songs called gshen glu, they could bring the world within their control through the power of their arts and ensure the normal course of natural events.

The eighth vehicle was in the possession of the ye gshen bon, who had the privilege of using the ju thig (cf.p.234) and thus had knowledge of past, present and future. We are concerned here with a late assimilation.

The ninth vehicle comprised the bla na med rgyud, the ‘Tantra of the highest class’ (as in Tantric Buddhism, cf.p.72) and was in the possession of the snang srid bon. Here we meet again the name of a class of gshen, which strengthens the supposition that the fifth to ninth groups of the classification should be given only secondary significance; within these groups the terminology and philosophical doctrines of Buddhism obtrude ever more perceptibly.

The whole classification evidently comes from a later period, and reveals the intention of ascribing twelve noteworthy ‘acts’ to gShen rab mi bo to correspond to those of the Buddha; each of these acts is placed in connection with a particular revelation and the event inserted into
the twelve-year cycle. In this way the twelve-year cycle is simultaneously justified in terms of its origin and its form.

The same classification given in No. 31 appears, with minor changes, in No. 82. Here the divisions are:

Group I (Vehicles of the Cause): phyag gshen, snang gshen, 'phrul gshen, srid gshen.

Group II (Vehicles of the Effect): dge bsmyen gshen, a dkar gshen, drang srong gshen, ye gshen.

Other sources, however, mention only the first four classes of gshen (gshen rigs bzhi, e.g. No. 85, ja, p.8b). They can also speak simply of the four classes (rigs bzhi). These are snang gshen, 'phrul gshen, phyag gshen (the text has cha gshen by mistake), and dur gshen, which corresponds to the srid gshen in other lists. We find the same list again in the rGyal rabs. No. 35, p.45, however, follows No. 28 and No. 31 in enumerating nine kinds of gshen and nine vehicles. The functions described for the first four classes are approximately the same as those in No. 28, with the introduction of a few other details such as the name of the god specially worshipped by each group: Gar babs btsan pa for the snang gshen, sBar gsas rgyam for the 'phrul gshen and rMa po for the srid gshen (the phyag gshen are not mentioned).\(^{20}\)

One should not conclude, however, that these four gshen classes exhaust the entire multiplicity of the Bon religion. Although the most important role was played by the gshen priests (priests is admittedly not a very appropriate term; it would be more correct to speak of magicians or exorcists), there can be no doubt that there were also other practitioners in existence, Bon po exorcists, snyun bon, smug bon, rlad bon (Lalou, 1952, p.353) and sman bon (ibid., p.355) whose task it was to collect the medicinal plants (sman) or who were perhaps responsible for the cult of the goddesses called sMan. There were also khris bon, gnyer bon, 'o bon, 'tshams bon, dmul bon (No. 29, p.3b).

In the description of a sacrifice carried out in the time of Khri srong lde brtsan yet other participants entrusted with various functions are mentioned. The description is contained in a text which is not very old, but it comes from a very much earlier source in which a very ancient tradition appears to be preserved (No. 32, p.62). On the occasion of the sacrificial ceremony numerous animals were killed, even including some antelopes. Nine bon mkhas, learned bon, were present and stood in the centre of the place of sacrifice, while to their right and left nine men endowed with great magical powers (mi mthu chen) took their places. Before them stood their sacrificial assistants (mechod g.yog) who had to kill the animals with their sacrificial knives (gri ri). In addition the ceremony required the presence of a ‘bon of the lustration’ (khrus bon); he had to submit the sacrificial animals to a ritual purification using a golden spoon, while the chu bon were
responsible for the invocation to the gods. These acts introduced the sacrificial ceremony. At its conclusion the gs\textit{hen bon} seized the animals by the horns to perform the sacrifice. Then the b\textit{shig bon} cut the animals to pieces, while the b\textit{se bon} were responsible for a ritually impeccable distribution of the pieces of meat. At the end the gr\textit{angs bon} had to count the pieces of meat; then he poured the blood into cups and placed these on the skins of the animals, while the meat was spread out on other skins. The ritual finished with loud cries.

\textit{Bon} is a generic term; as we have seen even the gs\textit{hen} are included among the \textit{bon}. In the text on the rites of the dead (Lalou, 1952) the m\textit{jol bon} direct the sacrifice; the d\textit{ur bon} and the p\textit{hangs bon}, who are named in the same text, do not take part in the sacrifice. The p\textit{hangs bon}, however, invite the dead to take part in the meal (cf. note 2, p.271, on the significance of the word \textit{bon}) and receive their souls. The s\textit{nyun bon}, s\textit{mag bon} and j\textit{ol bon} sing. The gs\textit{hen} or sku gs\textit{hen} are the actual sacrificial priests. They are helped by assistants. The term gs\textit{hen} is probably to be connected with gs\textit{hed} which means executioner, torturer (t\textit{she bar byed}). The sku gs\textit{hen}, however, is the protector of the king and is the head of the hierarchy (No. 35, p.26a); he must belong to the family (rigs) of the gs\textit{hen} on which the duties devolve on the king’s death.

It seems certain that in the period of the dynasties there already existed a religion which had its own books such as that edited by Lalou and others which we know only as fragments or from the extracts and commentaries included in later books. These early texts were manuals for ceremonies and liturgies used by various kinds of sacrificial priests specialized in particular functions. We can deduce this from the nomenclature contained in the texts and referred to in later documents. This multiplicity both of liturgical acts and also of celebrants who perform them, as well as of genealogies and cosmologies which were recited, at least on special occasions, shows that this religion was at the time of the dynasties already very complicated. It had its own mythology, its codified rituals and a pantheon that varied from place to place and was subject to extension and mutual influences; but all this was without a doctrinal structure comparable to that of Buddhism. This circumstance led to the progressive adoption by \textit{Bon}, perhaps through a master named gShen rab, of Buddhist doctrines and terminologies, within which, however, some of \textit{Bon}’s original intuitions survived.

As can be seen, the world of \textit{Bon} moved between theogonies, cosmogonies, genealogies and conjurations of ambivalent and hostile powers. It was dominated by funeral rituals for the protection of both the living and the dead, and it gave very great importance to divination. Evidently the preoccupation with the future overcame everything
else; no action could take place until the favourable and correct way had been established. This necessity was met by mo, divination. This was not only, and not originally, performed with dice, but especially through the use of the ju thig, those little divinatory cords whose interpretation was reserved to the phyag gshen. With their help it could be established what malevolent powers (gdon, cf.p.201) were to be feared in the immediate future and by what means these dangers could be eliminated. Such conjurations were performed by the gShen gnyan, the exorcists of ’dre and srin, who stood by the king’s side (No. 35, p.34).

We are here in the presence of a world which is without doubt far distant from the organization presented by Buddhism. Bon dominates the community in general and its leaders in particular, above all the king. In this sense it is said in some chronicles that the bon look after the life (’tsho) of the king or aid his ministers with word and deed, or that they keep in view the defence of the country’s borders.

Thus it comes about that some chroniclers maintain that society (chab srid) is protected by three groups of people, the bon, the sgrung and the lde’u. The concept of bon here includes the entire religious system which bears that name, its priests, the gshen and the other exorcists just discussed. The sgrung were the ‘bards’ who sing songs and heroic epics, family genealogies and cosmogonic myths. Their present-day successors are the sgrung pa, the bards who sing the epic of Ge sar, which has been the subject of an exhaustive study by Stein (1959a).

The narratives mentioned above and the fragments uncovered in Tun-huang are poetical works in metrical form which recount the history of particular families. In essence these consist of the same material which recurs over and over as the introduction to the family histories, and was not eliminated even after the triumph of Buddhist orthodoxy, although these stories not only have nothing to do with Buddhism, but reflect an essentially older substrate, faithfully transmitted from generation to generation. These accounts give not merely genealogical outlines, but detailed histories of the origin of the family concerned, of the ancestor’s descent from a mountain or from the sky (e.g. Po ti bse ru or the history of the Sa skya pa), of struggles with hostile powers, the overcoming of demons and so forth.

In these narratives cosmogonic myths also occur as introductory material. This myths usually have as their subject the transition from chaos (at first in nature, but also in society) to order and the successive social and cultural ‘discoveries’ which have benefited man; thus they form a mythical history from the origins onwards.

It would be interesting if we could establish at what season and on what occasions the sgrung came into action. Among other peoples this
happens in extraordinary moments and in special circumstances. The cosmogony, or the narration of the descent of a family onto the earth, was probably not an end in itself; these events may also have been represented in ritual, and the myth thus turned into a rite able to liberate magically operative powers. This could happen at the beginning of the year or at other solemn occasions, such as when departing from the hunt, on the occasion of calendrically fixed festivals or of the harvest, in other words whenever the return of the primal event necessitated its ritual re-enactment. The song of the *sgrung*, and the portrayal of particular heroes in masked dances, for which we have sporadic evidence, had surely not only the purpose of entertaining the crowd which had gathered. In a society such as that of Tibet there was, least of all at the beginning, not a single event to which a definite religious and social meaning was not attributed. The ceremonies centred about the *sgrung* had the task of commemorating and bringing to life once again that moment of origin in which the ancestors descended to the earth, in order to call down their help and protection on the society tracing its descent from them, and thus to ensure its continuation. The recitation of a myth of origin thus has the meaning of a restoration of a primitive state; this evocation of the origins (even if it only lasted for a brief moment) gave new strength to society and to the family dominating it, through the function innate within the ritual of making a connection between the three worlds (the heavenly world, the intermediate world and the world of men). The three worlds were brought together in the ritual in a unity which in daily life continually deteriorates and which is consequently always in need of renewal.

The narrative, given magical power through the ritual, brought about the return to the origins and thus the continuity of all that happens—a goal continually present to the mind of the Tibetan. The past is for him a *dpe*, an example or model to be repeated. The task of the ritual is precisely the continuous bringing of the model to mind. Thus in many songs, whose performance is accompanied by ritual dances, the repetition of events that happened in the previous year is evoked (Tucci, 1966, pp.94ff.). Sun, moon and harvest, all have been good. The ritual if fully accomplished will bring about the renewal of the same processes and natural events in the present.

That the retelling of the past has a liturgical function can also be deduced from the contents of numerous religious tractates, especially those concerned with exorcistic and magical liturgies (particularly with *mdos*). Some of the many examples given in these texts have already been mentioned in our discussion of the folk religion, which can be referred to here (cf.p.206).

These narratives are naturally particularly detailed when they are discussing the origins of magical practices or of the implements used
by the magicians. An example is the collection of stories in No. 33, cha, pp. 210ff., where the discovery of the ju thig, the divinatory cord, is narrated. The story begins with the illness of a queen and the consequent summoning of a soothsayer (mo pa), in other words a phya gshen, by the king. The magician-priest prepares a kind of mandala out of white felt (ling phying dkar po) and places the necessary implements on it: the arrow with the coloured bands, lustral water, incense, roasted barley; then he invokes the Mu ker dkar po (who consist of three brothers and three sisters) and makes an offering to the 360 bdud lha. Onto the mandala he throws three times the ju thig (bcu thig in the MS.) shar ba rkyen drug, which is called the dung gi ju thig because it consists of an arrow to which six threads of white wool are attached. If the oracle is negative, the magician-priest counsels the king to turn to gShen rab mi bo; only he can recognize the cause of the illness and the gdon responsible and so procure a remedy. This story offers a pretext for narrating the origin of the ju thig shar ba rkyen drug, which is regarded as a store-house or receptacle for the soul of the world and as an indispensable tool in divinatory and magical operations. It is made of the wool which once grew on the shoulders of the great Primal Sheep. This animal is ascribed a cosmogonic significance, and is called ‘Divine Sheep with the Great Wool’ (lug lha bal chen). It brings about the growth of barley, which gives flour, and it produces milk and butter. The 360 bdud lha taste it and are so enthusiastic that they say a la la; this exclamation, which expresses general satisfaction, is traced back to this event.

In the beginning there was nothing but heaven (gnam); from the essence of heaven earth was born; the sheep scratched the earth, and the turquoise g.yu (which is placed upon the felt mandala) came from it. All this happened in the course of an incessant conflict between the two mighty opponents Ye rje (Ye smon rgyal po), who ruled on the Mountain of Being (yod ri), and his enemy Nyam rje who lived in his castle of darkness. From the forge of a smith dark smoke arose, which condensed into a cloud from which rain fell; Ye rje was soaked through, but the sheep made him a hat out of its wool, to protect him against the downpour. His opponent shot an arrow which, however, hit not Ye rje but his hat. Ye rje laid the arrow on the felt mandala and decorated it with a silver mirror and a piece of white silk; he entrusted all these objects to the 360 gods.

On another occasion there was again strife between Ye rje and Nyam rje, but lha and bdud assembled in the open space between the two. The lha took their refuge at the Mountain of Being (yod ri), the bdud went to the black mountain, the Mountain of Coal (sol ri). This event inspired in the ‘witness’ (he who has to distinguish truth from falsehood) the phrase lha rgyal lo, ‘the gods are victorious’. Out of this occasion too
arose the separation between the world of the gods and the world of srin, between oath and perjury, in general. Then the art of counting with pebbles arose, and so astrology developed, along with the use of pebbles to predict the future (dpyad), divination by means of dice, and so on.

When Ye rje and Nyam rje were on friendly terms, trees grew in the space between them whose leaves were of silk cloth and whose buds sprouted forth like treasures. Their sap was ambrosia, their bark protected life, weapons appeared out of their thorns, their flowers were festive ornaments. Who was able to explain (dpyad) the meaning of these appearances? A Phya g.yang dkar explained them; he had come riding on a sheep, the divine arrow with white pennants in his hands. He came to the Mountain of Existence (yod ri) and here he divined what would happen: eternal conflict between the law of the lha and the law of the bdud, the struggle between Ye rje and Nyam rje, antagonism between the world of Being and the world of Non-Being, but in the end the victory of the god of Being. His name Phya g.yang dkar, ‘he who is endowed with mystical foresight, he who knows’, thus acquired its full meaning. Since this event it has been possible to predict the future of the world.

How was the sheep born, though? From a wish of Ye smon rgyal po, who was disturbed that all the riches of the world, jewels, gold, silver were being treated as stones of no use to men. Therefore he took the counsel of his consort Chu leam (Water Consort) and went to the summit of the Mountain of Existence (yod ri). Here he thought deeply about how his wish could be fulfilled. He concentrated within himself all the saps and vital substances of heaven, earth and the elements, and wished that a being might arise able to free the creatures from hunger and thirst. After he had stayed for three days on the white peak of the Mountain of Existence the sheep, the means of nourishment and exchange for the human race, appeared to him. From the shoulder of this sheep came the wool of the ju thig called shar ba khyen drug. It could not be held still, but began to fly and reached first the tree of heaven, then the khyung (a kind of eagle), then seven of the mountains surrounding the earth, and finally the tortoise which supports the world; it then returned to the Mountain of Existence and fell down again on the divine sheep. With it the god wove six threads, whose ends were called castle (mkhar). The ju thig was called gur chen (‘great tent’) and was placed on the mandala (lha gzhi). The Phya g.yang dkar used it for his prophecies concerning the past, the future, the present, dangers and advantages, illnesses and death, the kind of burial (dur) and so on. He also used it for examining and interpreting prophecies regarding the king, the ministers and the subjects in all the situations of life, and for all questions concerning them and their destiny.

235
The context in which these stories originated is surely of great age, even if later additions have been made to them; it is a world of pastoralism. Two themes intersect in it but remain clearly separate: divination through the *ju thig* made of wool, and the conception of the sheep, not only as the animal providing the indispensable element for preparing the divining apparatus, but also as a primal being, as one of the first-born creatures, recognized as a foundation and principle of the existence of society. Society here is divided into three principal groups: kings or chiefs, their counsellors or ministers, and subjects. The arrow mentioned (*mda' dar*) with the five-coloured silk bands attached to it is an essential element in a large part of the popular liturgy. It is the work of a smith who is in contact with the powers of evil, but the god of good things takes possession of it. Behind concepts of this kind we can perceive a pastoral society, that lives in felt tents and uses the felted skin as the prototype of the *mandala*, spreading upon it the objects held to be sacred; a society which desires to know the future in advance and to obtain the means through which it can avert the calamitous events predicted by the omens.

There is always a clear distinction between good and evil. Everywhere there is conflict between good and evil powers, helpful and harmful forces, personified as two opposing and sharply distinguished beings. They are clearly separated already through the dividing space situated between them, in which their conflicts take place, but the concluding of pacts is also possible. Pacts, oaths, obligations have at the same time sacred and social meaning.

The power or *majestas* (Tib. *mnga’ thang*) of the king rests above all upon his sacredness. Originally this was to guarantee purity and immunity against defilement by the evils threatening him and the kingdom. If a king is attacked by leprosy, or if he has a son born blind, then king and queen are buried alive, and the son cannot ascend the throne until he acquires the power of sight (No. 85, *ja*, p.12 and No. 117, p.51a, b). If the king does not fulfil the requirements imposed on him then his *mnga’ thang* is extinguished, the grass dries up and all goes to the bad (Bacot, 1940; Bacot et al., 1940, p.133). The king is consecrated and blessed through a purificatory ceremony (No. 35, p.18, 1) and is then the guarantor of the fertility of the earth. *gNya’ khri btsan po* descended onto the earth in the form of rain (Bacot, et al., 1940, p.86), and so brought about prosperity and abundance. *sPu de gung rgyal* had the same task (ibid., p.127).

There seems to me no reason to give up the opinion which I have expressed elsewhere (Tucci, 1956, p.197), that the king renounced his power as soon as his son reached the age at which he could mount a horse, that is at thirteen years. This number expresses completeness and purity. Reliable indications are lacking concerning the further
destiny of the old king. His ascent to heaven by means of the dmu thag, the rope of dmu, may indicate that he was removed by violence or exiled. In any case the power went into the hands of the son, whose minister stood at his side. This is confirmed indirectly by Chinese sources, from which it emerges that among the Tibetans the old were objects of contempt, the mother had to greet the son and the son had pre-eminence over the father; when entering or leaving the young went first and the old followed (Pelliot, 1961, p.3). In the same sources it is said that King Srong btsan sgam po ascended the throne as soon as he was given a man’s hat (the Tibetans say as soon as he could mount a horse). Numerous similar examples could be cited from Tibetan history. Each new king completely transformed everything. He had his own magician-priest, sku gshen, whose place was at his right, while his minister sat at his left, an indication of the pre-eminence of the priest over the minister. The list of ministers has been preserved in the chronicles. No king resided in his father’s palace; the new king lived in his own castle. In short, when a king ascended the throne a novus ordo came about. The sacred character of the kingdom emerges too from the ritual dances which introduced the new year. On this occasion a costume was worn which recalls vividly the dress of the shamans. It was white, the hair of the head was rolled up and held together by silver bands, protected by a turban bearing the image of a khyung, that eagle-like mythical bird which represents the good creation, and is the traditional adversary of the mkha’ lding, the Tibetan equivalent of the Indian Garuda and the enemy of serpents; a natural consequence of the veneration of kluk in the autochthonous Tibetan religion.

The helmet, dbu rmaṅ, was the symbol of royalty. The efficacy of the royal power is referred to by the expression ‘supreme helmet’, which recurs frequently both in the inscriptions (including those in Ladakh) and in the texts.

There was a close connection between kingdom and helmet. Certain texts give lists of the eighteen family trees of the kings ruling in the eighteen districts (khri sde) of Zhang zhung. The lists mention not only the kings, but along with each king the religious teacher (here referred to as  drang srong) who acted as protector of the Bon doctrine during his reign, and also the name of his palace and of his helmet. In fact, in some cases instead of a helmet horns, bya ru (= rna co) are mentioned, which these kings wore above their head-covering. Some kings are even distinguished according to the (generally valuable) material out of which these horns were made. The list begins (No. 2, pp.90ff) with Zhang zhung srid pa’i rgyal po Khri wer la rje, who bore gold horns. Then follow others: kings with bya ru made from coral (bya ru = byi ru), from the radiance of gar ljung ’od (in other words from a special green
turquoise, g.yu gar ljang, No. 5, p.3, I.4), from iron, from vaidurya, from candrakanta (moon-stone), from suryakanta (sun-stone), from gnam leags (meteoric iron?), in the form of a khyung and so on. It seems that each individual king had a special crown or horned headdress, as was the case with the Sassanid kings, where each king was also recognizable by his particular crown. We are certainly dealing here with mythical kings, but this is unimportant, for there are surely real usages at the base of the tradition, especially considering the Iranian parallels.

It is more difficult to explain how the lde'u came to have such importance that they were inserted into the triad on whom the fate of the king and of his realm depended. As far as I know, there no longer exist any lde'u priests, although the custom itself with which they were connected is still alive. Today it is a question of a pastime, a game of riddles, with which educated people too occupy themselves at festive gatherings:

It is no tiger, yet it has stripes (on its skin);
It is no leopard, yet it has spots;
It is no mdzo, yet it sucks.
(Solution: the bee.)

Riddles of this kind are current in distinguished families. We can deduce that the lde'u were probably diviner-priests to whom one had recourse at critical moments, for example before military campaigns or other perilous undertakings.

The sacred character of the lde'u is made clearer by the statement that they are different from other men because they are descended from lde'u (Bacot et al., 1940, p.123).

Further clarification of this whole series of questions is made possible by, for example, the wedding-songs. In these customs riddles have a special significance, as do homophones (words sounding the same but with different meanings) which can lead to misunderstandings, or ambiguous questions to which correspond ambiguous answers. In the wedding songs are preserved numerous customs and traditions, fragments of cosmogonies and mythological concepts of varied origin and diverse ages. One should not be surprised then to find in such passages of ambiguous speech, in such sequences of questions and answers an echo of the mantic function of the ancient lde'u. Only under this assumption can we understand the protective role (skhyong) ascribed to them in relation to the state.

Concerning this characteristic of the lde'u, it is not without interest that (among the extremely numerous emanations spoken of in the Bon po literature) a light emanated out of the right hand of rGyal ba gShen rab from which was born gShen chen po, lde bo gsung chen (‘the lde bo, the great word’, No. 2, p.18b).
THE BON RELIGION

Our reconstruction of the Bon religion, mostly undertaken a posteriori and relying in general on later texts, is fully confirmed in a number of places by the Chinese sources (Pelliot, 1961, p.92), which date from the period of the first Chinese-Tibetan relations. In these sources repeated sacrificial offerings are mentioned on the occasion of taking oaths towards the king. Every three years, in fact, there took place a great taking of oaths, on the occasion of which dogs and horses were sacrificed. As already mentioned, these animals possessed a special sacred character and were buried, along with cattle and asses and even men, together with the king (ibid., p.82). The yak on the other hand was not a sacrificial animal, but was killed in the course of hunts and ritual feasts. 24

At the sacrifices the bones of the animals were broken and their entrails torn out. As we have already mentioned, in rituals in honour of the terrifying deities the entrails (real or made from coloured tsamba) are still today coiled together around the ritual offerings (gtor ma) made of tsamba. The same Chinese sources witness the striking veneration of the entrails by the magician-priests and the diviners (ibid., p.3).

The taking of oaths also occurred in connection with other events, for example at the conclusion of a peace treaty (in the year 822, ibid., p.114). This ceremony was sufficiently tenacious that it continued even after the introduction of Buddhism. The cella consecrated to the Buddha was separated from the altar where the ritual took place, at which sacrificial animals were offered in clear violation of Buddhist doctrine even at the time of Ral pa can, although this king is regarded as a faithful protector of Buddhism and of its commandments.

According to a tradition which is generally accepted, gShen rab mi bo was the creator of the systematic doctrinal structure of the Bon religion. In other words, he arranged together in an organic whole a varied and contradictory mass of ritual practices, exorcistic formulae, celebrations and customs—it would not so much have been a question of literary texts, since these existed only in small numbers before his time. He came from 'Ool mo lung rings in sTag zin; we will return to this place name later in another context (cf.p.242), but it could also be of Tibetan origin. 25

gShen rab has assumed the same position within the literature of Bon as Sakyamuni has within Buddhism. He is rNam mkhyen rgyal ba gShen rab mchog, 'the Omniscient Victor, the Supreme gShen'; his seat is in the 'Og min paradise; his rank is that of a fully-accomplished Buddha (mgon par sangs rgyas). Moved by compassion for living beings, however, he descended to this world as representative (rgyal tshab) of the gShen lha, the 'divine gShen'. According to some sources (No. 2, p.19a), he first of all went to the paradise 'Od gsal lha, where he was born as the

239
son of dMu rgyal. His katabasis was, however, not yet finished. As soon as the demons (bdud) of the various regions of Tibet heard about these events, they set out to do battle with him under the leadership of the bdud of East Tibet (mDo kham). At this he descended in Zhang zhung, as the son of dMu rgyal, amid earthquakes and flashes of lightning. Rage seized the gods (lha rigs) of Zhang zhung under their leader Ti se, the rma rigs of Bod kham under Thang lha, the 999,000 srid pa'i sman, and the twelve brian ma, guardians of the world. However, gShen rab subdued them all, and to confirm their submission for all time they offered him the secret syllables enclosing the essence of their power (strog snying yig 'bru sa bon). In this way they became guardians of the teachings of rGyal ba gShen rab, they drank the consecrated water (dam btags snying po dam chu kha ra btung) and bore the symbol of the Bon teachings, the svastika (g.yung drun) on their heads. From then on they were called dam can ye shes sbyan ldan, ‘those who have taken the vow and who possess the eye of transcendent consciousness’.

This narrative is worthy of note in that it clearly echoes the story of the subduing of the Bon po gods by Padmasambhava. The testimony which it provides for the existence of local groups of gods (among them Ti se) who are indubitably older than the systematization of Bon attributed to gShen rab is equally instructive.

In all other respects gShen rab’s biography follows faithfully that of the Buddha, although here and there traits indigenous to the world of Bon can certainly be found. These, however, are not sufficient to give a clearer picture of his personality.

Entry into the Bon po community was bound up with a special ritual which imposed reciprocal obligations whose breach involved severe punishment. The details of this ritual are unknown to us, but we know that its principal part consisted in invoking on those guilty of a breach of their word the most terrifying threats, with whose actualization special gods were entrusted. Such gods have survived until this day, and belong precisely to the class of dam can ('those who have taken the vow'). They form part of the general class of chos skyong; within the Buddhist domain too they watch over the keeping of vows and are at the same time, however, regarded as protective deities. All those who had taken the vow and belonged to the community were called mched, brothers. They were dressed in white and formed a kind of Mannerbund, although this expression is inappropriate in that women too took part. This community consecrated by the ritual is somewhat more than the ganacakra of the Buddhists; the latter is rather a congregation for the performance of a particular ritual, while the religious act in which Bon po of both sexes took part was by contrast a kind of sacrament bringing about the state of brotherhood which continued to exist after the end of the ceremony. Those taking part were bound to a promise (dam
The Bon religion, breaking which excludes those guilty from the community, as does participating in impurity of spirit or body. In Bon purity is not only a spiritual property but also a physical one; the body must guard itself against any contact with things regarded as impure. The liturgical action was preceded (cf. e.g. No. 37) by a bath in a consecrated receptacle filled with consecrated water. (Bathing with pure water, gtsang khrus, lustration, was an essential component also of the royal consecration ceremony, No. 35, p. 18b.) The suffimen, the burning of incense, followed, in the form in which it has survived to this day in the exorcistic liturgy (bsangs), with the use of juniper wood. The smoke was an offering (dud mchod) which was valid for both the peaceful and the terrifying gods (such as the 360 Ge khod or Gi khod). The entire community of brothers and sisters (bsgrub bon mched lcam) took part in this ritual. The acts of purification extended to impurities of all kinds, including not only moral defilements (the elimination of the five 'poisons' or vices) but also physical impurities: incest, war, trade, contact with persons in a state of mourning or those who have broken their vows, contact with people with leprosy or incurable illnesses, wearing impure clothes and so on. The 2,400 sacred places (gdan gsas) were also submitted to purification.

Essential elements of the Bon liturgy were the three-step dance, three-part songs and the word of three levels (ngag tshigs gsun). The ritual and sacred character of these dances, songs and recitations can be deduced from the fact that they are always preceded by the word gshen (No. 2, p.19b). The king could not undertake anything if the gshen had not spoken the three words and performed the songs (gsh) three times (No. 35, p.266). Only after this could the king and ministers begin to sing and dance.

The Bon po rituals were certainly accompanied by some kind of beating of a drum (gsham, e.g. No. 85, ja, p.8b). In their course the magician-priests mounted on a deer (sha ba) made of clay, on which they could rise into space, or rode on a drum called mga. Their drum-beats could make water spring forth and juniper grow (No. 35, p.62).

In our description the word shaman has occasionally been used. There can surely be no doubt of the existence of certain similarities between the old Tibetan religion and shamanism; the ride through the air, the magical use of the drum, the calling back of the souls of the dead or dying—all these were duties of particular classes of gshen. One could be born a gshen (cf. gshen rigs, lineage of gshen, Lalou, 1952, p.353), in other words one could belong to a gshen family, as often happens with the shamans. This does not exclude later possession by a demon. This is what happened, as I understand the legend, to the youth spoken of in No. 85, ja, p.8b. He came from a gshen family in 'On
mo lung ring (cf. p.239) in the land of 'On, and had asses' ears (evidently an allusion to a particular form of hat). At the age of twelve he was stolen away by a 'dre. He was returned after another twelve years and introduced the use of a woollen hat (bal thod, cf. p.228) with broad side-sections to cover his asses' ears. All the same one can scarcely find here definite traces of those ecstatic aspects of shamanism so well portrayed by Mircea Eliade.

The penetration of Buddhism, especially that of the rDzogs chen school, took place gradually, and Bon received from Buddhism a doctrinal structure of its own.

After the prohibition of Bon its teachings were written down in gter ma form in accordance with the prediction of Dran pa Nam mkha', as happened in the rNying ma pa school too (cf. p.38). The texts were written with 'divine', lan dza, zhang zhung or other letters, on white-coloured heaven-paper (lha shog), red Indian (or Chinese?) paper (rgya), yellow Tibetan paper or blue Mon paper. Then the gter ma were enclosed in rectangular chests (ga'u) of vaisdurya (No. 2, p.33a). After this the gter ma were divided into five principal groups, which were confined to the five eternal elements and placed under the protection and guard of the goddesses watching over the magical operations: zhi, rgyas, dbang drag and ye shes dbal mo. The less important gter ma, deposited in cemeteries and other places, were entrusted to various classes of guardians (gter srung).

The classification of the masters who actualized the truth is also borrowed from the Buddhists, although the content is in part different (cf. p.110). The Bon po too know the eighty siddha (Buddhism has eighty-four) and the vidyadhara (Tib. rig 'dzin), the 'possessors of magical knowledge'. They were divided into various categories or groups according to the kind of knowledge they possessed; those who were in possession of the phyag rgya chen po (Skt. mahamudra) belonged to the physical plane, and could at will be born or appear within a tree, a rock, an egg, a womb and so on. Those of the verbal plane could change themselves at will into women or men; those of the mental plane (thugs) could take on a rainbow body ('ja' lus). Those who had cultivated the principle of perfect equality (kun snyoms) were able to go at lightning speed to any point of heaven and of earth, without hindrance from material objects. Finally those of action (phrin las) had the power to direct all living beings.

Even one of the characteristic precepts of the Bon religion, the anticlockwise circumambulation (which was in any case not unknown to the Buddhists; it was practised with respect to Samvara) could be transformed into its opposite; at a later period the Bon po too took over the clockwise movement (gyas skor), and in this case they also clearly took into account the doctrinal principles with which it was connected.
The clockwise circling was regarded as the circle of the means (thabs skor) and the anticlockwise as the circle of transcendent consciousness (ye shes skor). Another principle of division was also used, and in some rituals the clockwise circumambulation was reserved for men and called ‘sun-circling’, while the anticlockwise or ‘moon-circling’ was reserved for women (No. 2, p.45a).

Just as the Buddhists distinguished three or four bodies, or three, four or five phases of illusory being in its manifestation and revelation, Bon po philosophy too makes use of the same schematizations. The Bon po accept five such bodies, which are given as follows (No. 6, p.204):

- *bon sku* (= chos sku, Skt. dharmakaya of the Buddhists);
- *longs sku* (sambhogakaya);
- *sprul sku* (nirmanakaya);
- *ngo bo nyid* (svabhavakakaya);
- *mgon byang* (body of Enlightenment).

This classification can be considered as fixed by the doctrine, although it is amplified through further triadic and pentadic divisions, which evidently serve to give a special position to various secondary local deities (No. 2, p.15a). Thus *A ti mu we* becomes great god (Skt. mahadeva) of transcendent cognition, *ye shes lha chen; Ku byi mang (s)ke* becomes great god of magical emanation, *rdu 'phurul lha chen; dBal chen ge khod* becomes great god of manifestation, or of the miracle, *sprul pa'i lha chen*.

These three gods presuppose a higher being, *gShen lha 'od dkar,* ‘divine gShen, White Light’, who is expressed by the name and symbol of *Kun tu bzang po.*

These gods also correspond to an iconographic scheme. Thus, for example, *rDzu 'phrul gyi lha* (*Ku byi mang ske*) is represented as turquoise in colour, in the mudra or posture called *brda ston,* ‘interpreting signs’. His right hand holds a golden club or golden sceptre (*gser chag shing*) (No. 2, p.16b) and his left hand bears a book, with the palm of the hand turned upwards.

The *Lha chen po* (‘Great God’, a title recalling that of Siva Mahadeva) *dBal ge khod* by contrast is represented with nine heads and eighteen yellow-coloured arms. On his head he bears a flying *khyung* (khyung chen); like kings he is enclosed in golden armour (ibid., p.18a) with the sign of the *svastika* on his breast; he is clothed with the skins of demons, antelopes and men (*bdud gyang gzhi mi lpgs*). His lower body is covered with the skin of *bdud* and of the eight kinds of *dregs*. His girdle is made up of five kinds of poisonous snakes. His head is decorated with a diadem of eight *Lha chen*. He is seated upon eight great serpents. His symbols (*phyag cha*) are the eight great planets, his ornaments the stars (*rgya skar*) and his followers are the eight *Lha chen* (mahadeva). He subjugates the envos of the kings of the four cardinal points (*rgyal chen* and *gnod sbyin*), he rules and directs the whole of existence (*smang srid*) and the three worlds.

243
Here too we are evidently concerned with a conception formed of various elements of obviously different origins. The eagle, *khyung chen*, certainly was of central significance in the old Tibetan religion, but (as mentioned before) it is also possible that such a head-ornament might have been influenced by the diadem of the Sassanid kings. The name of this deity, *Lha chen* (corresponding to Sanskrit Mahadeva), his seat on eight great serpents, his girdle of five kinds of poisonous snakes and so forth lead one to think of Saivite models.

Testimonies and monuments of pre-Buddhist or non-Buddhist religion are only rarely to be found. dNgal mkhar (cf. p.273), the ‘Silver Castle’ of West Tibet, *Khyung lung*, is today only a ruin. The royal tombs may be regarded as the most famous example of constructions erected in the spirit of Bon ritual, above all the tomb of Stong btsan sgam po, of which the plan and disposition are well known, although this royal tomb, like all the other burial places of Tibetan kings, suffered great damage during the confusion which followed on the collapse of the dynasty. We know the funeral ritual from several sources; that which was observed at the burial of King Stong btsan sgam po is given in particular detail. A sacred meaning was surely attached to the columns erected over the graves of these kings (cf. Tucci, 1950, p.9). Moon and sun were also invoked in the treaties with China. The two columns represent imitations of Chinese models.

Further tombs of uncertain date were discovered by Aufschnaiter (1956) not far from Lhasa. They provide no definite chronological data, since the ceramics accompanying them are notably atypical in character and the other objects found also do not permit even an approximate dating.

Another group of burial places which can be mentioned here was indeed uncovered in a region of Tibetan culture and religion, but the indigenous ethnic foundation of the area cannot be designated Tibetan. These are the tombs at Leh, which as far as their ceramics are concerned appear to stand in clear relation to those which have been uncovered by the Italian Archaeological mission in Swat, Pakistan, in the Indus Valley, burial places which must doubtless be ascribed to Dardic tribes. At any rate a positive decision concerning this question will only be possible when research results are available covering the whole of the Indus Valley and adjoining regions. Non-Buddhist cult and burial sites certainly exist, but more definite conclusions concerning them must await further scientific excavations. These sites consist of circular areas enclosed by great stones piled upon each other and with one or more monoliths at the centre (Tucci, 1966, p.115). We are evidently concerned here with genuine cult places. Examples of such sites are those discovered by Francke in his time, and those which I have examined myself more recently. I have
established the presence of an installation of this type near Doptradzong and of others near Sengedzong. In other cases the limited dimensions of the stone enclosures lead one to think of tombs. Megalithic monuments also exist on many mountain passes, though at these places, as already mentioned, simple piles of stones (*lha btsas, lha tho*) are more usual. Heaps of stones are also erected in some wedding ceremonies; they are intended to keep away hostile powers and summon benevolent deities. There are numerous objects that without doubt go back to pre-Buddhist or non-Buddhist cultures. For example, there are the so-called ‘heaven stones’ (*thog rde’u*) which are found in the earth when working in the fields. Some of these are eagle-shaped (*khyung*), others round, some represent other animals (such as monkeys). They are made of bronze. The Tibetans believe that anyone who finds nine of them together is guaranteed to become prosperous. It is worth noting that many of these objects show a surprising similarity to those of Luristan. This suggests the existence of very ancient relationships between the culture of Tibet and that of peoples under Iranian influence. Such contacts may have come about as a result of pastoral nomadism and trade connections through Badakshan, Gilgit, Ladakh and West Tibet (Tucci, 1966). The so-called necklace-pearls (*gsigs*) made of glass paste belong to the same realm; they are for the most part of white glass with dark brown or black colouring. Those which are decorated with round black patterns, usually called ‘eyes’ (*mig*), are especially valued. Above all beads with nine ‘eyes’ are held to be extremely powerful talismans and are given a correspondingly high value. The Western origin of such beads is beyond doubt, although we cannot say whether they were originally used as talismans or merely as ornaments.

If we now attempt to bring this material together and draw some conclusions, it must first be said that there are many difficulties in the way of formulating a clear definition of the *Bon* religion. The derived term *Bon po* refers to the adherents of this faith, and also in a narrower sense to its class of exorcists and priests. Certainly there has been great regional diversity in this religion since the most ancient times; this can be seen already from the fact that different clans and localities had their own *Bon* and transmitted it as such. In the course of time the distinctions between *Bon* and Buddhism (especially in the *rDzogs chen* form) became ever more attenuated. This occurred not only in the field of magical and exorcistic religious practice, in which area the activity of the exorcists (*sngags pa*) of the two religions for the good of society or of the individual are often virtually identical (cf.p.211), but also in the field of doctrine.

We have already seen, however, that the doctrinal formulation represents a late phase of development, specifically aimed at matching
the rival religion, while the older texts give a primarily ritual and magical picture of the Bon religion. In these older sources Bon is to a large part directed at the overthrow of hostile or ambivalent powers, or at least keeping them in check or appeasing them, and also at ensuring that the dead do no harm to the living in the course of death and burial rites and so on. Many of these rites and practices were able to survive in the folk religion, often even in Buddhist clothing. One scarcely does justice to the old Bon religion if one affirms (as is often done) that it is a religion of the sky, though certain Bon concepts (e.g. gnam bon) could justify this name. In fact we find here not merely a heavenly space but a whole series of circles of heaven piled up on top of each other, above which there is an infinite space in which the sun and moon circle; we even come across a goddess of the centre of heaven. Sun, moon and stars, are, however, also considered outside of this context, and this is particularly true for the earth as we have said above (p.218). However, all these concepts have no systematic connection with each other; while in many cosmogonies the heavens and the gods of the heavens stand at the centre, in others the gods of the soil and of the earth, including the interior of the earth, play the principal role. The soil here is equated in a certain sense with the mountain ancestor, as the holy place where the descent of the ancestors from heaven occurred. This element is also present in the liturgy for the dead: when the kings were buried, grain was buried with them (Lalou, 1952, p.354). Other texts (No. 110, kha, p.42a,b) indicate that the dead man secured fortune, abundance of food and drink, and a good harvest to the people. At the end of the burial special dances were performed; a man dressed as a ram united himself with a woman (Lalou, op.cit., p.359). On the other hand, kings who died young had no tomb (No. 35, p.126), evidently because they had not had time to accumulate the mngacd thang, magical power or majestas, which constituted their essence. It had to be 'collected' on the orders of the successor during the ceremony (Lalou, op. cit., p.353).

It seems that two traditions, and thus two religions, existed simultaneously, and later flowed together. They have been united since the time of Gri gum, as said above (p.224). Gri gum in my opinion personifies the memory of a transition of great significance in the history of Tibetan culture, and this transition deserves to be studied carefully.

The summit of the sacred mountain is also the place of contact between earth and heaven. The connection between heaven and earth is a primeval article of faith for the Tibetan; in this connection one must recall the rope (dmu thag) which linked heaven and earth, but which was later cut, through the fault of man or as a result of a violation of the liturgical rules. As a result the two worlds have
remained for ever parted. The mountain was, and is until the present
day, the midpoint of settled space. Some consorts of the first kings
bore names which refer to various aspects of the mountain (Stein,
1962a, p.29). On the mountains even today the seasonal rituals and
festivals are celebrated, and it is there too that the dead were once
buried, and are now exposed. Many details lead us to think of a
superimposition or co-existence of two diverse concepts, one con-
cerned with the cults of heaven and of the ancestors, the other being of
earthly and chthonic character (Tucci, 1955). The group of goddesses
who are equated with particular mountains (brtan ma, cf. Skt. dhriti-
prthivi) has a notably terrifying character, the singular ambivalence,
fluctuating between life and death, which we found in concepts
relating to the Magna Mater. A similar abundance of diverse aspects,
partly contemporaneous and partly belonging to successive phases,
can be seen in the funeral rites. Here we find disappearance into
heaven (placing on the peak of a high mountain?), placing on rocky
mountain slopes, the throwing of corpses into rivers (still practised),
burial in the earth, which was used by the Buddhists as well in
historical times (in many places the corpse was buried or placed on a
mountain, and its image, or preferably its clothes stretched on a
wooden frame, was thrown into the water), and cremation.

The multitude of powers who inhabited this world, and still today
survive in the folk religion, were divided into various groups: gnyan,
btsan, sa bdag, klu and so on. With each of these groups a domain of the
world was associated: air, under the earth, water. Thus four or eight
divisions were arrived at (lha srin sde brgyad). They remained vague,
however, just as the ideas relating to these powers were vague,
edowed with names but scarcely with definite forms. Only at a later
time was an attempt made to assign precise forms to these schemes,
and Bon iconography was born. Since then we possess many-armed
and many-headed gods like those of Tantrism, above all terrifying
gods, who are without doubt the more ancient.

The functions of the various classes of exorcists were more clearly
delineated, though from the enumerations given above it can be seen
that here too reciprocal influences and displacements of boundaries
took place in the course of time. The common denominator of all these
groups, however, remained their magical power (mthu), which was
opposed to the majestas (mnga’ thang) of the kings, although that too
acquired a sacred character. The magical power of the exorcists was
either acquired, possessed through belonging to a privileged family,
transmitted by a demon who possesses the subject (lha pa), or awakened
by initiatory practices (among other things by special trials to which
the candidates were subjected). Notwithstanding this indigenous
nucleus, which is very closely linked to the place of settlement and the
THE BON RELIGION

lineage organization of the groups living there, there can be no doubt about the external influences on the Bon religion. These already emerge from the fact that Bon itself indicates such connections in various places. Beyond this, however, there are importations that can be unambiguously traced from Iran, Central Asia, India, and China, as well as more than one might suppose from the north-west of modern Pakistan through to Badakshan. Thus our description can give only an approximate, schematic idea of the profusely interwoven nature of Bon. It is impossible, however, to give a more complete picture until scientific investigations have supplied us with further, as yet inaccessible, material upon which to work.
CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

620(?)–49 **Srond btsan sgam po**
Foundation of Tibetan power
641 Marriage with Princess Wen-ch’eng
Conquest of Zhang zhung
Then mi sam bha ta sent to India; he creates the Tibetan alphabet

649–76 **Mang srong mang btsan**
Conquest of T’u-yū-hun (A zha)
Acquisition of Chinese territories in Central Asia

676–704 **Khri ’du srong btsan**
Expansion of Central Asian possessions
692–4 Their partial reconquest by the Chinese

704–55 **Khri lde gtsug btsan**
710 His marriage with the Chinese princess Chin-ch’eng (originally intended for his father)

755–97(?) **Khri srong lde btsan**
Reconquest of Central Asian possessions
Santaraksita, Kamalasila and Padmasambhava in Tibet
775(?) Foundation of the monastery of bSam yas
779 Buddhism recognized as the state religion
783 Peace treaty with China
792–4 Council of bSam yas
Beginning of political decline and of loss of some Central Asian possessions

797(?)–9 **Mun ne btsan po** (chronology and descendants uncertain)

799–815 **Khri lde srong btsan Sad na legs**
Important political influence of Myang Ting nge ’dzin and Bran ka Yon tan dpal

* His date of birth is much disputed. I shall return to this question in an article to be published shortly.
815–38  *Khri gtsug lde brtson*, better known under the name *Ral pa can*  
Intense activity of translation of Buddhist literature  
822 Peace treaty with China; the Tibetans retain possession of most of their Central Asian possessions

838–42  *Khri bdu daw brtson*, better known under the name *Glang dar ma*  
Persecution of Buddhism. End of the period called the 'First Diffusion of the Doctrine' (*inga dar*) by Tibetan scholars

842  Murder of *Glang dar ma*  
Struggle for power between *Khri lde* (known as *Yum brten*) and *gNam lde* (known as *'Od srungs*)

866  *Khong bzher*, who had proclaimed himself prime minister, falls in battle with the Chinese  
Loss of the Central Asian possessions; the descendants of *Yum brten* remain in possession of the principalities of *gTsang* and *dBus* (especially *bSam yas*)  
Descendants of *'Od srungs* in *Yar klungs*  
Another descendant of the same family, *sKyid lde Nyi ma mgon*, founds a dynasty in West Tibet (*Gu ge* and Ladakh)

9th-10th centuries  
‘Second Diffusion of the Doctrine’ (*spyi dar*), introduced by the activity of *dGongs pa rab gsal* (832–915? or 892–975?) and his disciple *Klu mes* (around 950–1025)  
*Rin chen bzang po* (958–1055) is sent to Kashmir around 970 by the king of West Tibet, *Ye shes ’od*, to deepen his knowledge of Buddhist doctrine and bring teachers and artists back with him to Tibet; founding of the first temples in West Tibet, Tabo, Tholing, Nako etc.  
*Byang chub ’od*, King of West Tibet, sends *Nag tsho lotsva* to Vikramasila in India to convey an invitation to Atisa

1042  Arrival in Tibet of Atisa Dipamkara Srijnana (died 1054), his meeting with *Rin chen bzang po*  
Atisa continues his missionary activity in Central Tibet and dies in 1054 in *sNy e thang* near to Lhasa; founding of the monastery of *Rwa sgrengs* (Reting) (1057), centre of diffusion for the so-called *bKa’ gdam pa* school

1055  Birth of *Ma geig Lab sgron ma*, female student and collaborator of the founder of the monastery of *Ding ri* and head of the *gCod sect, Dam pa sangs rgyas* (died 1117)

1073  Foundation of the head monastery of the *Sa skya pa* school by *’Khon dKon mchog rgyal po* (1034–1102), a student of *’Brog mi* (died 1074)

1076  Great council at the monastery of Tabo, summoned by the king of West Tibet, *rTse lde*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1079</td>
<td>Birth of <em>Sgam po pa</em> (<em>Dways po lha rje</em>), disciple of <em>Mi la ras pa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1098</td>
<td>Death of <em>Mar pa</em>, translator and mystic, to whom the tradition of the <em>bkAs brgyud</em> school goes back; teacher of the great mystic and poet <em>Mi la ras pa</em> (1040–1123)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1136</td>
<td>Birth of <em>Nyang rol Nyi ma ‘od zer</em> (died 1203), the discoverer of 'hidden treasures' (<em>gter ma</em>) and founder of the <em>rDzogs chen</em> school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1158</td>
<td><em>‘Gro mgon Phag mo gru pa</em> founds the monastery of <em>mThil</em> (or <em>Thel</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1175</td>
<td><em>Zhang rin po che</em> founds the monastery of <em>Tshal</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1179</td>
<td>Definitive foundation of <em>‘Bri gung</em> (Digung) by <em>‘Bri gung rin po che</em> (1143–1217) (first founding by <em>Mi nyag sGam rin</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1182</td>
<td>Birth of <em>Kun dga’ rgyal mtshan</em> (died 1251), better known as 'the learned <em>Sa skya</em> scholar', <em>Sa skya pandita</em> (<em>Sa pa</em>). Ōgedei recognizes him as representative of the Great Mongolian Empire in Tibet and effective ruler of Tibet, assisted by Mongolian officials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1189</td>
<td>Founding of the monastery of <em>mTshur phu</em> (Tsurphu) by <em>Kar ma pa Dus gsum mkhyen pa</em> (1110–93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1204</td>
<td>Birth of the second teacher of the <em>Kar ma pa</em> sect, <em>Kar ma pa kshi</em> (died 1283); he later visited China at the invitation of Khubilai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1206</td>
<td>Cinggis Khan wishes to set foot on Tibetan soil and receives the submission of some chiefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1244</td>
<td><em>Sa skya pandita</em>’s meeting with the Mongolian king Godan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1252–3</td>
<td>Mongol invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1260(?</td>
<td>The thirteen districts of West Tibet are formally placed under the control of <em>'Phags pa Blo gros rgyal mtshan</em> (1235–80) of the <em>Sa skya</em> school; around 1270 he is appointed 'imperial preceptor' (<em>ti-shik</em>) Opposition of the <em>'Bri gung pa</em> (so called after the monastery of <em>'Bri gung</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1290</td>
<td>Destruction of the monastery of <em>'Bri gung</em> by the <em>Sa skya pa</em> generals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1290</td>
<td>Birth of <em>Bu ston</em> (died 1364) who is responsible for the final form of the already translated Buddhist texts (<em>bkAs ’gyur</em>, 'word of the master', and <em>bsTan ’gyur</em>, commentaries, glosses and secondary works)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1302</td>
<td>Birth of <em>Byang chub rgyal mtshan</em> (died 1373) of the <em>rLangs</em> family</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

251
This family is also known as that of the Phag mo gru pa, after the monastery of gDan sa Thel or mThil founded by Phag mo gru pa which later became the centre of their power.

Fighting with the Sa skyā pa, who are defeated; various members of the family are appointed rdzong dpon, prefect; reorganization of the state
End of Sa skyā pa power and beginning of the power of the Phag mo gru pa

Birth of Tsong kha pa Blo gros grags pa (died 1419), the founder of the dGe lugs pa school (also called the ‘Yellow Sect’)

Birth of dGe 'dun grub (died 1475), pupil of Tsong kha pa and supreme head of the dGe lugs pa sect. After his death the principle of incarnation was affirmed; sPyan ras gzigs (Skt. Acalokitesvara) is incarnated in the supreme head of the sect (rGyal ba)

Founding of dGa’ ldan (Ganden), dGe lugs pa monastery

Founding of ‘Bras spungs (Drepung), dGe lugs pa monastery

Founding of Se ra, dGe lugs pa monastery

Founding of Chab mdo (Chamdo), dGe lugs pa monastery in Khams

Founding of bKra shis lhun po (Trashilhunpo), dGe lugs pa monastery in gTsang

The Rin spungs pa oppose themselves to the Phag mo gru pa, taking advantage of their weakening power and allying with the Kar ma pa. After the first half of the fifteenth century their most important town is bSam grub riṣe near Shigatse

Birth of the second rGyal ba, dGe 'dun rgya mtsho. Conflicts with the Rin spungs pa and gTsang, becoming progressively more violent
In Central Tibet the dGe lugs pa are supported by the Phag mo gru pa

The fifth Zhwa dmar Kar ma pa allies himself with the princes of gTsang against the dGe lugs pa

Birth of the third rGyal ba, bSod nams rgya mtsho (died 1588)
In view of the weakening of the Phag mo gru pa through internal conflicts he seeks help outside Tibet; in 1578 he visits Mongolia, where Altan Khan confers on him the title of Dalai Lama; he dies in Mongolia during a second visit

Birth of the fourth rGyal ba or Dalai Lama, Yon tan rgya mtsho (died 1617), whose incarnation is found for political motives in the family of Altan Khan
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1617</td>
<td>Birth of the fifth Dalai Lama, Ngag dbang blo bzang rgya mtsho (died 1682). Collapse of Phag mo gru pa power, further growth of the influence of gTsang and of the Kar ma pa. Gusri Khan of the Qosots Mongols comes to the Dalai Lama’s aid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1624-36</td>
<td>Jesuit missionaries in West Tibet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1626-32</td>
<td>Other missionaries in gTsang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1641</td>
<td>Gusri Khan defeats the king of Be ri in Khams, an adherent of the Bon religion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1641-2</td>
<td>Gusri Khan overthrows the king of gTsang and takes him prisoner; his territory is handed over to the Dalai Lama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1642-59</td>
<td>Consolidation of the Tibetan theocracy; civil and military power is given to a regent (sDe srid) appointed by the Dalai Lama. Gusri Khan becomes a kind of Protector of Tibet (died 1655). Many monasteries of the ‘Red Sect’ (the non-dGe lugs pa schools) are confiscated by the dGe lugs pa. The abbot of bKra shis lhun po, Blo bzang chos kyi rgyal mtshan, is given the title Pan chen rin po che by the Dalai Lama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1651-3</td>
<td>The fifth Dalai Lama, Blo bzang rgya mtsho, visits China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1679</td>
<td>Blo bzang rgya mtsho names Sangs rgyas rgya mtsho as regent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1682</td>
<td>Death of the fifth Dalai Lama. The fact is kept hidden, and the regent carries on the government in his name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1683</td>
<td>Birth of the sixth Dalai Lama, Tshangs dbyangs rgya mtsho (1683–1706)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1683</td>
<td>Peace with Ladakh, and definitive inclusion of Gu ge and the neighbouring regions in the Dalai Lama’s realm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1697</td>
<td>After the death of the fifth Dalai Lama is made public, the sixth is enthroned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1705</td>
<td>Lhajang Khan (Lha bzang klu dbang), the Khan of the Qosots, invades Tibet and conquers Lhasa. Murder of the regent Sangs rgyas rgya mtsho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1706</td>
<td>Lhajang Khan announces the deposition of the sixth Dalai Lama and sends him to China, but he dies on the way. His successor is a monk, allegedly an illegitimate son of Lhajang Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1707</td>
<td>Italian Capuchin monks in Tibet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1716 The Jesuit father Ippolito Desideri, author of a confutation of Tsong kha pa’s Lam rim chen mo, arrives at Lhasa. Another reincarnation of the sixth Dalai Lama is opposed to the claimant appointed by Lhajang Khan; for reasons of security the new claimant takes refuge in the monastery of Kumbum (kGum 'bum) and is educated there.

1717–27 The Dzungars occupy and sack Lhasa. The Manchu announce the deposition of the Dalai Lama appointed by Lhajang Khan and proclaim that the claimant from Kumbum, bskal bzang rgya mtsho (1708–57) is the Dalai Lama; however, he does not exercise effective secular power; this remains in the hands of a council presided over by Khang chen nas, who is killed in 1727.

1733–47 The Capuchins leave Lhasa. Pho lha nas bsod nams stobs rgyas (1689–1747) manages to bring the internal struggles to an end and becomes the effective ruler of Tibet.

1740 Pho lha nas receives the title of wang from the Chinese, and rules with their support.

1741 Return of Capuchins

1745 Banishment of Capuchins

1747 Death of Pho lha nas

1750 His son, 'Gyur med rnam rgyal is killed by the Chinese resident (amban) after being involved in an anti-Chinese plot together with the Dzungars.

1751 After the Dalai Lama’s attempted revolt against the Chinese garrison, Emperor Ch’ien-lung recognizes the Dalai Lama as ruler of Tibet, but he is deprived of all effective political power; this is entrusted to a council (bKa’ shag) under the supervision of the two Chinese residents (amban).

1758 Birth of the eighth Dalai Lama, 'jam dpal rgya mtsho (died 1804)

1774–5 Mission led by George Bogle in Tibet; establishment of relations with the third Pan chen rin po che, Blo bzang dpal ldan ye shes (1738–80)

1783–92 Mission led by Samuel Turner. Numerous incursions of the Gurkha into Tibet following their conquest of Nepal. The Chinese send troops under the command of Fu K’ang-an; victory over the Gurkha. The Chinese army crosses the Himalayas and forces the peace of Kathmandu.
1806–15  The ninth Dalai Lama, *Lung rtogs rgya mtsho*

1816–37  The tenth Dalai Lama, *Tshul khrims rgya mtsho*

1838–56  The eleventh Dalai Lama, *mKhas grub rgya mtsho*

1835–42  Raja Gulab Singh of Jammu attacks Ladakh and conquers it Zorawar Singh, general of the king of Jammu, attempts to invade Central Tibet, but is defeated and killed

1854–6  Conflict with Nepal

1856–75  The twelfth Dalai Lama, *’Phrin las rgya mtsho*

1876  Birth of the thirteenth Dalai Lama, *Thub bstan rgya mtsho* (died 1933)

Diplomatic conflict between Britain and Russia, each attempting to secure direct contacts with Tibet and to exclude privileges from the other

1890  British protectorate over Sikkim

1904  Lord Curzon’s efforts to establish commercial relations with Lhasa remain unsuccessful. The British military expedition under the direction of Colonel Younghusband forces its way into Tibet and reaches Lhasa. Flight of the Dalai Lama. Conclusion of an agreement with the abbot of the monastery of *dGa’ ldan*

1909  The Dalai Lama, who had fled to Mongolia, returns to Lhasa after a short stay in China

1910  Full restoration of Chinese control over East Tibet, followed by the dispatch of troops to Lhasa under the control of Chao Erh-feng. Flight of the Dalai Lama to India

1911  Outbreak of revolution in China. Tibetan uprising against the Chinese

1912  After his return to Lhasa, the Dalai Lama rules without allowing any Chinese influence

1913–14  Conference at Simla attended by British, Chinese and Tibetan plenipotentiaries. The Chinese refuse to ratify the agreement

1920–21  Mission of Sir Charles Bell in Tibet. The authority of the Dalai Lama is growing, but there is opposition to his policies by the *Pan chen* of *bKra shis lhun po*, *dGe legs rnam rgyal* (1883–1937). The *Pan chen* flees to China.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1933</td>
<td>Death of the thirteenth Dalai Lama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Appointment of the Regent (the abbot of Reting) The fourteenth Dalai Lama, <em>bsTan 'dzin rgya mtsho</em> (born 1935), is enthroned as Dalai Lama in 1940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1941</td>
<td>The Regent is forced to resign and is replaced by a new Regent, the abbot of <em>sTag brag</em> (Taktra)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1947</td>
<td>Indian declaration of independence; end of the British Tibet policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1949</td>
<td>Occupation and annexation of Tibet by the People's Republic of China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>Flight of the Dalai Lama to Yatung on the border with Sikkim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1954</td>
<td>Return of the Dalai Lama to Lhasa. His visit to Peking. The new <em>Pan chen, Chos kyi rgyal mtshan</em> (born 1938), brought up in China, is placed opposite the Dalai Lama and considered as a spokesman for the Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1959</td>
<td>Attempted uprising suppressed by the Chinese. The Dalai Lama flees to India. The <em>Pan chen</em> emerges in his place, but is later forced to undergo 'self-criticism'. Tibet becomes an autonomous province of the People's Republic of China</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES

Chapter 1  The first diffusion of Buddhism in Tibet

1 Or Srong brtsan sgam po.
2 Tucci, 1962.
3 Cf. A. Macdonald, 1966, p.479, for the legends about the first statues brought to Lhasa in the time of Srong brtsan sgam po.
5 Tucci, 1958, pp.20ff.
6 Ibid., p.12, n.III.
7 Ibid., p.31.
9 Tucci, 1958, p.9.
10 Zen in Japanese.
11 Tucci, 1958, pp.20, 150.
15 Demiéville, 1952, p.177.
16 Tucci, 1958, p.43.
17 Cf. p.3.
18 Tucci, 1958, p.11.
19 Tucci, 1950, p.49.
20 The numbers refer to the list of Tibetan sources on pp.275–9.
21 Tucci, 1950, p.45. Sravaka, ‘hearers’, and Pratyekabuddha are those who attain to Enlightenment but do not reveal it. The Bodhisattva (in the Mahayana), following their Enlightenment, remain in the world to benefit others with their preaching and activity.
22 Tucci, 1958, p.56. Another example in Richardson, 1952–3.
24 Also, more often, mChims phu, ‘the high part of mChims’.
25 The texts which contain the Buddha’s revelation.
26 Toussaint, 1933, p.341. This may well relate to later conditions, since the Thang yig was first written down only in a more recent period.
NOTES TO PAGES 13–18

29 Prajnaparamita (‘perfection of higher cognition’) is the name of a series of texts, and of numerous commentaries, which are concerned with the doctrine of the ‘void’ and teach the gradual nature of mystical experience.

30 According to some traditions all beings are Buddha (sangs rgyas), and there is no other greater Buddha; the Buddha is in the hearts of men and is identified with pure unarticulated sound. This is why one reads in certain texts that even a being in hell can save himself in the moment in which he hears one of the formulae (gzungs, Skt. dhāranī) which encapsulate truth in a series of sounds. In other words, an instant of awakening, however it is brought about, is sufficient to produce the liberating excessus mentis.

31 Demiéville, 1952; Tucci, 1958, p.65.
32 Before he left the country, the Htōa shang founded a chapel.
33 Tucci, 1958, pp.65ff.
34 Ibid., p.52; Richardson, 1952, p.134.
36 Tucci, 1958, p.67.
37 Richardson, 1952, p.72; Pelliot, 1961, pp.130ff.

Chapter 2 The second diffusion of Buddhism

1 These five ma are evidently to be understood according to the original significance, of an essentially magical character, which they have in the Tantric texts. They can, however, also be taken in an esoteric sense; thus mudra was originally the name of a plant or seed with aphrodisiac properties, then with the growth of esotericism it took on the meaning of female companion or Paredra of the god, or, in the Siddha school (cf.p.12), of the Tantric master. Finally it came to mean ‘position of the hands’ (in Tantric ritual), and also ‘seal’.

In this book I use the Greek term paredra to designate the female companion who is associated with various gods, or who may be united with the celebrant in various rituals, in order to distinguish this concept from the idea of sakti, ‘power’, as it is used in the Saivite schools.
2 Tucci, 1949, pp.7–8.
3 Hoffmann, 1950, p.190.
4 The dating is uncertain. There is almost certainly an error of sixty years (i.e. one whole cycle). Thus it could be the year 915 which is in question, or 975, or even 1035. Cf. L. Petech, ‘Il sistema cronologico del Deb ther sragon po’, in Tucci, 1941, p.281; Roerich, 1949, p.xvii; H. E. Richardson, 1957, pp.60ff. The one securely dated point is Gruñ Ye shes rgyal mthshan, contemporary of Chao Hsüan-ti (905–7) of the T'Ang dynasty, and disciple of dGongs pa rab gsal. In any case it is established that the revival of Buddhism, after beginning in Khams, reached both Central and Western Tibet, and then returned from the West to Central Tibet (dBus) along with Atisa.
5 The region of Tibet to the west of Lhasa, centred on Shigatse.
6 The community was viewed as a house. I give one example from many: the religious descendants of Klu mes were divided into four pilasters, two beams and two door frames (cf. No.108, p.105b).

258
According to the sBa bzhad they had no need of a mule to carry the load of books which they took with them; mNgon mdzod, 'Dul ba 'od ldan and Las skar ma sha stam.

Tucci, 1956c, pp.42ff.

Tucci, 1933.

The bKa' 'gyur contains the texts revealed by the Buddha, including texts on discipline, metaphysics, various teachings, the Tantras, etc. The bsTan 'gyur contains the treatises and the various commentaries of the leading teachers of the Indian philosophical schools, etc.

Sacred structures, containing relics of all kinds, and constructed according to a design of which the various elements are symbolic; a psychocosmogram like the mandala.

Offering, free gift.

Chapter 3 General characteristics of Lamaism

That is, that everything is only zems, thought, consciousness, or spirit. 'Essential voidness': pure emptiness, thought which is the potentiality for individual thoughts, but which does not think, because thinking is no longer the essential Void Consciousness, beyond every logical category.

Many chos 'byung, histories of the diffusion of the doctrine, even if they are primarily treating the Tibetan schools, also give information on Indian Buddhism. Examples are the histories of Bu ston (No.113), Pad ma dkar po (No.108), Taranatha (No.90), dpBa'o gtsug 'phreng ba (No.85), etc.

Although attempts have not been lacking to divide the Tibetan doctrinal schools into 18 groups, as for example following Blo bde zhabz dkar po: A:1. brgyud, bka'; 2. snyan brgyud, gter ma; 3. zab ma, dag snang; B. gsar ma bka' brgyud; 4. kar ma pa; 5. 'brug pa; 6. 'bri khung; 7. stag lung; C. bka' gdams, gzhung; 9. man ngag; D. bka' gdams gsar ma (dge lugs): 10. gzhung, 11. snyan brgyud; E. sa skya pa: 12. sa skya pa; 13. ngog; F. pha dam pa: 14. zhi byed; 15. ma gcig lab; G. 16. shangs pa; H. 17. jo nang pa; I. 18. bo dongs.


Zhua nag ('black hat') was the name which was given to Dus gsum mkhyen pa, because he made himself a crown or a diadem (cod pa) out of the hair of a mkha' 'gro ma ('Flier through the air'; a class of female deities generally much feared) (No.85, p.3a). On the division into zhua nag and zhua dmar cf. No.108, pp.162b ff.; Richardson, 1958, p.139; 1959, p.1.

He was a disciple of Yu ma Mi bsbyod rdo rje, a student of Zla ba mgon po (Candranatha), a pandita from Kashmir. The monastery of Jo nang was founded by Phyo gshis las nam rgyal (born 1306) (cf. No.82, p.91a).

In other words the rNyings ma pa claim that the Tantras which were in circulation in India do not represent all of the Tantric literature. They cite the words ascribed to Atisa on the occasion of his visit to the library at bSam yas, when he remarked that there were books there unknown in India; the revelation of such texts would be ascribed to the divine mkha' 'gro ma (Skt.
dakini), to the klu etc. In this connection the rNying ma pa also affirm the
superiority of the old tradition and of the old translators by various
arguments, which are summarized under six principal reasons (No.122,
pp.25ff.).

10 When Pba dam pa arrived in Tibet he was not at first considered to be a
Buddhist (No.1, p.11b); in other words he was taken for a Saivite sadhu
such as would often be met in, for example, the region around Kailasa.
The first teachings which he proclaimed were the following (ibid., p.12b):
‘You must not take hold of what appears outside of you, thus giving it
rights of domicile within you. You must not project on to the outside what
appears within you. The sems must not grow fond of the body. The body
must not grow fond of the sems. Guard the liberty of body and sems, so that
each can rest in itself.’

11 The two schools zhi byed and gcod are in origin branches of the same school.
While the theories of zhi byed were followed in their basic lines by other
schools as well, gcod preserved a greater individuality; it too, however, was
adopted by various schools, with appropriate modifications.

12 Individuals (No.121, pp.3a, b) can be divided into three classes: the
lowest, who desire the goods or joys of the samsaric world; the middle, who
care for their own salvation; and the highest, who are preoccupied with the
welfare of others.

13 So they are accustomed to say in the mystical tradition, as I myself was
able to learn in India.

Chapter 4 The doctrines of the most important schools

1 Some scholars give interpretations of the suffering of which the Buddha
speaks which seem to me eccentric. One only needs, however, to look at the
Abhidharma-samuccaya of the famous Asanga (or the Abhidharmakosa of
Vasubandhu, or the texts of the Hinayana) to be convinced that dukkha is
nothing other than the experience of suffering.

2 Skt. Sambhogyakaya; the form of the Buddha preaching in various paradises
to choruses of the blessed who ascend there during the process of meditation
or after having conquered space and time.

3 The four consecrations mentioned are those belonging to the bla na med
rgyud, but there are other consecrations in use too. These include the
garland consecration, the water and diadem consecrations (bya rgyud), to
which are added in the stgyod rgyud the sajra consecration, the bell and name
consecrations. The rnal byor rgyud introduces yet another consecration,
that of the Diamond Master (rdo rje slob dpon, Skt. vajracarya). Thus one
reaches a total of fourteen consecrations, since some schools (e.g. those
based on the Guhyasamaja Tantra) count eleven different types of con-
secration within the consecration through the ‘vessel’.

4 Cf. No.95, p.209, where three human states are mentioned: birth, duration
(gnazi) and death, to which bar do can be added. However, it is a matter here
only of manifestations, of illusory states, caused by the vibratory capacity
or respiration (rlung) and by the sems.

260
5 If, following the premises of the doctrinal schools of Indian Buddhism, Lamaism both denies the existence of a soul and rejects the concept of a soul, it has all the same succeeded through the adoption of Tantric procedures in being in a position to admit ideas that could be attached to indigenous religious concepts. According to the folk religion, people have within them a soul or several souls or soul-like entities, independent of the body, and which survive the body and can leave it during life in order to carry out particular tasks (cf. p. 190).

6 The body has a double aspect: (a) physical body (rag lus), which is the house or container; (b) gnyug ma'i lus, consisting of vibratory capacity or breath (rlung) and sems (No. 95, pp. 209b–210a). To these two bodies can be added the subtle mental body (yid lus) and the sgyu lus, the maya-body, which can be transformed into ye shes sku and rdo rje sku, 'diamond body'. The vibratory capacity is breathing, individual and cosmic (Skt. prana), which is defined precisely as spanda-sakti, force, vibratory capacity.

7 For sems it is preferable to use the Tibetan term wherever possible; one should however keep in mind its various meanings.

8 This process is preceded by three 'isolations': isolation of the psychophysical complex (lus dben), of the spoken word (ngag dben) and of the sems in its normal, unpurified state (sems dben). These three isolations lead to the adamantine state (rdo rje), i.e. to the essential state of the three corresponding planes (sku rdo rje, gsung rdo rje, thugs rdo rje). Cf. No. 99, p. 8; No. 95, pp. 204–5. According to the latter text the body appears after the first isolation as an accumulation of atoms, spoken word as an echo, sems as the intuition of the illusory nature of all things. The definitions and descriptions of this process vary from school to school but remain the same in essence.

9 The word 'reach' is really inappropriate, since there is nothing to reach; one can only accomplish an experience within oneself.

10 On this point we refer to, e.g., No. 105, a much more important source than No. 82 as far as the differences between the major schools are concerned.

11 Nyams len is here translated by 'experience', for in Buddhism every precept and every instruction must be lived within one in such a way that it leads to the desired reversal of the planes. The original meaning of nyams len is actually to live according to the precepts of the doctrine. This refers to all the essential moments: to desire the transcendence of the normal plane, to express the vow to attain illumination and to follow the correct view that can lead to this goal. Higher cognition (shes rab) must first of all examine closely the revealed truths, especially those referring to the meditation on voidness, the thought of Enlightenment and the way to achieve omniscience. The insights acquired in this way must suffuse and transform every act of life, including the whole psychic continuum and the sems.

Instead of nyams len the expression phyag len (lag len) can also be used. By this it is to be understood that every act we perform, every word we speak must correspond to the teaching and be purified into an act capable of fulfilling its proper function in the process of salvation. This expression, however, is used principally, if not exclusively, with reference to Tantric ceremonies, i.e. the ritual of the mandala, the offerings and recitations of hymns to the deities which the officiant visualizes as before him, etc.
Nyams len comprises the entire initiatory curriculum of the devotee. According to the dGe lugs pa teaching the following are obligatory: (1) To turn with supreme trust to the person who acts as spiritual guide (dge bshes, Skt. kalyanamitra); (2) to meditate on the rare good fortune of being born as a human being and therefore having the necessary requisites and foundations for salvation, which are granted only to human beings, and enable them to transcend the plane of temporality and suffering; (3) to dwell in meditation on the frailness of all things and beings, an indispensable method for progressive mental purification, as also for liberation from the received preconceptions of the masses and from becoming entangled in a world dominated inevitably by transitoriness; (4) to continue to progress on the way of purification through the meditation on the sufferings of existence and the punishments threatening after death for those who have not followed the right path; (5) to seek refuge in the three 'Jewels', the Buddha, the Teaching, the religious community, in order to find protection with them from suffering and punishment; (6) to recognize the inevitability of moral causality and the irrevocable connection between cause and effect; (7) to win insight into the necessity of unbroken practice and concentrated attentiveness, which alone can offer a way out of this world of temporality; (8) to meditate on the interweaving of cause and effect (rten 'brel, Skt. pratiya-samutpada) through which existence is carried on from birth to birth; (9) to make the vow to strive for Enlightenment according to the precepts of the Mahayana, and to live within oneself the experience of the path of meditation.


14 As mentioned above (p.259), the teacher of the founder of this school was a Pandit from Kashmir.

15 This division of the Tantras into four classes, which became generally recognized in the course of time, is the result of elaboration on the part of scholiasts, and it is by no means the only division; other classifications speak of five or six groups (as with the rNyung ma pa, cf.pp.77ff.

16 As was noted above, we render rlung by 'vibratory capacity' or 'vibratory power'. The literal meaning is breath or 'wind'. The term corresponds to the Skt. prana = respiration, breathing, vital breath in its multiple aspects and effects. It signifies mobility, the force which represents the 'vehicle' of the sams and is also at the same time a universal principle penetrating everything. The so-called 'channels' (Skt. nadi) also do not correspond to any physiological reality. They refer rather to an ideal physiology by virtue of which the mechanism of the meditation process takes place. Nadi is the void, an artery, the empty branch of a plant. Thig le means 'drop', 'point', Skt. bindu, an invisible point; however, in Tantric symbolism it stands for 'semen', the origin and precondition of the unfolding of creation and reproduction. No.72, p.17a, defines the thig le as consciousness of Being ab initio, not determined by the duality of appearance and voidness. If the two syllables are separated, thig means absolute truth, the unalterable, the void, point, while le is appearance, relative truth. Hence the expression thig
le signifies the coincidence or non-duality of the two concepts. This multiplicity of meaning present from the beginning has to be constantly born in mind, because it is thanks to this plurality of meanings that the expression can be adapted to the polyvalent nature of mystical terminology.

17 On this question Tsong kha pa took a viewpoint opposed to that of the Sa skya pa, as is shown by No.95, pp.3, 8ff, and also by No.101, p.11a.

18 The three ‘bodies’ form the basis of doctrine and soteriology. Naturally the term ‘body’ (which corresponds exactly to the Tibetan word sku) is not to be understood in its ordinary sense. It is a question here of three modes of existing of consciousness of Being, concerning both its revelation and its attainment. The bodies are of the same essence (ro geig, No.84, p.42b). The body of infinite spiritual potentiality is the coincidence or identity of Being and of Consciousness devoid of any emanation or vibration. The body of co-fruitation or body of enjoyment is a mode of being and manifesting of the same Consciousness of Being. The apparent body is its manifestation again in this world as Buddha (ibid., pp.44a, b). The apparent body, which functions as the spiritual ‘master’, could neither appear nor fulfil its task if the body of infinite spiritual potentiality was not immanent within it. These three modes of being are integrated in that supreme state of existence which forms their foundation and the precondition of their existence (ngo bo nyid sku, the ‘body in se’). In the process of meditation it is therefore not a question of living through phases separate from each other but rather of achieving aspects of a single, indivisible and atemporal unity, once the dichotomy which imprisons us in a net of empty appearances and relationships has been overcome.

The body of infinite spiritual potentiality, a fundamental element in the Buddhist system of salvation, is consequently to be distinguished clearly from the chos dbyings (Skt. dharmadhatu), for which concept I might propose the translation ‘infinite potential existentiality’. In fact chos dbyings designates voidness transcending all qualification, the overcoming of every dichotomy, and simultaneously also the precondition of the dichotomy. Dichotomy and voidness, in fact, become one and the same, since one cannot exist without the other and both actually represent a succession of positions which cease in the supreme silence. This is a very concise presentation of a subject on which the doctrinal opinions of the different schools (and especially that of the Jo nang pa, cf.p.68) frequently diverge.

19 The Sa skya pa and dGe lugs pa recognize a fivefold division of the ‘method of achievement’ (cf.p.56) (although they hold other groupings to be also possible): after the preliminary isolation of the body (lus dben) follows (1) isolation of the word (ngag dben); (2) isolation of the mind (sams dben) (cf.p.108) through concentration of the mind on three points or drops (thig le) in the nose, the heart and the genitals; (3) isolation of the mapa-body (divided into pure and impure); (4) isolation of the light, which is also divided into two kinds (dpe, exemplary, reflected in the moment of experience in which it is received, and later real, don, in the moment of actualization); (5) coincidence (zung jug) of the moment of experience with that which is beyond experience (Buddhahood). Cf. Ruegg, 1966, pp.101ff, note 1.
20 The other schools generally speak of three vehicles only, that of the
Sravakas and Pratyekabuddhas (the Hinayana, or Lesser Vehicle); that of
the Bodhisattvas (Mahayana, or Great Vehicle, also called vehicle of the
Paramitas); and Vajrayana, the Vehicle of Tantra. Cf. above, p.257, n.21.
21 Or better, as Mircea Eliade proposes, 'entasy', or, as I would suggest,
'synentasy'.
22 The five Buddhas (Vairocana, Akshobhya, Ratnasambhava, Amitabha,
Amoghasiddhi), either alone or together with their various paredras.
23 These phonemes (mantra) are syllables which each correspond to a divine
plane represented symbolically by a deity. The syllable, which is filled
with evocatory power, contains the essence of the god, which can be
expressed by a pure sound. Mantra is besides a series of norms which must
be observed and followed according to their strict meaning. They protect
(tru) the mental processes (man) from the seductions of the world and thus
aid the process of liberation.
25 I.e., the wish to attain Enlightenment.
26 Skt. stupā; tomb of a saint, reliquary, etc.
27 In other words, the libido reintegrated into unity with consciousness of
Being.
28 Rig pa is present in us as inner intelligence (nang rig) and has the capacity to
transform itself into sems, the dichotomizing principle. The process of
reintegration consists in the quiescence of sems and of its activity through
the reattainment of rig pa and of the light of Being. Thus the transcendence
of all that can be thought in the world of illusory objects is brought about,
and the radiant rig pa returned to its indefinable purity.
29 Each of these five rays has its own colour: white, red, green, yellow and
dark blue.
30 The five Buddhas, cf. note 22 above.
31 The progressive actualization of the vision is accomplished through four
'looks' (gcigs) which gradually illuminate the various aspects of the apparent
world (nang ba). These looks are also symbolically called lamps. They are
the lamp of water, the far-reaching (rgyang zhabz), i.e. the manifestation of
objects through the vision of the eye, in that the apparent world is the inner
light which has gone out of itself; the lamp of flesh, i.e. of thought (Skt. cittā
= sems) which is the light as subject (sha'i sgron ma or shes rab sgron ma); the
lamp of emptiness, which illuminates the 'drop', 'point', potentiality of all
things (thig le) situated in the heart; and finally the 'pure lamp', the vision
of existentiality in its pure state (No.103, pp.24–5, and No.155, pp.77f.f.).
If thus the 'karmic vibratory capacity' is recognized in the vision of the
'lamp of the existential sphere', its pure part evokes the vision ('lamp') of
the void, which is situated in the point, in potentiality (thig le). This point
appears as round and surrounded by five lights. If it is contemplated
through the 'far-reaching lamp', the experience of the object-free inner
intelligence (nang rig) which is within us takes place. This experience is the
lamp of spontaneous cognition (No.103, p.31).
According to other sources:
1 Lamp 'of flesh': the five lights are seen not as projected outwards, but as
situated inside, like a lamp contained within a vessel.
2 Lamp ‘of the artery’ (rtsa, Skt. nadi, cf. note 16 above), as the path that leads to the manifestation of the five lights.
3 Lamp ‘of the water’, as the door through which the five lights shine.
4 Lamp ‘of existentiality’ (dbyings), when the five lights appear as objects.
5 Lamp ‘of the void’, revelation of the five lights.
6 Lamp ‘of supreme consciousness’, i.e. of the transcendent consciousness which represents the essence of rig pa in its own being.
Such experiences take place at the moment of death or during ascetic practices.
32 So too with the bKa' brgyud pa; taking up a motive that often recurs in the Saivite schools of India bSod nams rgyal mitshan pa praises the human body as a means of salvation: There is nothing higher than the human body (No.118, p.18).
33 Other methods are known too (No.72, pp.12ff.).
(a) to fix one’s gaze on the heaven as on a white surface (dkar khrig).
(b) to fix one’s gaze on the rising and setting sun (dmar khrig).
(c) to fix one’s gaze on the moon (ser khrig).
(d) to fix one’s gaze on the sun through a thin cotton cloth (seng ras khrag khrig).
(e) to fix one’s gaze on three lamps (me khrig).
A rock crystal or a silver mirror can also be used.
34 Tsamba is the name of the everyday Tibetan food made of barley flour mixed with tea and butter. This paste is also used for the preparation of gtor ma during ceremonies.
35 Bum here = mandala = paradise.
36 Besides the division into the five families of the pentad other groupings also exist; for example, that into six families, the standard five plus Vajradhara. This division is accepted by the authors of the bya rgyud treatises.
In a further division into five families, also from the bya rgyud, the names are different: Tathagata, Ratna, Padma, Karma, Vajra (i.e. Vairocana, Ratnasambhava, Amitayuh, Amoghasiddhi, Aksobhya).
37 Here we are dealing with an extremely complicated meditation process, which, although it has its roots in the teaching of Naropa, makes use of different methods for its actualization in the different schools. The indications I give above are to be understood therefore as a summary account of those points held in common. The sgyu lus, the maya-body, is interpreted in very different ways by the various schools. Some authors, going back to a fundamental idea of the Mahayana, that all the apparent world is at base maya, take the sgyu lus to be simply sgyu ma, Skt. maya. I am writing a work on this subject which will appear shortly, and in which I will discuss the various interpretations of the six ‘principles’ of Naropa.
38 I.e. maya-body, cf.above, p.58.
39 I.e. the body of the intermediate existence between death and rebirth.
40 I.e. the incorporeal mental body.
41 White = male, red = female.
In the images of paradise, of the heavenly worlds and of the mandala which are evoked in the course of the meditation process, each of our individual elements is drawn into a particular sphere of radiation: the components of our illusory personality (phung po) into the pentad, the four or five spheres of the senses (khams) to their four or five paredras, the arteries and muscular fibres into the lesser deities (dPa bo, mKha’ ’gro ma, etc.). These emanations can either emerge from the light radiated from the sens and from the very subtle respiration, which are situated in the heart, or from the light awakened by the complicated yogic exercise.

The eight kinds of danger from which sGrol ma saves are lions, elephants, fire, snakes, thieves, water, epidemics, enemies (Tucci, 1949, p.390).

In ordinary people, that is.

Chapter 5  Monkhood, monastery life, religious calendar and festivals

1 Upper and lower, that is, with respect to the localities where they evolved.
2 gTsang (West-Central Tibet) is the province where bKra shis lhun po, Gyantsc, Shigatse etc. are situated; dBus is Central Tibet where Lhasa is situated. Many monks from the two Tantric colleges were among the refugees who came to India in and after 1959, and the schools have been formed again in India, where they continue to operate (G.B.S.).
3 The rdo rje, literally ‘diamond’ but also ‘lightning’ is an instrument which is held during the ceremonies. From a central nucleus three or five rays emerge which join again at the ends. Cf. Figure 2.
4 A slightly alcoholic beverage produced by the fermentation of barley.
5 The items used for the offerings or as ritual implements are called nye bar spyod pa. Twelve or sixteen of these are listed, of which the most important are listed in the text below (beginning with the objects symbolizing the five senses). However, the individual rituals vary very much, depending on whether the deities invoked are peaceful (zhi) or terrifying (drag po), and also depending on the mode of performance, which follows a particular Tantra. This is especially true for the musical instruments. In many liturgies, for example, only the sil snyan are used (reserved to Kye rdo rje in the Sa shya pa and Ngor schools). In the rituals concerned with the confession of sins (ltung bkshags) only ring shag are used, etc. In addition, in liturgies addressed to the terrifying deities the mchod pa begins from the right and proceeds anticlockwise, while for peaceful deities it starts at the left and goes clockwise. mChod are divided into four groups, each higher than the preceding one: outer, i.e. the offerings; inner, i.e. mental; secret, accompanied by the practices acquired in the course of the initiation, without any intention of obtaining any kind of return; pure meditation on the ‘void’.
6 These are, more precisely, the five ‘great kinds of flesh’ (sha chen): flesh of cattle, of dog, of horse, of elephant, of man. The five ‘ambrosias’ mentioned are excrement, blood, sperm, juice of the five ‘great kinds of flesh’, urine. In general though the gtor ma whose names appear to indicate the use of animal or even human remains are made out of moulded and coloured
butter and flour in such a way that the moulded forms are shaped according to the organs, entrails, heart etc. mentioned.

7 Among the Sa skya pa, for example, there are the following disciplines: (i) rgyud sde stiyi rmam bshad; (ii) ljon shing chen mo; (iii) rtags pa gavis pa. Among the rNyung ma pa, there are the works of kLong chen pa, etc.

8 In the rNyung ma pa school there are special mantras for bringing about a reincarnation.

9 The following religious acts were performed: recitation (kha büm), meditation (bsam gian sgom), ceremonies accompanied by the corresponding hand gestures (phyag skor) and by liturgical action (mchod phun) (G.T.).

As a consequence of the Chinese takeover, these four great monasteries, and the many smaller monasteries which were dependent on them, no longer exist as functioning entities. According to recent reports only a few old monks remain in Se ra, dGa’ ldan and ’Bras spungs in place of the many thousands before 1959. What is described in the text, although mostly given in the present tense, therefore refers to a past situation. The principal monasteries of the other schools, which were also for the most part in Central and East Tibet, also appear to have been closed down or reduced to only a nominal existence.

Tibetan monasticism, however, continues to flourish, at the time of writing (1977), both among the refugees and in certain regions around the borders of Tibet. The rNyung ma pa and bKa’ brgyud pa have long been the dominant sects in Sikkim, Bhutan and parts of Nepal, and they still have numerous monasteries among the culturally Tibetan peoples of these areas. Further West, in Lahul, Spiti and Ladakh, now under Indian control, there are some monasteries of the dGe lugs pa and other schools. The monastic life of these regions was not directly threatened by the Chinese takeover of Tibet proper, and indeed the influx of refugee lamas has led to something of a religious revival among some of these populations, in the short term at least.

The refugees themselves, now settled in India, Nepal and elsewhere, have established many small monasteries and temples. Monks from the great dGe lugs pa monasteries described in the text, and from major monasteries of the other sects, have reconstituted their monastic communities in exile. Many aspects of the organization described by Professor Tucci (e.g. the monastic training, the debates, the dge bshes examinations) thus continue to exist among the refugees, if on a reduced scale (G.B.S.).

10 Religious education is divided into two clearly separate but converging aspects; first the study of the sacred texts, using the interpretations of the master as a basis (thos), and then reflection on the object of study (bsam).

11 One can also speak of a division into four groups of dge bshes, since besides those mentioned there are also the dge bshes rdo ram(s) pa and the dge bshes gling se ba (gseb). These, however, do not have to follow the heavy curriculum of the first two groups, and often they are merely titles conferred in recognition of special merits.

12 The spring teaching period, for example, begins with dbyid chos dang po and ends with dbyid chos chen mo.
The studies in the chos grva are divided into four periods: (a) morning study-period (zhogs chos) during which recitation of sacred texts predomi-
nates, and discussions and debates on theological and logical questions play only a secondary role; (b) day period (nyin chos), in which the reverse is true; (c) evening period (dgong(s) chos, also called sku rim) in which recitation predominates; (d) night period (mThin chos, also called dam bca'), reserved exclusively for debates, and confined to those monks who are well-versed in the sacred scriptures.

During the seventh month two gatherings each day (called rig grva, wisdom courses) are organized for fifteen days. In these learned monks expound the sacred scriptures or dispute on questions of logic. On this occasion the spyi gso presents the monks with tsamba and a bread baked of flour and barley, which is of a longish shape in Se ra and round in bKra shis lhun po (these are called kha zes, at bKra shis lhun po they are also known as khur ra). This custom also takes place at the other main festivals (dus chen).

Though there exist other classifications of the Buddha's life, both into twelve acts and also into sixteen.

Magical instrument; also name of a deity invoked in exorcistic ceremonies.

The sMon lam festival lasts for twenty-one days, from the fourth to the twenty-fifth of the first month. During its course six solemn monastic gatherings take place; three are 'dry' (skam tshogs) and three 'wet' (rlon tshogs), with the two types alternating (dry-wet, wet-dry, etc.). During the 'dry' assemblies liturgical ceremonies take place during the day and the scriptures are read at night, without the monks receiving tea, soup and money (sku 'gyed) as they do at the 'wet' ceremonies, which consist exclusively of the reading of liturgical texts.

Various liturgies are used for this ritual, e.g. dpal mgon phyag drug, dMag zor rgyal mo, gDugs dkar mo, Seng ge gdong ma. The Sa skyi pa use dPal mgon gur zhal bzhi pa, and the rNyin ma pa employ bKa' brgyad, gDugs dkar mo, mGon po ber nag.

dbyu gu drug cu (rtsa) bzhi, the sixty-four deities of the mandala of gShin rje (= Skt. Yama).

The deer also plays an important role in the Bon po rituals and was sacrificial in their New Year ceremonies (cf. pp.273, note 24).

Protective deities, opposed to the powers of evil.

For another ritual cf. in the Rin chen gter mdzod VII, ll, 6a; XV, 8.

Chapter 6 The folk religion

1 Protectors of the Law.

2 Binding down through magic (Latin).

3 Rin chen bzang po too had to bring about the submission of a local demon (a Bon divinity) before he could build his temples: sKar rgyal, No. 113, p.214.

4 Burnt offerings of incense or scented herbs (Latin); singular, suffmen.

5 I prefer not to designate this folk religion by the term mi chos, because mi chos can have a much wider range of meaning. That is to say, this expression is often used for the complex of moral laws and customs which Buddhism
prescribed uniformly for all believers at the time of its adoption. Cf. No. 98. This, however, is the learned tradition; in the folk songs of Spiti, for example, one finds lha chos (Buddhism), bon chos and mi chos. Cf. Tucci, 1966, p. 92.

6 Phud alone refers to the offering of milk and barley. gsol phud is an offering which is common in, for example, the sgrub grwa or Tantric schools: on a silver dish (pad sder) the vessel for the phud (phud phor) is placed, containing the drink-offering (skyems); the offering consists of grains of various kinds mixed with tea, chang and milk. Alternatively various offerings (phud) mixed with milk, chang and tea are prepared in a special vessel called mchod thib.

7 Serpents, subterranean powers who live, in particular, close to sources of water.

8 For one who is pure a gdon can cause no danger even if it does arise, since he can defend himself through Tantric formulae (gsang smags), meditations on the void or on compassion, through worship of his bla ma, through exorcisms of some powers (klu, etc.).

9 = Skt. stupa, cf. Chapter 4, note 26 (p. 264).


11 The Vajracchedika or 'Diamond Sutra'.

12 There are many types of mados; those for the prevention of dangers threatening one in the physical realm (las), in the spiritual realm (semsh), dangers threatening the land (yul), those threatening a man, a woman, property, herds, etc. The most appropriate places to perform the mados ritual are three-peaked mountains, junctions of paths and crossroads, places near waterfalls or those where neither sunlight nor moonlight can fall.

13 These nam mkha' are an essential part of the mados. They are mentioned in the treatise on funeral rites edited by Lalou (1953, p. 351). Cf. Figure 18.

14 Cf. the murder of Glang dar ma (above, p. 19), and also the Chinese version of the Mahaparinirvana Sutra.


17 Cf. in this connection the illuminating investigation of R. A. Stein in Sino-Indian Studies (1957c).

18 They consist of (1) srog lha, god of the srog, the vital strength concentrated in the heart (cf. above); (2) dgra lha, whose duty is the destruction of the enemy in battle (dmag dpung bkyes la dgra dpung thul, No. 69); (3) pho lha, god of the father's lineage or paternal ancestors (pha zer); (4) mo lha; (5) yul lha, with its seat on the crown of the head etc. Many accounts put the deified mother's brother (chang lha), the god of the mother's lineage, in the place of the pho lha. In this group of lha we find incorporated to a certain degree the continuity and defence of the kin-group and its property, if with certain variations which can be explained as the result of differences in epoch and of social organization (matriarchy and therefore greater importance of the
maternal kin). On the soul according to Tibetan conceptions cf. Stein, 1957c.

19 Guide of the soul after death (Greek).

20 Although there is as far as I know no analogous tradition in India, there are, however, two books, the Bhaisajyaguru (Taishô No.449, p.403) and the Avatamsaka Sutra (Hua yen king, translated by Buddhahadra, Taishô No.278, p.680) in which two gods are spoken of who accompany man and have the same origin and same name as him. In other books, which are certainly apocryphal, these become gods who are born together with man and who observe what good and evil he does. On the development of this doctrine in China (including the Taoist schools as well) cf. M. Soymié, 1966.


22 Ibid., p.87.

23 The Tibetan Book of the Dead, as we know it in its various present-day versions, which vary very much from each other, is composed of diverse elements. A very much simplified version was found at Tun-huang (cf. Lalou, 1949).

24 The king of anger. The bgegs are demons.

25 Only the initial letter, not the prefix; if the name is blo (pronounced lo) the letter l is written, if the name is ngag (as in Ngag dbang) the letter ng.

26 Literally = died, returned.

27 Cf. note 4 above.

28 In the gtor ma ritual one is instructed to use a support in the form of the divine yak (lha gyag); the kind of stone which lies under the knee of the celebrant of the pra ritual is also prescribed. The signs appear in the mirror and are divided into good and bad; they act as predictions of the future: khyim phyag, srid phyag, gdan phyag, cho phyag, lam phyag etc.

The many-sided Tibetan scholar Jam ngon Mi pham rgya mtsho wrote a book on omens and their interpretation which is very widely distributed in Tibet (brTag pa sna tshogs pa'i skor nor bu me long; vol.nga of his collected works).

29 Propitiatory or apotropaic ceremony which involves the use of a consecrated vessel (ghata).

30 According to Chinese sources the arrow was also used by other ‘barbarians’ for the transmission of messages. Cf. P. Demiéville, ‘Quelques traits de moeurs barbares dans une chantefable chinoise des T’ang’, Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae, vol.15, 1962, no.1–2, p.74.

31 These are some of the best-known edifying dramas or narratives of Tibet.


Chapter 7 The Bon Religion

1 Since the publication of this book many Bon po texts have been published in India. This chapter is necessarily based only on the material available at the time of writing (i.e. before 1970).
2 d and n are often interchanged in Tibetan. No.35, p.6 also affirms that Bon = Bod.

The word bon is to be related to the verb bon, which is used in the sense of zlo, 'pray', 'murmur' (of formulae; Skt. japa), 'invite', to invoke or ask a higher being, king or god, and also in the sense of gsal, 'present, offer something' (cf. Uray, 1964). However, it is clear that these meanings make up only a small part of the area of signification acquired by the word bon in the course of its development. Cf. also Snellgrove, 1967.

3 Concerning Zhang zhung I remain of the opinion which I have already expressed (Tucci, 1956); cf. Petech, 1967, p.252.

4 According to some sources (e.g. the La dwags rgyal rab), Glang dar ma was led into heresy not by the Bon po but by four Indian Brahmins. Richardson's suggestion (1957, p.76), that Glang dar ma fell under the influence of Saivite schools, although only a hypothesis at present, deserves to be taken into account in future research. In any case one must note that Saivite schools and cults flourished in the regions bordering on West Tibet (Kashmir, Gilgit, Swat), cf. Tucci, 1958, pp.297ff.; 1963, p.70. Of course when one speaks of Saivite influences on the Bon religion it is primarily the form of Bon which the Tibetans called 'modified Bon' (cf.p.224) which is meant, the stage which first began to be organized systematically. The Bon po invited by Gri gom (cf.p.224) came from the land of Gurnavatta between India and sTag geig, they performed rituals (No.85, ja, p.7a) and behaved like certain extreme sects of Saivism such as the Kapalika. Gurnavatta is unknown to me; in the geographical lists of the Purana the only name of similar sound which I can find is Urna: Urna darsas tathiva ca. Cf. D. C. Sircar, Studies in the Geography of Ancient and Medieval India, Varanasi, 1960; W. Kirfel, Das Purana vom Welgebäude, Bonn, 1954, p.118 v.56 (Sircar, op.cit., p.37 reads huna here). These people are called mountain-dwellers (parvatasrayina).

5 These came about either through contacts with Central Asiatic peoples, through the intermediary of Manichaicism, which was widespread in these regions, or, later on, through the influence of the Uighurs (Gabain, 1961).

6 It can be deduced from the description of the king’s funeral rituals, in which at a particular stage the soul is ‘gathered together’, that the soul was understood as something of material nature, if extremely subtle.

7 According to No.35, p.22, the Bon books too would have been translated from books of other countries (Sum pa, sTag geig, Zhang zhung, India, China, Khrom).

8 Though a peak of the same group of mountains also bears this name (No.2, p.14).

9 Ti se is Mount Kailasa, on which according to Saivite tradition Siva resides together with Parvati.

10 We are confining ourselves here to the tradition as it has taken form in West Tibet. In East Tibet a similar cycle of myths is centred around the mountain sPam A myes ma chen.

11 This white yak is opposed to the black, demonic yak; the yak is tamed like the horse. Many legends have arisen on this theme; they are connected with the hunt which, as mentioned above, itself had a ritual character.
(Several fragments of these legends have come down to us, Thomas, 1957, ch.1A, pp.20ff.) The legends were probably recited before the hunt in order to assure success.

12 The name under which he is known is gShen rab mi bo, 'the man, the supreme gShen'. Some understand rab as rabs, meaning 'origin', so that gShen rab would represent 'the man who is descended from the gShen'. This interpretation seems unacceptable to me; gShen rab corresponds to the Indian paramaguru, 'supreme master', and indicates that even if there had been and were many gShen, he surpassed them all. He is the great master (though cf. also note 25, below).

13 As also the Bon po (No.35). He was possessed by a demon and was a bitter enemy of the Bon teaching.

14 I have gone into detail with these genealogies, which certainly go back to very ancient times, in order to make it clear that when we speak about the pre-Buddhist religion in Tibet (even if we wish to call it Bon after the name of some of its priests) we should remember that it consists of many different layers, as the genealogies themselves bear witness. The genealogies are closely linked with the cosmogonies and the recitation at the New Year’s Festival, and so to the religious life of a particular group.

Naturally all these religious forms have something in common, which is why we can speak of Se Bon, Bon A zha, Bon Sum pa, the Bon of Zhang zhung and so on. There were analogies and points of contact. However, we cannot deduce that the pre-Buddhist religion was unified in nature either in a spatial or a temporal sense.

The name Bon itself, which was borne by the priests, could be transferred by analogy to the exorcists of other countries where almost identical cult-forms and exorcisms could be found. This is still true today; the folk religion as it is practised in West Tibet at the present time certainly differs with regard to its myths and the divine and demonic presences recognized in it from the folk religion of the East or South-East. This results from the facts that the ethnic basis in these areas differs, their contacts with other cultures have been different, and finally the resistance which Buddhism encountered from the local tradition was not the same everywhere.

15 According to some sources (No.42, p.41) the names of the nine classes given above are apparently the Tibetan ones; the corresponding names in the language of Zhang zhung (zhang zhung theg pa) are tho tho, yang tho, spyi tho, snang ldan, rang ldan, bzehed ldan, lha rtsi, yang rtsi, bla na med.

16 Or perhaps 'four doors' and 'a treasure as fifth', as Snellgrove (1967) translates. Unfortunately I received Snellgrove’s work only after finishing my own. In this case we would have the plan of a mandala, a square with four doors and the treasure at the centre.

17 However, phyia (which is also written phywa) also designates a class of gods who determine the course of events.

18 Little cords of various colours.

19 'A' as the symbol of pure sound, as in the Saivite and Buddhist Tantric texts, and as origin and source of all sounds.

20 No.31 also knows only four Bon groups (p.267 of Francke’s edition), namely sma tshogs pa’i bon po, gyang ldon pa’i bon po, dmu thag ‘dogs pa’i bon po
and zhal srov pa'i bon po. Despite the differences in the terminology we can recognize in the third group, the Bon po who bind the rope of the dmu, the phya gshen who predict the future through the ju thig. The g.yang ldon pa'i bon po who procure good omens and circumstances (g.yang) are very similar to the snang gshen. Similarly the dur bon can be seen in the zhal srod pa, those ‘with a sombre appearance’ (srod = mun pa, darkness). The sna tshogs gshen, the ‘gshen of all things’, are probably the priest-magicians with miraculous powers, the ‘phrul gshen. The terminology is evidently different because the book edited by Francke comes from another region where the designations varied although the ritual functions remained the same. In late lists one also finds five gshen, namely phya (trained in gdon and yas), snang (control over tha and 'dre), srid (control over bla, soul, and over mind and body), 'phrul (control of dgra and gnyen) and ye (capable of understanding the non-duality of existentiality and of the transcendent mind) (No.42, p.7a).

In late texts the gshen are also summarily reduced to three, corresponding to the three planes, those of body, speech and mind, which we referred to so often in discussing Buddhism: sku gshen, ‘gshen body’, without birth; gsung gshen, ‘word gshen’ without interruption; thugs gshen, ‘mind gshen’, not subject to error (No.40, p.47,a, b).

21 This is the same also among the Gurung of Nepal (cf. Pignède, 1966).

22 Therefore the palace was also called ‘house of the souls’.

23 The name ide’u also appears as an essential element of the names of many Tibetan kings, some mythical, others historical.

24 Special sacrifices in which a deer with great antlers was the sacrificial victim were of particular importance (No.3, pp.318, 19). With the victory of Buddhism a change took place, and a deer-skull was used for the offering of the ritual gifts (the sacrifices of yaks and rams were similarly substituted by images of these animals made out of tsamba and butter, loc.cit.). This custom of using a deer-skull (gtsod thod) still exists today in the offerings for rTa khyung 'bar ba (one can also use an iron vessel in its place). The various offerings are placed within it, along with goat’s or dog’s blood. The ceremony has the purpose of driving away hostile beings (bgegs, 'byung, nad gdon etc.). rTa khyung 'bar ba is represented iconographically with a horse’s head and the face of a khyung. During the meditation accompanying the ritual one imagines that the neighing of the horse makes the triple world shake, while flames leap forth from the khyung. In this deity rTa mgrin (Skt. Hayagriva) and the khyung converge into a terrifying synthesis.

25 No.85, p.8b, places ‘On mo lung (called ‘land of the gshen’) in 'Om, while No.35, p.27, situates ‘Ol mo lung in sMan yul, which is named together with Pham yul and Yar mo thang (ibid., p.5) and in sTag cig. A biography of gShen rab (No.31, pp.313, 331) has him originally come from Sogs kha; elsewhere Sogs kha is the name of Tibet at the time of sBu rgyal gnyan po and indicates a locality near the mountain Sham po lha rite, where the descent of gNya' khri took place. More worthy of trust is the general affirmation that he was born in Zhang zhung, more precisely in dNgul mkhar, the Silver Castle. This tradition is supported by the fact that this sacred place is constantly referred to in Bon po litanies and prayers.

From a passage in No.35, p.23, it can be concluded that the tradition
distinguishes between gShen rab mi bo, who descended from heaven and revealed the Bon doctrine, and gShen rab who came from the region of Lake Manasarovar. Of this latter figure it is reported that he resided in Khyung lung and was the author of the part of the Bon scriptures which is regarded as 'bras bon ('Bon Fruit') in distinction to rgyu bon ('Bon Cause') (cf.p.228). Elsewhere the parts of the Bon scriptures are said to have been dropped onto various places in the world by various animals; for example the scriptures were dropped in Zhang zhung by a khyung, an eagle-like bird (No.35, p.24a). In any case gShen rab mi bo is a master like the Buddha.

The Moso or Na-khi, whose religion was the subject of important investigations by Rock, and who moved from A mdo to Li-chiang, trace the origin of their religion to Dto-mba Shi-lo. This name is identified by Rock (and also by Bacot) with sTon pa (master) gShen rab. Rona Tas has now advanced another opinion (1964, p.16).

26 Name of an alphabet used in Nepal.
27 In another place (No.7, p.2a) a different principle of classification is used: bon sku = Kun tu bzang po, longs sku = Srid pa rgyal mo, sprul sku = bDe 'gro gsang yum. In other texts (No.8, p.26a) bon sku = Kun tu bzang po, longs sku = gShen lha 'od dkar, and sprul sku = Ye gshen gsugs phrol.
28 Francke, 1914, p.71.
30 In the last analysis the essence of Bon is the mind, sens (No.41, p.4b). In the later doctrine however the world of manifestation (snang ba) and the ‘Bon body’ (bon sku) are identical (No.42, p.6b).
BIBLIOGRAPHY

1 Tibetan sources

1 gCod kyi tshogs las yon tan kun 'byung (by Si tu'i ming can bstan pa'i nyin byed)
2 'Dzam gling gang ti se'i akar chags tshangs dbyangs yid 'phrog dagos 'dod
3 Pad ma thang yig
   Translated by G. Th. Toussaint, Le dict de Padma, Paris, 1933.
4 Myang chung
5 dBal gsas las rim gyi bs dus don rams len snying po (by Khyung po rje btsun Tha
   yud sver ya tshul me)
6 'Dus pa rin po che'i rgyud dri ma med pa
7 dGongs gsal
8 dGongs rgyud drug gi klad don
9 rGyud 'grel
10 sNang srid mdzod phugs kyi gzhung dang 'grel pa 'phrul gyi sgron me
11 rGya nag skag zlog ces bya ba'i gzungs
12 Lha srung spyi'i gser skyems dang 'phrin bool nyung bs dus
13 bSang mchod yid bzhin nor bu
14 Gongs ti se'i gsol 'debs
15 bZang sphyod 'chi btsu thar lam gsal byed
16 dGra lha'i gtor 'bul
17 Chos skyong mgon po dgra lha bcu gsum gyi bsangs mchod legs pa
18 Seng ge'i gdong pa can gyi mdo
19 Sri bzlog tsa kra bcu gsum pa
20 U rgyan pad mas mdzod pa'i lha mo bgyod kyi tshes grangs rtags pa
21 U rgyan pad ma 'byung gnas kyiis mdzod pa'i dam sri g.yag ru dgra 'jom
22 bDud kyi zhal sgyur
23 lTo nag mtshan ma'i dgra zer
24 Zab don good kyi ma ngag bs dus don len chags nger gcig pa ngya zla kha sbyor
25 rGyal bas dri med lung giis bs ngags pa'i rdo rje 'chang kun dga' bzang po'i zhaps kyi
gsum rab glegs bam bzhia pa las dpal kun rig gi dkyil 'khor yongs rdzogs kyi sgrub
thabs sgri glob pa nam sel
26 bCom ldan 'das mi 'khrugs pa'i sgo nas gshin po rjes su gzang pa'i cho ga
27 gSol 'debs le'u bdun ma'i lo rgyus rim pa phan yon
28 sNang srid mdzod phugs kyi gzhung dang 'grel pa 'phrul gyi sgron me
29 sTon pas lha klu mi gsum gyi slob ma la dpe bu tse rnam pa gsum gyis bon btsan pa'i
   mdo

275
BIBLIOGRAPHY

30 sTon pas 'od zer spro ba'i mdo
31 gZer myig
32 Bod kyi jo mo ye shes mtscho rgyal gyi nam thar mdzad tshul gab pa mgon du byung ba
33 sTon pas 'gro ba sens can gyi nyan mongs pa'i sgrub pa skyong zhing thar par drong ba'i kun rig sgron ma'i cho ga bstan pa'i mdo (cha)
34 bDe bar gshegs pa'i bstan pa thams cad kyi snying po rig pa 'dzin pa'i sde snod rdo rje theg pa snga 'gyur rin po che'i rtogs pa brjod pa lha'i rnga bo che'ita bu'i gtam
35 Gling bzhin bstan pa'i 'byung gnas (manuscript of another version of rGyal rabs Bon gyi 'byung gnas)
36 Vaidurya dkar po (by Sangs rgyas rgya mtscho)
37 Phywa rgya ltar gsang sngags spyi spungs 'gro lugs bris bskang
38 bsTan sngun ma dam can rgya mtscho'i ming grangs
39 Bla ma ston pa pha bu bkra ba gnyis nam thar
40 Lung drug gi 'glei pa
41 lTa ba seng ge sgra bsgrags pa
42 Man ngag 'khor ba dong snyug
43 sGrub thabs nor bu'i phreng ba'i lo rgyus dang po'i myu gu
44 rTa khyung 'bar ba'i me chod me snyung 'khyil ba'i zhal shes snod yig
45 Bla ma drag po rta khyung 'bar ba'i me chod me snyung 'khyil ba
46 sNga 'gyur rnying ma la rgol ngan log rtog bzlog pa'i bstan bcos (by Kun mkhyen ngag gi dbang po)
47 Bla ma drag po rta khyung 'bar ba'i las byang bklags chog tu bsdebs
48 Gag pa gso ba'i thig bsdud btsan 'phrang sel
49 Chos nyid nam mkha'i klong mdzod las, dus bsrang yar ngs tshes bceu'i dus kyi mdzod pa dran pa'i gsal 'debs mthog ba rang gsal gyi gdam pa
50 rDo rje phur pa'i mo sgrub pa'i zin bris gsal ba'i me long
51 Bla bslu 'chi bdag gi gnyul las rgyal ba slob dpon chen pos gnang ba
52 Shi 'dre'i glud
53 gSang bdag dregs pa 'dul byed las tshogs dam sri'i glud mdo
54 Gag pa gso ba'i zin thig bsdud bom 'phrang sel
55 Srid pa gsal byed pra sen dbab pa'i man ngag gzhung gsal byed lag len dang bcas pa'i skor rams
56 gDon khrol dang glud kyi cho ga kha skong sogs dang bcas
57 Bla ma rgyang 'bod kyi gsal 'debs mos gus snying gi gzeng 'debs
58 g, Yang 'gugs me tog char sil
59 Srog bskyed pa bzhin ldan gyi cho ga
60 Zhing lha bstdod pa'i mchod chog gsal 'dod dgu'i sprin phung lo rtog 'phel byed
61 Lo glud 'gong po bkra las lan chags tshul byed
62 Zhing lha tshangs pa'i mchod chog g.yang skyabs dang 'brel ba gzhan phan mtha' yas dngos grub 'dod pa 'jo ba'i bum bsang
63 Ma mo'i 'khrugs bskang bya tshul nges brgya'i tsha gdung sel ba chu shel dbang po (by Ngag dbang tshul khrims nam rgyal)
64 Srog bdag yam shud dmar po'i thugs sprul bstan srung A khu btsan po dgra lha'i sgrub thabs gtor chog gi rim pa cha tshang ma
BIBLIOGRAPHY

65 O rgyan bka’ nan rab brjvid don grub
66 mDos chog nam mkha’i mdzod (by Pad ma dkar po, vol. nya)
67 Bła ma rig ’dzin rgya mtsho mkha’i ’gro chos skyong srung ma rnam dang phas kyi
   lha ingas skyob pa’i man ngag gdam
68 rTa glud
69 sDe brgyad kyi sgos mdo kyi gyer mchod (by Pad ma dkar po, vol. nya)
70 bSangs kyi cho ga dangs grub char ’bebs (by Ngag gi dbang phyug bstan ’dzin
dpal)
71 Mi phyugs gang yin gyi rim gro’i glud rdzongs bya tshul
72 rTa phag yid yin nor bu las mun khris ’od gsal khor yug
73 Theg chen gyi mgon pa’i sde snod las byung ba’i dbu ma’i skar gyi ming gi rnam
grangs (by Klong rdol bla ma)
74 gNam sa snang brgyad ces bya ba theg pa chen po’i mdo
75 Lha mo brgyad rtsis gza’i ’bras dang beas
76 Collection of ’Das log
77 sDom gsun rab tu dbye ba’i bstan bcas (by Sa skya pandita Kun dga’rgyal mtshon
dpal bzang po)
78 bKa’i gdamgs kyi skyes bu dam pa rnam kyi gsung bhos thor bu ba rnam
79 bKa’i gdamgs kyi man ngag be’u bum mgon po’i ’grel ba (Commentary by Dol po
   pa on the bKa’i gdamgs kyi man ngag be’u bum by Po to pa)
80 Jo bo yab sras kyi gsung ’gros pha chos rin po che’i gter mdzod byang chub sams dpa’i
   nor bu’i ’phreng ba rtsa’i ’grel
81 dPag bsam ljon bzang
   Edited by S. C. Das, Calcutta, 1908.
82 Grub mtha’ thams cad kyi khung dang ’dod tshul ston pa legs bshad gsal ba’i me
   long
83 Zhii byed dang good yel gyi chos ’byung rin po che’i ’phreng ba thar pa’i rgyan
84 ’rGyud sde spyi’i rnam par bzhag pa (by Sa skya pa bSod nams rtses mo)
85 Chos ’byung (by dPa’o gtsug lag phreng ba)
86 Klu ’bum
87 Chronicles of the Fifth Dalai Lama
88 rLangs kyi gdung rgyud Po ti bse ru
89 Vaidurya gya’i sel (by Sangs rgyas rgya mtsho)
90 Chos ’byung (by Taranatha)
   Edited by A. Schiefner, St Petersburg, 1868.
91 Deb ther dam pa
92 Bar do thos grol
93 Lam rim chen mo (by Tsong kha pa)
94 stNgags rim (by Tsong kha pa)
95 rGyud kyi lgyal po dpal gsang ba ’dus pa’i man ngag rim pa lnga rab tu gsal ba’i
   sgron me (by Tsong kha pa)
96 gTor ma’i bshad khris legs bshad don bs dus gzhan phan rab gsal (by dGe slong
   spong ba rdo rje, vol. kha)
97 dPal stag lungs gzhi’i gdung rabs zam ma chad par byon pa’i rnam thar ngo mtshar nor
   bu’i do shal skyse dgu’i yid ’phrog
98 Lha chos dang mi chos ’bul ba’i bslab bya nor bu’i ’phreng ba (by sLob dpon sPong
   ba pa rDo rje ming can)
BIBLIOGRAPHY

99 dPal gsang 'dus rtan gyi dkyil 'khor phyin ci ma log pa'i gsal byed dangs grub kun byang (by Blo bzang don grub)
100 rDzogs pa chen po klong chen sning thig gi gdod ma'i mgon po'i lam gyi rim pa'i khrid yig ye shes bla ma (by Rang 'byung rdo rje 'jig med gling pa)
101 rGyud sde bzhis'i don mam par bzhag pa sngags la 'jug pa'i sgo (by dKon mchog rgyal mtshan)
102 Grub pa'i mtha' nmam par bzhag pa'i thub bstan lhun po'i mdzes rgyan (by lCang skya Rol pa'i rdo rje)
103 Yon tan rin po che'i mdzod las 'bras bu'i theg pa'i rgya cher 'grel nmam mkhyen shing rta (by Rang 'byung rDo rje mkhyen btse'i lha)
104 gSang ba sngags kyi rig pa 'dzin pa rnam las nye bar mkho ba'i dam tshig gi rdzas dang yo byad kyi nmam bzhag dugs grub gter mdzod (by bKra shis rdo rje)
105 Sa rnying bka' rgyud sos kyi khyad par mgo smos tsam mu to'i rgyang bod kyi tshul du bya gton gnyan sgron bdud rtsi'i bkang gtor (by 'Jam dbyangs bzhad pa)
106 rDzogs chen yang ti nag po'i mun khrud kyi zhal shes snyan khungs brgyud pa'i man ngag zhab bdun gyis sgrub thabs
107 rDzogs chen yang ti'i mun khrud bkgags pas don grub
108 Chos 'byung bstan pa'i pad ma rgyas pa'i nyin byed (by Pad ma dkar po)
109 rGyal rabs 'phrul gyi lde mig gam deb ther dmor po 'm deb gsar ma
110 bKa' thang sde inga
111 sBa bzhed
112 Ma ni bka' 'bum
113 Chos 'byung (by Bu ston)
Translated by E. Obermiller, History of Buddhism (chos-hbyung) by Bu-ston, 2 volumes, Heidelberg, 1931 and 1932.
114 Dam pa'i chos byung tshul bstan pa'i rgya mshor 'jug pa'i gru chen
115 Deb ther sngon po (by gZhon nu dpal)
116 Dam chos yid bzhin gyi nor bu thar pa rin po che'i rgyan zhes bya ba theg pa chen po'i lam rim gyi bshad pa (by sGam po pa Dugs po lha rje)
117 rGyal rabs gsal ba'i me long
Edited by B. I. Kuznetsov, Leiden, 1966.
118 dPal na to'i chos drug gi khrid yig bde chen gsal ba'i 'od zer stong ldan (by bTsun pa bSod nams rgyal mthshan dpal bzang po)
119 sTon pas gdul dka' btul nas bstan pa spel ba'i mdo' ('Dus pa rin po che'i rgyud, nga)
120 Byams ma rtsa ba'i dkyil 'khor gyi cho ga bstan pa'i mdo' ('Dus pa rin po che'i rgyud, tha)
121 bKa' gdams gsar mying gi chos 'byung yid kyi mdzes rgyan (by bSod nams grags pa)
122 rNyin ma rgyud 'bum dkar cag
123 gZi brjod rab tu 'bar ba'i mdo' ('Dus pa rin po che'i rgyud dri ma med, ya)
124 rGyud sde stpyi'i nmam par gzhag pa rgyas par brjod pa
125 bKa' gdams kyi nmam thar bka' gdams chos 'byung gsal ba'i sgron me

278
BIBLIOGRAPHY

126 Be'u bum sngon po'i ming brda go dka' ba 'ga zhid bshad pa som nyid man sel (by dByangs can dga' ba'i blo gros)
127 gSung 'bum (Collected Works) of Tsong kha pa
gSung 'bum of lCang skya rin po che Ngag dbang chos ldan
128 gSung 'bum of mKhas grub dge legs bzang po
129 gSung 'bum of the first five Sa skya masters
130 Grub mtha'i rnam bshad rang gzhan grub mtha' kun dang zab don mchog tu gsal ba kun bzang zhint gi nyi ma lung rigs rgya mtsho skye dgu'i re ba kun skong
131 'Dus pa rin po che'i rgyud dri ma med pa gzi brjod rab tu 'bar ba'i mdo
132 Sa bdag bshags 'bum
133 rGyal rabs rnam kyi byung ishul gsal ba'i me long (Derge edition)
134 gSung 'bum of Bu ston rin po che
135 gSung 'bum of mKhas grub rje (dGe legs dpal bzang po)
136 gSung 'bum of Klong rdol bla ma
137 gZhan stong khas len seng ge'i nga ro
138 Theg chen bsdu pa'i snying po mchan bsas
139 bKa' gdamgs legs sam pha chos le tshan lnga
140 bKa' gdamgs bu chos le tsan gnyis dpe chos rin chen snyags pa
141 Man ngag rin chen snyags pa
142 gTam rgyud rin chen sgron ma'am rin chen phreng mdzes
143 gSung 'bum of Shes rab rgya mtsho
144 Kun mkhyen chos kyi rgyal po rig 'dzin 'jigs med gling pa
145 gSung 'bum of Taranatha
146 Lha rgyal brud 'dal mthu bo che
147 sLob dpun chen po pad ma byung gnas kyi mdzad pa'i man ngag lta ba'i phreng ba'i mchan 'grel nor bu'i bang mdzad (by Jam dbyangs blo gros rgya mtsho)
148 gCod yul kyi tshogs las yon tan kun ldan gyi dmigs rin bla ma'i gsung rgyun gyi zin bris shel dkar ma long (by Ye shes dbang ldan)
149 Klong chen snying thig
150 dPag bsam rjon bzang, Part III, Re'u mig (Chronological tables)
Edited by Lokesh Chandra, New Delhi, 1959.
151 gSung 'bum of Pad ma dkar po
152 gSung 'bum of dGe 'don grub
153 dGe ba'i bshes gnyen zhang sha ra ba yon tan grags kyi mdzad pa'i lam rim
154 rGyal ba'i bstan pa la 'jug pa'i rim pa skyes bu gsum gyi man ngag yid bzhin bdud rtsi nyin klu (by Taranatha)
155 gSang ba bla med 'od gsal rdo rje snyin po'i gnas gsum gsal bar byed po'i tshig don (by Klong chen rab 'byams pa)
156 rDzo'gs pa chen po sens nyid rang grol (by Klong chen rab 'byams pa)
157 bsTan 'gro yongs la phan pa'i O rgyan sprul pa'i glegs bham (by Blo bde zhab sdbas)
158 rNam par 'dren pa mchog rnam kyi sku gnam la mchod pa bya ba'i cho ga tshogs gnyis rin chen chu 'dzin
159 rMi lam bzang ngsan brda brtags kyi rim pa
160 sTon pas theg pa bzhis pa srid gshen gyi bon gtan la phab pa'i mdo
161 bKa' zab mo shes rab pha rol tu phyin pa theg pa chen po yum gyi dkyil 'khor don bstan pa'i mdo
162 Dra ba nag po'i sgrub thabs drag po gnam lcegs thog 'bebs
163 Dam can rgya mtsho mka' la rang bzhin gyi mnga' grol

279
BIBLIOGRAPHY

2 Books and articles

(1928), *The People of Tibet*, Oxford.
(1958b), *Nekotorye voprosy sotsialno-ekonomicheskikh i politicheskikh otnoshenii v Tibet VII–IX vv.*, Moscow.
Campbell, W. L. (1919), *She-rab Dong-bu or Prajnya Danda by Lu-trub (Nagarjuna)*, Calcutta.
(1891), 'Life of Atisa', *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, vol.60, nos.1–3.

280
(1893b), Indian Pandits in the Land of Snow, Calcutta.
Dasgupta, S. B. (1958), An Introduction to Tantric Buddhism, Calcutta.
(1931), La Vie surhumaine de Guésar de Ling, Paris. (Translated into English as The Superhuman Life of Gesar of Ling, London, 1933, revised edition 1959.)
(1952), Textes tibétains inédits, Paris.
Duncan, M. H. (1955), Harvest Festival Dramas of Tibet, Hong Kong.
(1964), Customs and Superstitions of Tibetans, London.
Ekvall, R. B. (1939), Cultural Relations on the Kansu-Tibetan Border, Chicago.
(1952), Tibetan Skylines, London.
(1954b), Tentes contre le ciel, Paris. (Also appeared in English as Tents Against the Sky, London, 1954.)
(1964), Religious Observances in Tibet; Patterns and Function, Chicago.
Filchner, W. (1933), Kumbum Dschamba Ling, das Kloster der hundertausend Bilder Maitreyas, Leipzig.
(1907), A History of Western Tibet, London.
(1914), Antiquities of Indian Tibet, part 1, Calcutta.
(1923), Tibetische Hochzeitslieder, Hagen und Darmstadt.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Grünwedel, A. (1900), Mythologie des Buddhismus in Tibet und der Mongolei, Leipzig.
(1919), Die Tempel von Lhasa, Heidelberg.
(1963), The Life and Teaching of Naropa, Oxford.
Hackin, J. (1928), Mythologie du lamaïsme. (Tibet, Mythologie Asiatique illustrée.) Paris.
Haenisch, E. (1940), Steuergerechtssame der chinesischen Klöster unter der Mongolenherrschaft, Leipzig. (Berichte über die Verhandlungen der Sächsischen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Leipzig, Philologisch-historische Klasse, 92 Bd.)
(1949), Die Nomaden von Tibet, Vienna.
(1956), Mythen und Mysterien der Tibeter, Cologne.
(1950b), Quellen zur geschichte der tibetischen Bon-Religion, Wiesbaden.
(1956), Die Religionen Tibets, Freiburg i.Br. (Translated into English as The Religions of Tibet, London, 1961.)
(1953), Geschichte der tibetischen Kunst, Leipzig.

282
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Kawaguchi, E. (1909), Three Years in Tibet, Madras.
Kolmaš, J. (1967), Tibet and Imperial China, Canberra. (Australian National University, Centre of Oriental Studies. Occasional Papers, No.7.)
(1957), Les religions du Tibet, Paris.
(1911), Der Roman einer tibetischen Königin (bTsun-mo bka’-thang), Leipzig.
(1923), Use of Human Skulls and Bones in Tibet, Chicago. (Field Museum of Natural History, Anthropology Leaflet No.10.)
(1954), The Eighteen Worthies Crossing the Sea (Report from the Scientific Expedition to the North-Western Provinces of China under the leadership of Dr Sven Hedin), Stockholm.
Lessing, F. and Wayman, A. (1968), mKhas grub rje's Fundamentals of the Buddhist Tantras (translated from the Tibetan), The Hague.
(1930), Moeurs et Costumes des Tibétains, Paris.
(1956), Oracles and Demons of Tibet, The Hague.
Obermiller, E. (1931, 1932), History of Buddhism (Chos-hbyung) by Bu-ston, 2 vols, Heidelberg.
Petech, L. (1939), A Study on the Chronicles of Ladakh, Calcutta.
(1952–56), I missionari italiani nel Tibet e nel Nepal, 7 vols, Rome.
(École pratique des Hautes Études, 1966.)

284
(1952), *Ancient Historical Edicts at Lhasa*, London.
(1957), 'A Tibetan inscription from Rgyal Lha-khan; and a note on Tibetan chronology from A.D.841 to A.D.1042', *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, pp.57–78.

(1952a), *The Na-khi Naga Cult and Related Ceremonies*, Rome.
(1952b), 'The 2 Muan 1 Bpö ceremony, or the sacrifice to heaven as practised by the 1 Na-2 khi', *Annali Lateranensi*, vol.16 (previously published in *Monumenta Serica*, vol.13, 1948).

(1910), 'The Dalai Lama of Lhasa and their relations with the Mandchu emperors of China 1644–1908', *T'oung Pao*, vol.11, pp.1–104.

Roerich, G. (1930), 'The animal style among the nomad tribes of Northern Tibet', *Skythika*, Prague, vol.13, pp.27–44.
(1949, 1953), *The Blue Annals*, 2 vols, Calcutta. (Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal Monograph Series, No.7.)


(1963), 'The Jo nan pas, a school of Buddhist Ontologists, according to the Grub mtha’ šel gyi me loṅ', *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, vol.83, no.1, pp.73–91.
(1966), *The Life of Bu ston Rin po che with the Tibetan text of the Bu ston rNam thar*, Rome.


(1955), ‘The sacred character of the kings of ancient Tibet’, *East and West*, vol.6, no.3, pp.197–205.
(1956a), ‘The symbolism of the temples of bSam-yas’, *East and West*, vol.6, no.4, pp.279–81.
(1956b), *To Lhasa and Beyond*, Rome.
(1963), ‘O-lde-spu-rgyal and the introduction of Bon to Tibet’, *Central Asiatic Journal*, vol.8, no.2, pp.93–103.
Index

Note

Entries are alphabetized as in English, including Tibetan prefix letters; brgyud comes under B, not G. Tibetan ' and Sanskrit diacritic marks are ignored in this respect. While this procedure will probably seem inelegant to Tibetans, the object is to make the index usable to non-specialists, who are otherwise unlikely to know whether to look for brgyud under B, R, G or Y. The brief definitions of terms, and the extensive cross-referencing, are also supplied to help the non-Tibetanist find his or her way around a complex technical vocabulary. In particular, a number of terms are referred to in more than one form in the text (e.g. longs sku, longs stbyod sku and sambhogakāya all represent the same thing) and I have tried to cross-reference fully in all these cases, and also to distinguish between different meanings of the same term where these occur. The definitions are taken, as far as possible, from the text, and in any case refer to the meanings of terms as they are used in the book; some terms have other meanings also. Pronunciations (preceded by pr.) are given for Tibetan proper names, and some important technical terms; they follow the system used in R. A. Stein's Tibetan Civilization (London, 1972). In these pronunciations the final h represents aspiration in kh, ph, th, chh and tsh (i.e. tsh is pronounced as in cat's-hair not as in hat-shelf, and th as in pū-head not as in thank). sh and ch are however pronounced as in English shore, church. S = Sanskrit, T = Tibetan, n = name or note. An asterisk * indicates a place shown on one of the maps.

G.B.S.

a dkar T white letter A 229-30. Cf.272 n.19.
a dkar bon, a dkar gshen T priests of seventh bon vehicle 229-30
a la la T expression of satisfaction 234
A mdo *T (pr. Amdo) n. of region in North-East Tibet 274
a ne T (pr. ani) nun Figure 12e(136). Cf. bisun ma.
A phyi gung rgyal T (pr. Achhi Kunggyel) n. of Bon goddess 216, 218
= gnam phyi gung rgyal, q.v.
A phyi lha mo T (pr. Achhi Lha-mo) n. of Bon goddess 167 = gnam phyi gung rgyal, q.v.
A ti nu ser T (pr. Ati Muwer) n. of Bon deity 220-1, 243
A tsha T (pr. Asha) ancient n. of region, ? = modern North-East Tibet 218, 249, 272 n.14= T'u-yu-hun abbot 9, 125, 128, 130, 139, 143, 161 = mkhen po, q.v.
ahbhidharma S branch of Buddhist philosophy 140, 183 In Tibet more or less synonymous with study of Ahbhidharmakosa, q.v.

Ahbhidharmasamuccaya S n. of text by Asanga 260 n.1

Adbhutakosa S n. of text by Vasubandhu 127, 260 n.1 = magon par mdzod, q.v.

Abhisamayalakara S n. of scripture attrib. to Maitreya 112, 142 = magon rtogs rgyan, q.v.

Absolute Truth cf. Truth, Absolute; Truths, Two

acarya S teacher; (i) 9 = Indian masters, q.v.; (ii) 17 = slob dpon, q.v.

Action, Purity of 54, 75

adhimukti S faith 17 = mos pa

Afghanistan 15

a'h Tantric phoneme 95

Ahriman 216

Ahura Mazda 216

Aksobhya S n. of Tantric deity 97, 105, 264 n.22, 265 n.36 = mi bskyed pa.
One of the Buddhas of the Pentad, q.v.

alayeujjnya S store-consciousness (technical term of Cittamatra school) 60 = ksn gebi

alcohol, ritual use of 8, 17 Cf. chang

Altan Khan, n. of Mongol ruler (C16) 41, 252

amban, title of Chinese representative at Lhasa 254

Amitabha S n. of Tantric deity 42, 54, 97, 264 n.22 = 'od dpag med. One of the Buddhas of the Pentad, q.v.

Amitayuh S n. of Tantric deity, the god of infinite life; a form of Amitabha 265 n.36 = the dpag med, q.v.

Amoghasiddhi S n. of Tantric deity 97, 264 n.22, 265 n.36 = don yod grub pa.
One of the Buddhas of the Pentad, q.v.

ananda S bliss (Hindu concept) 81

aegyanas S ritual placing of hands on parts of body 96

animal sacrifices. Cf. sacrifices, animal.

Anra Mainyu 216

antaradharma S intermediate state between death and rebirth 194 = bar do, q.v.

anu-yoga(-tantra) S fifth Tantra class (eighth vehicle) of rNyung ma pa system 76-7, 79-81, 87

anuttara(-tantra) S highest Tantra class of 'new' system 65 = bla na med rgyud, q.v.

Apparent Body. See Body, Apparent.

archery 153

arhat S class of Buddhist saints, sixteen or eighteen in number 148 = gnas brian

aristocracy, Tibetan, as patrons of Buddhism 25, 27. Cf. also mi drag art, Buddhists in Tibet 21-2, 35, 104, 147, 250

asamkhyeya S immeasurable aeon 52

asamuktia S unconditioned 67

Asanga S n. of Indian Buddhist teacher (C4?) 31, 43, 260 n.1

Astriyangadya S n. of text 175

asanga-prapamana S full prostration 157

ati-yoga(-tantra) S highest Tantra class (ninth vehicle) of rNyung ma pa system 76-7, 80-1, 84, 105

Atisha (Dipamkarasrijana) S n. of Indian teacher (982-1054) 18-9, 21-3, 35, 37-8, 250, 258 n.4, 259 n.9(ch.3)

avadhuti S central 'channel' 72 = dbu ma(ii)

Avalokitesvara S n. of Tantric deity 41, 105, 170, 252 = spyin ras gcigs, q.v.

Asatamatsaka Sutra S n. of scripture 270 n.20 (reference is to Chinese translation)

avidya S ignorance 13 = ma rig pa, q.v.

ayana S (the six) senses 79 = skye mchog, q.v.

ba tu T n. of plant (species of rhododendron) 168

'Ba' ra pa rGyal mtshan dpal bzang T (pr. Barapa Gyentsen Pelsang) n. of Tibetan lama (1310-91), founder of Shangs pa order 37

Badakshan 245, 248

bag chags T 108 = engrams, q.v.

'Bal T (pr. Pel) n. of family in royal period 4

bal thod T woolen hat 242

bal thod can T having a woolen tuft (or hat?) 228

bal tshon T wool threads Figure 18(182)

bal tshon ma Inga T five-coloured wool threads 228

290
INDEX

bal tahan sa tshogs T various wool threads Figure 19(184-5)
bali S grain or rice offerings to gods, local spirits etc. 206. Translated in T by gtor ma, q.v.
bandhe S monks or lamas unattached to a monastery 10, 132, 173, 206, 257 n.12 cf. bandha; monks, wandering; lamas, wandering
bandha S monks unattached to a monastery 9-10 cf. bandhe
‘bandit monks’ 20
bang rim T stages or terraces of Mount Meru 182
bang mdzod lha T (pr. pangdzö bla) god of the store room 187, 200
‘bangs’ T subject (of a ruler) 183
bar T intermediate space between heaven and earth 223
‘Bar ba snums bdom T (pr. Barwa pün dun) n. of group of deities 166
bar chad T hindrances 155, 228
bar chad sel ba T n. of ritual to remove hindrances 157
bar do T (pr. bardo) (i) intermediate existence between death and rebirth 56, 74-5, 99, 101, 107, 196, 260 n.4 = antarābhava, q.v.
(ii) abbr. for bar do thos grol, q.v. 195
Bar do thos grol T (pr. Parto Thötrul) n. of text (No.92, “Tibetan Book of the Dead”) 64, 194, 196. Cf.270 n.23
bcu dpam T monastic official 133
bcu thig T divinatory cord 234.
Alternative spelling for ju thig, q.v.
bcud T contents; (i) substances contained in vessel 116
(ii) living beings in the external world 215. Cf. sned bcud
bdag ’dra Pad ma ’byung gnas T ‘Padmasambhava who is like to me’ 206
bdag bskyed T transformation of self into deity 95
bdag tu ’dzin T attachment to concept of self 87
bde T bliss 53, 64, 93
bDe ba con T (pr. Dewachen) n. of a heavenly world 54 = Sukhāvati
bde bar gshegs pa’i snying po T essence of the Sugata (= Buddha) 67 = Tathāgatagarbha, q.v. = Buddha-nature, q.v.
bde chen T’ great bliss 80 = mahāsukha
bDe ’gro guang yun T (pr. Dendro Sangyum) n. of Ben goddess 274 n.27
bde legs T (pr. delek) prosperity, good fortune 172
bDe mchog T (pr. Demchok) n. of Tantric deity 75, 97-9, 112 = Samvara, q.v.
bden pa bsus ba med pa’i mthu T power of unerring truth 168
bdu T (pr. dū) a class of demons 90, 147, 191, 206, 215-16, 218, 234-5, 240, 243, bdu’d is used to translate S Mārā, q.v.
bdud gyung gshi ni lpags T skin of bdu’d, antelopes and man 243
bdud kyi sde T the class of bdu’d 191
bdu’d lha T the ‘bdu’d-gods’ 234
bdu’d rtsi chos sman T n. of ritual 122
bdu’d rtsi lnga T five ambrosias (set of ritual offerings) 120, Figure 5b(120-1)
bdu’d rtsi ril bu T ambrosial pills 122
bdu’d rtsi shig T aromatic herbs 200
Be ri T (pr. Peri) n. of principality in Khams 253
Bell, Sir Charles 255
bem po T matter 66 = jada
Bengal 29, 163
ber T tunic Figure 9g(128-9)
bezg T (pr. gek) a class of demons 90, 115, 186, 197, 200-1, 216, 228, 270 n.24, 273 n.24
Bhuja-gyasgaru S n. of Buddha of medicine; here n. of a Chinese text 270 n.20
bhejana-loka S external world 215
bhānā S meditation 56 = sgom, q.v.
bhikṣu S fully-ordained monk 111 = dge srong, q.v.
bhūmi S stages of attainment of Bodhisattva 55 = sa, q.v. = Earths, Ten, q.v.
bhūta S class of demons (also = elements) 175 = ’byung po, gdon, q.v.
Bhutan* 36, 267 n.9 = ’Brug yul*
bhūva S point, drop (Buddhist technical term) 262 n.3 = thig le, q.v.
bka’ T speech (i.e. of the Buddha), revelation 22
bka’ brgyud T rNyin ma pa Tantric text 268 n.18
bka’ brgyud T oral transmission (i) as component of names of Tibetan
Buddhist schools 22
(iii) the rNyung ma pa oral transmission
259 n.4 (A1)
(iii) = bKa' brgyud pa, q.v.
bKa' brgyud bKa' gdams pa T alternative
name of bKa' gdams pa order, q.v. 22
bKa' brgyud (pa) T (pr. Kagyü,
Kagyü-pa) n. of Tibetan sect or
monastic order 22-3, 31, 35-7, 40, 43,
70, 92, 98, 112-13, 126-7, 130-1, 146,
156-7, 194, 251, 265 n.32, 267
n.9, Figure 3(116), Figure 4(118-9),
Figure 7(124-5), Figure 11c(132-3),
Figure 12(136)
bka' chen T monastic degree awarded at
bKa' chos lthan po 139
bKa' gdams (pa) T (pr. Kadam,
Kadam-pa) n. of Tibetan sect or
monastic order later absorbed in dGe
lugs pa 23-4, 34-5, 37, 40, 73, 146, 250,
259 n.4
bKa' gdams (pa) gsal ma T 'new bKa'
gdams pa', title of dGe lugs pa order 37,
259 n.4
bKa' gshags T (pr. Kashak) The Cabinet
of the Dalai Lama 139. Also spelled
bKa' shag, q.v.
bKa' gyur T (pr. Kangyur) (i) Tibetan
canonical collection of Buddhist
scriptures 21, 35, 251
(ii) equivalent collection of Bon
scriptures 213
bKa' shag T (pr. Kashak) The Cabinet
of the Dalai Lama 254. Also spelled
bKa' gshags, q.v.
bKa' thang sde legs T (pr. Kathang
De-nga) n. of Tibetan book (No.110)
7, 14, 38, 221, 225
bka' T iconographical scheme 35
bka' mi shis T bad fortune 171, 176.
Opposite of bka' shis, q.v.
bka' shis T (pr. trashi) blessing, good
fortune 127, 171, 176
bka' shis dgu rtsegs T (i) nine signs of
good omen Figure 4(118-9). See also
Figure 13a(140-1)
(ii) n. of festival 150
bKa' shis lhun po* T (pr. Trashilhunpo)
n. of dGe lugs pa monastery in gTsang
42, 137-9, 252-3, 255, 266 n.2, 268
n.14
bla T (pr. la) soul 176, 187, 190-4, 216,
273 n.30
bla brang T lama's household (within
monastery) 130, 134, 138
bla bre T kind of temple ornament
Figure 6d(122-3)
bla bsu T 'ransoming of soul' (n. of
ritual) 176, 190
bla khug T n. of ritual 190, 229
bla ma T (pr. lama) 44-5, 80, 97, 100,
123, 132, 269 n.8, Figure 7(124-5) =
lama, q.v.; also used as translation for
S guru, q.v.
bla ma'i gdams ngag T lama's oral
instruction 22
bla na med (rgyud) T (pr. lanamê gyü) (i)
highest Tantra class of 'new' system
65, 71-4, 76, 103, 105, 108, 260 n.3 =
anuitara(-tantra)
(ii) highest Bon vehicle 229
(iii) highest Bon vehicle, in Zhang
zhang language 272 n.15
bla rdo T stone in which bla resides (i) in
bla bsu ritual 191
(ii) in pha ritual 203
bla ri T sacred mountain containing soul
(bla) of region 170, 193, 219
bla ri gangs dkar Ti se T 'Ti se the white
snow soul-mountain', epithet of
Mount Kailása* (Ti se*), q.v. 219
bla rkang T bone used in bla bsu ritual
191
bla shing T wood used in bla bsu ritual
191
bla sthe T duration of life of the bla 192
bla yi shue T die used in bla bsu ritual
191
bla zur T 'lama in retirement' 132
bla zung T to accept 48-9, 122
bLo T (pr. Lo) n. of region in
South-West Tibet (in modern Nepal)
213 = Mustang
bLo bde zhabs dkar T (pr. Lode Shapkar)
Tibetan lama (author of text No.157)
259 n.4
bLo bzang chos kyi rgyal mshan = Pañ chen
rin po che, 4th, q.v.
bLo bzang rgya mtho = Dalai Lama, 5th,
q.v.
bLo gros thugs pa T (pr. Lodrö Drapka)
bKa' gdams pa lama (?C12) 35
blo sbyong T 'purification of mind'; class
of teachings 23
blos, blo chen, blo po T minister 3, 154
blo po bka' thang T (pr. Lönpo

292
Kathang) n. of text 171 (part of the kKa’ thang sde lnga, q.v.)
blood (as female component of embryo) 100
Bo dong (pa) T (pr. Potong-wa) n. of Tibetan sect or monastic order
founded by Bo dong Pan chen P'ags sras nam rgyal (1375-1451) 259 n.4
Bod, Bod kham T (pr. Pö, Pökham)
Tibet 213, 240, 271 n.2
Bod kham skyong T guardians of Tibet 167
Bod skyong T guardians of Tibet 167
Bod yul T (pr. Pöyul) Tibet 213
Bodhgya 39, 50
bodhi S enlightenment, Buddhahood 83,
89 = kyang chub, q.v.
Bodhisattva S being who has
irreversibly embarked on path to
Buddhahood 49, 55, 63, 149, 164,
208, 257 n.21 = T' kyang chub sems dpa’
Bodhisattvas, morality of 11, Cf.
paramita’ (i)
Bodhisattvas, worship of 8
Bodhisattvas, Vehicle of 76, 257 n.21,
264 n.20 = Mahayana, q.v.
Bodies, Three 57-8, 63, 67, 74, 84-5, 94,
98, 100, 243, 263 n.18, 274 n.27 = S
trikaya. Cf. dharma-kaya, rva-khogyakaya,
nirmanka-ka. Sometimes extended to
four or five bodies, cf.94, 243
Body, Apparent 57, 65, 67, 74-5, 77, 79,
84-5, 94, 98 = nirmankaka, q.v. Cf.
Bodies, Three
Body in se 82, 85, 94, 263 n.18 =
snabha-kaya, q.v.
Body, Speech, Mind (Tantric triad)
10, 57, 67, 78, 80, 95, 106, 123, 261
n.8 = sku, grung, thugs or lus, ngag, yid,
qq.v. Sometimes expanded to pentad,
75, 242
bog bdag T leaseholder of monastery
land 158
bog ma T usufruct of land 158
Bogle, George 254
Bon T (pr. Pön) term used to refer to a
variety of pre-Buddhist and
non-Buddhist religious forms in Tibet
(but not to Folk Religion, q.v.). On
the term itself, cf.245, 271 n.2, 272
n.14. There are four main areas of
meaning:
(i) a priestly class in the royal period
3-4, 229-32, 272 n.14, 272-3 n.20 (=
bon po (i), q.v.)
(ii) Tibetan religion of the royal
period, excluding Buddhism, and
including in particular the practices
of the bon(i) and gshen priests 15, 21,
24, 65-4, chapter 7 passim, 271 n.4
and 7, 272 n.13 and 14, 273-4 n.25.
(iii) the Bon religion as reorganized in
later times, centred around a
doctrinal formulation and a monastic
order similar to those of the
Buddhists, and continuing to the
modern period 68, 196, 213-14,
219-21, 224, 227-30, 239-40, 242-3,
245, 274 n.30
(iv) in this later Bon religion, the term
bon is used as an equivalent to
Buddhist chos (= dharma) in its
various senses 219-20. Cf. bon nyid, bon
sku.
Bon A zha T bon of the region of A zha
(q.v.), royal period 272 n.14
bon chos T term in folk poetry etc. for bon
teachings 269 n.5
bon nyid T bon term for infinite potential
existentiality 219-20 = Buddhist chos
nyid, dharma-ta, q.v.
bon rikbas T 'learned man of Bon',
royal period 230
bon po T (pr. pönpo) (i) bon priests of
royal period 4, 271 n.4, 272-3 n.20 =
bon(i), q.v.
(ii) adherents, and especially
exorcists and priests, belonging to
later and modern Bon religion 172-3,
188, 196, 206, 211, 245
(iii) used adjectivally, e.g. bon po
discipline, bon po texts; referring
generally to modern Bon religion,
ocasionally to older period 218, 222,
224-5, 230, 240-3
bon ri T 'bon mountain', epithet of
Mount Kailasa, q.v. 219
bon sku T bon term for body of infinite
spiritual possibility 243, 274 n.27
and 30 = Buddhist chos sku,
dharma-kaya, q.v.
Bon Sum pa T bon of the region of Sum pa
(q.v.), royal period 272 n.14
books, as sacred objects 10, 24, 150,
176. Cf. grung rir
brag lha T (pr. trak lha) god of the rock 167
293
INDEX

brag phug T rock cave 157
Brahmā S n. of god 205, 215 = Tshangs pa

*brel T separation 68
Bran ka Yan tan dpal T (pr. Trenka
Yonten Pel) n. of Tibetan nobleman
(CB-9) 249

*bras (bu) T (pr. dré) fruit, result 52, 228
cf. fruit

*bras don T Bon teachings of the fruit
phase 274 n.25. Cf. 228

*bras dus T fruit phase, result phase 52

*Bras spungs* T (pr. Drépung) dGe lugs
pa monastery near Lhasa 137-8, 142,
146, 252

brda ston T gesture of interpreting signs
243

brdal T springing forth, emanation
(phase of Bon cosmogony) 220

bre T a measure 191

bgyud T lineage of teachings 44

bgyud, bka' T 259 n.4 = bKa' bgyud(ii),
q.v.

*bri T tame domestic yak 205

'Bri gyan gsong T (pr. Drinchen Dong) n.
of deity 154

'Bri gung* T (pr. Drigung) n. of chief
monastery of 'Bri gung pa order 26,
146, 161, 251

'Bri gung pa T (pr. Drigung-pa) n. of
Tibetan sect or monastic order,
sub-order of bKa' bgyud pa 34, 36, 40,
251, 259 n.4

'Bri gung rin po che T (pr. Drigung
Rinpoche) n. of lama (1143-1217)
associated with 'Bri gung* monastery
36, 251

'Bri khang, 'Bri khang pa T 26, 259 n.4
alternative spellings for 'Bri gung, 'Bri
gung pa q.v.

Britain 255

'Bring T (pr. Ding) n. of monk (C11) 25

bryan T reward-offering, recompense
200. Also spelled rgyan, q.v.

'Bro T (pr. Dro) n. of family in royal
period 3

'Brog mi T (pr. Drokmi) n. of Tibetan
lama and translator (d.1074) 250

'Brog mo spon dgu T (pr. Drokmo Pün
Gu) n. of group of goddesses 166

*brog pa T (pr. drokpa) herdsmen,
pastoralists 158-9, 166, 205

'Brom ston rGyud ba'i b'yung gnas T (pr.
Dromtön Gyelwê Jungnê) n. of bKa'
gdams pa lama (1003-63 or 64) 19,
22-3, 35

*brog T wild yak 168

*btag dbyad T dialectical disputation 143

*bTag pa sna tshags pa'i skor nor bu me long
T n. of text by 'Jam mgon Mi pham rgya
mtha 270 n.28

bstan ma T (pr. tenma) class of
goddesses 166, 200, 208, 240, 247.
Also spelled bstan ma, q.v.

btsan 'grus T energy 49 One of the
pāramitā, q.v. = Śārya

'bra phor T ritual vessel for grain Figure
5a(120-1)

Bru zha T (pr. Trusha) n. of region,
(modern Gilgit) 214

'brug mgo T dragon's-head ornament
Figure 6a(122-3)

'Brug pa T (pr. Drukpa) n. of Tibetan
sect or monastic order, sub-order of
bKa' bgyud pa 36, 259 n.4, Figure
7i(124-5)

'Brug yul T (pr. Drukuyul) 36 = Bhutan,
q.v.

'bru'i sthom T heap of grain 119

bsam T to reflect 267 n.10

bsam grub rite T (pr. Samruptse) n. of
town (near modern Shigatsê*) 41,
232. Capital of the Rinpung pa (q.v.)
from 1435, and later of the Princes or
Kings of gTsang (q.v.)

bsam gsal sgom T meditation 267 n.9

bsam pa bthon grub T n. of text 170

bsam yas* T (pr. Samye) n. of
monastery 2, 4-6, 9, 11, 168, 249-50,
259 n.9(ch.3)

bsam yas, council at 6, 13-14, 249

bsam yas, nobleman from 25

bsangs T (pr. sang) 167, 169-70, 172,
188-9, 199-201, 206, 241, Figure
13(141) = sūṣīm, q.v.

bsangs khang T receptacle for burning
bsangs 188

bsa bon T class of bon priests 231

bsa rag T (pr. serak) class of demons 205

bsgral chos T 'utensils for liberating'
Figure 15d(174-5)

bsgrub bon mched lcem T term for
community of bon adherents, male
and female 241

bsad bka' 'dzin T one group of Mar pa's
students 36

294
INDEX

bshad grola T college (for liturgy and doctrine) in monastery 114, 127-8, 130-1, 137
bshig bon T class of bon priests 231
bKa’ med ’bum nag T (pr. Kelmê Bumnak) n. of Bon god of non-being 215. Also called Myal ba nag po, Nyams rje, qo.v.
bskyed rim T (pr. kyérim) method of evocation; one of the two main aspects of Tantric practice (cf. rdzogs rim) 56, 58, 60, 65, 74, 100, 108 = S utpattikrama
ba lü T (pr. lu) ritual of ransoming 176
bangs smon T prayer, dedication of merit 126
brosen bshgrub T to perform Tantric meditation 130
brosen byakar zab rgyas T performance of rituals in temple 140
brosen gnas dkar po cha bshagod T n. of ceremony 170
bsod nams rgya mtsho = Dalai Lama, 4th, q.v.
bsod nams rgyal mtshen pa T (pr. Sönam Gyentsenpa) n. of bKa’ bshryug pa lama, author of Text No.118 (also called btsan pa bsdod nams rgyal mtshen dpal bzung po) 265 n.32
bsod nams rig mo = rje btsun bsdod nams rig mo, q.v.
bstan bcos T Buddhist commentarial works 22 = stāstra
bstan ’gyur T (pr. Tengyur) (i) Tibetan canonical collection of Indian Buddhist treatises and commentarial works 21, 35, 251
(ii) equivalent collection of Bon texts 213
bstan ma T (pr. tenma) class of goddesses 166-7. Also spelled bstan ma, q.v.
bstan rgyas smon lam T solemn promise for diffusion of the teachings 126
bstan srong T (pr. tensung) class of deities 201
bstan srong bzangs, ge ’brug bzangs T words of ritual formula 201
bstdod (pa) T hymn 117, Figure 4g(118-19)
bsta T mildew 204
bstan T (pr. tsen) class of deities 164, 166, 168, 170, 175, 203, 209-10, 247
bTsan rje snying khrung T (pr. Tsenje Nyingtrungr) n. of deity 203
btsan ma T female religious 207. Cf. ne.
bu lugs pa, Bu pa T (pr. Puluk-pa, Pu-pa) n. of Tibetan sect or monastic order founded by Bu ston Rin chen grub pa 34-5. Also called Zha lu pa, q.v.
Bu ston Rin chen grub pa (Bu ston Rin po che) T (pr. Puśīn Rinchhen Trup-pa, Puśīn Rimpoche) n. of Tibetan lama and historian (1290-1364; author of Text No. 113) 18-19, 34-5, 38, 251, 259 n.3
Buddha, Historical. 223-4. Cf. Śākyamuni.
Buddha-Earths. 53 Cf. Earths; dhāriṇī.
Buddha-Nature (as present within all) 13, 25, 258 n.30 = Tathāgatagarbha, q.v.
Buddhabhadra S n. of translator of Avataṃsaka Sutra into Chinese 270 n.20
Buddhahood, attainment of 10, chapter 4 passim, especially 48-50
Buddhism, first diffusion in Tibet 1-15, 18-19, 250 = snga dar
Buddhism, second diffusion in Tibet 16-27, 35, 250 = sbyi dar or spyi dar
Buddhist Deities. Cf. Deities, Buddhist bai T offering 172, 190
bum T vessel 265 n.33. Abbreviation for bum pa, q.v.
bum bskyed T evocation by means of a vessel 96
bum dbang T vessel initiation 57. Cf. Consecrations, Four.
bum pa T ritual vessel 119, 148, 182, 265 n.35, Figure 5a and 5b(120-1) = bum, q.v.
bum ther T 100,000 recitations etc. 157
bya T lowest Tantra class (both systems) 72. Abbreviation for bya rgyud, q.v.
bya dmor T red bird 219
Bya khyi T (pr. Chachhö) n. of early king 226

295
INDEX

chab sríd T society, the state 232
chag T to break apart 191
Chamdo cf. Chab mdo*
Ch'an (Chinese school of Buddhism) 5-6, 11-15, 32, 257 n.10
chang T (pr. chhang) beer 116, 122, 172, 203, 228, 265 n.4, 269 n.6, Figure 3(116-17)
chang bu T form made from tsamba 177, 183, 197
channels (in body) 56, 72, 80 = nādi, q.v.
Chao Erh-feng n. of Chinese general (C20) 255
Chao Hsüan-ti n. of Chinese prince (C10) 258 n.4
char chu dus su rgyan mi 'chod par phabs T 'rain falls uninterruptedly at the appropriate time' 204
che T greater 167
Chenrêśik n. of deity = sPyan ras geigs, q.v.
'chi bakt T 'ransom from death' (n. of ritual) 176, 190
Ch'ien-lung n. of Chinese emperor (C18) 254
Chin-ch'êng n. of Chinese princess (C8) 249
China, influences from 1-2, 4, 7-8, 15, 30, 172, 202, 214, 248, 271 n.7
China, political relationship with Tibet 4, 11-12, 15, 27-8, 42, 249-51, 253-6, 267 n.9
Chinese Princess, Chinese wife 1-3 = Srong bston sgam po, Chinese wife of, q.v.
cho 'phral T illusion, manifestation of māyā, q.v. 90 = S prātikārya
cho 'phral chen mo T 'great miracle' 147 = Śrāvasti, miracle of, q.v.
chol kha T regions of Tibet in Mongol period 27
chos T (pr. chhöko) (i) elementary factors of existence 47, 63, 220
(ii) Buddhist Law, teaching 47, 142, 220 = dharma (both senses)
chos 'byung T (i) triangle symbolizing origin of things 99
(ii) religious history 259 n.3
chos dbön T (pr. chhökyi) infinite potential existentiality 88, 152, 186,
263 n.18 = dharmaštātu. Cf. dzbyings chos drug T six laws or topics of instruction (of Nāropa) 98. Cf. 36
chos 'dzin gde 'phel Dus grum mkhyen pa = rGyal bs Kār ma pa, First, q.v.
chos grwa T 'dharma school' (i) college for instruction, in monastery 9
(ii) college specifically for teaching of disputation, in dGe lugs pa monasteries 137, 143, 268 n.13 = rtsod grwa
Cf. Monasteries, colleges for teaching.
chos gzhi T monastery property 139
chos khang T chapel 169
chos 'khor T 'wheel of the dharma', i.e. teaching of the Buddhist doctrine 126
chos khrims (pa) T monk in charge of discipline 125, 130, 134, Figure 1(114)
chos khrims khri T throne of King of Derge 154
chos kyi blo gros = Mar pa, q.v.
chos lugs T religious school, sect or tradition 43
chos ma T lamp 159. Cf. mar me.
chos mchams T periods of rest in chos grwa 143
chos nyan T essence of the dharma 67, 220 = dharmañā, q.v.; a synonym for Buddha-nature, q.v.
chos phyis T predictions concerning dharma 270 n.28
chos ring lugs T title of Abbot of bSam yas* 9
chos sgar T 'dharma camp', isolated monastery 157
chos sku T (pr. chhöko) body of infinite spiritual potentiality 57-8, 61, 65, 68, 70, 74, 84-6, 94, 98, 109, 243 = dharmañāya. Cf. Bodies, Three
chos skyong T (pr. chhökyong) 'protectors of the dharma', a class of deities 126, 157, 165-6, 180, 200, 240. Cf. Deities, Protective
chos spyod rab gral T class of texts 138
chos tho T list of candidates for religious office 139
chos ching T (i) land attached to office of chos khrims pa 134
(ii) landed property of monastery as a whole 138
Chü lcam (rgyal me) T (pr. Chhucham Gyelmo) n. of Bes water-goddess 215-16, 218, 235

297
INDEX

Chu la T (pr. Chhulha) n. of Bon water-god 218
chu'i bka' T essence of water 158
Činggis Khan (Genghis Khan) 27, 165, 251
Činvat bridge 195
circumambulation, as ritual act 20, 150, 242-3
citta S mind, spirit 31, 264 n.31 = sems, q.v.
Cittamátra S 'mind-only'; philosophical school of Indian Buddhism 25, 31, 33, 259 n.1 = sems tsam pa
Co-Fruition, Body of 57-8, 65, 67, 74, 78, 84, 94, 98-9 = sambhogakāya, q.v.
Cf. Bodies, Three
Co-Fruition, Supreme Purity of 53. Cf. Co-Fruition, Body of
cod pa T diadem, crown 259 n.7 (ch.3).
Cf. Figure 7(f)(124-5)
Cognition, Higher 47, 62-3, 71, 73, 261 n.11 = pražjātā, q.v.
Compassion 23, 63, 210, 269 n.8 = snying rje
cong zhi T a kind of stone 158
Consecration 57, 122, 260 n.3 = Initiation, Tantric; Investiture, q.q.v.
Consecrations, Four 57-8, 78-80, 100, 108
Conventional Truth cf. Truth, Conventional; Truths, Two
Convergence 57-8, 61, 70, 74, 77-8, 81, 85-6 = sgang 'jug, q.v.
Curzon, Lord 255
dag pa'i sgyu las T 'pure māyā-body' 57, 61, 72
dag sngags T 259 n.4 cf. zab ma dag sngags dōkma S class of female deities 259-60 n.9 = mkha' grub ma, q.v.
dōkma S offering to teacher 26, 259 n.12 Dalai Lamas 41, 135, 137, 139, 142 and following entries. For list, cf. 252-6 = rGyal ba rin po che Dalai Lama, First (dGe 'dan grub, pr. Gendüntrup, 1391-1475) 41, 252 Dalai Lama, Second (dGe 'dan rgya mtsho, pr. Gendun Gyantsho, 1475-1542) 41, 252 Dalai Lama, Third (bkSod nams rgya mtsho, pr. Sönam Gyatsho, 1543-88) 41, 135, 252 Dalai Lama, Fourth (Yon tan rgya mtsho, pr. Yönten Gyatsho, 1588-1617) 252 Dalai Lama, Fifth (Ngag dbang bLo bzang rgya mtsho, pr. Ngawang Lobsang Gyatsho, 1617-82) 37, 41-2, 253 Dalai Lama, Sixth (Tshangs dbyangs rgya mtsho, pr. Tshangyang Gyatsho, 1683-1706) 162, 253 Dalai Lama, Seventh (bkKal bzang rgya mtsho, pr. Kelsang Gyatsho, 1708-57) 254 Dalai Lama, Eighth ('jam dpal rgya mtsho, pr. Jampel Gyatsho, 1758-1804) 162, 254 Dalai Lama, Ninth to Twelfth 255 Dalai Lama, Thirteenth (Thub bstan rgya mtsho, pr. Thupten Gyatsho, 1876-1933) 162, 255 Dalai Lama, Fourteenth (bkTan 'dzin rgya mtsho, pr. Tendzin Gyatsho, b.1935) 256 dam bca' T (i) oath 168, 240-1 (ii) night period of debates in chos graw 268 n.13 dam btags snying pa dam chu kha ra btung T formula describing drinking of water symbolizing oath by deities 240 dam can T 'bound by vow', a class of deities 240 Dam can chos rgyal T (pr. Tamchen Chhögyel) n. of deity 113 dam can ye-shes sbyun ldan T epithet of Bon deities 240 Dam pa sangs rgyas 250 = Pha Dam pa sangs rgyas, q.v. 'dam shyar T earth hut 157 dam sdm T 'holy vows' 57. Cf. sdom. dam sri T (pr. tamsi) demons of death 193, 205 dam tshig lha T god evoked through vow 78-9 = dam tshig sams dpa', q.v.
dam tshig nyams pa T failed to keep vows 164 dam tshig sams dpa' T being evoked through vow 95-6 = dam tshig lha, q.v. = samgwa-satsa qamaru S double-headed hour-glass shaped pellet drum (made from human skull caps or wood) 89, 92, 120, 206, Figure 3(116-17)
danapati S donor 10 = skyin bdag
dar T cloth, silk 120, Figure 5c(121), Figure 14b(144)
dar dbyangs, dar gyi dbyangs T cloth fringe
Figure 9c(128-9), Figure 18(182)
dar yam T pieces of silk cloth 152
Dar ma mdo sde T (pr. Tarma Dodé) son of Mar po (C11) 36
Dar ma rin chen = rGyal tshab rje, q.v.
dar snai dktis T cloths of various colours
wound round Figure 19(184-5)
'Dar tsho T (pr. Dartscho) n. of
monastery 18
Dardic tribes 244
'das lag T person who has returned from
death 173, 176, 198, 207
Dances, ritual (Bon) 233, 237
Dances, ritual (Buddhist). Cf. lha 'tham.
Dātāstān-i-Denlik 195
dBal (chen) Ge khod T (pr. Welchhen
Kekhōn) n. of Bon deity 220-1, 243 Cf.
Ge khod
dbang T (pr. wang) (i) Tantric initiation
24, 44-5, 57, 111, 122, 192 =
Initiation, Tantric; Consecration;
Investiture, q.v.
(ii) magical action of driving out
hostile powers (or of acquisition of
power) 32, 172, 242. Cf. karma (ii)
dbang thang T positive effects of good
karma 176, 192
dbu chung T provost of second grade 132
dbu 'dzin T religious authorities 137
dbu ma T 'middle way' (i) Buddhist
philosophical school 31, 49-50, 55, 63,
140 = Mādhyamika, q.v.
(ii) the central 'channel' 72 =
anādhiśī, q.v. Cf. niṣṭā
dbu mdzad T (pr. umdzé) provost
(monastic rank) 132, 134, 138, Figure 1
(114)
dbu rtag T helmet 237
dbu zpur dbu mdzad T retired provost 132
dbugs T breathing 192-3 = praṇa, q.v.
Cf. riṅg.
dbugs len gyi shan pa bcu drug T (pr.
Wuklen) Shenpa Chudruk) n. of
group of deities 166
dbugs tsha T duration of breathing 192
dBus T (pr. Ù) n. of eastern province
of Central Tibet 18-19, 41, 112, 137,
166, 250, 258 n.4
dbus khang tshan T hostel for visitors from
dBus 137
dbyar chos chen mo T 'great summer
(period devoted to) doctrine' 143
dbyar gnas T summer retreat 136
dbyar gyi rtsa Zhwa T hats worn in
summer while riding a horse Figure
11(132-3)
dbyar mchod T Sa skyä pa summer
ceremony 148
dbyings T (pr. ying) plane of potential
existentiality 80, 85-6, 220, 265 n.31
= S dākū. Cf. chos dbyings
dbyu gu drug cu (rtsa) bshi T the sixty-four
deities of the mandala of gShin rje 268
n.19
Dead, Tibetan Book of the 270 n.23 =
Bar do thos grol, q.v.
Death, process of 62, 74, 100, 107-8,
176, 193-9
Dek ther rtag po T (pr. Tepthar
Ngönpo) 'Blue Annals'; a Tibetan
historical work (Text No.115) 44
Deer, as ritual animal 155, 268 n.20,
273 n.24
Deities, Buddhist 22. Cf. Deities,
Guardian; Deities, Protective; Deities,
Tantric; and names of individual
deities, e.g. Avalokitesṭvara, Tārā
Deities, Guardian 97, 112, Figure 3
(116) = yi dam, q.v.
Deities, Local 15, 16, 164, 166-8, 170-1,
175, 186-90, 200-1, 203-5, 208-10,
212. Cf. also names of individual
deities and classes of deities, e.g. klu,
sa bdog
Deities, Protective 112, 164, 186 = srang
ma, mgon po, skyang, q.v.
Deities, Tantric 32-3, 77-8, 94-100,
105-6, 266 n.42, 268 n.18. Cf. Deities,
Guardian, and names of individual
deities, e.g. Hevajra, Hayagriva,
Guhyasamāja
Demons and malevolent powers. Cf.
bbud, bgegs, bsa rag, byung po, byur, dam
sri, dgra, dmu, 'dre, dregs, gdon, gnod,
gnod sbyin, gri zhi, griz, grual bam, gamed,
gson 'dre, ma sngags, sri, sri 'dre, sri, srid mo,
srin, srim mo, ya bvd
Derge* T n. of place in East Tibet 149,
153-4 = tDe dge*
Desideri, Ippolito 254
dGa' idan* T (pr. Ganden) dGe lugs pa
monastery founded by Tsong kha pa
42, 137, 142, 146, 158, 252, 255, 267
n.9 Cf. gdan sa grum
dGa' ldan khrri pa (also Khrri rin po che)
abbot of dGa' ldan monastery 42, 142, 255

Second, q.v.
dge la rjes su yi rang ba T rejoicing over merit 149
dGe legs pa T alternative name for dGe
lug pa 37
dGe lugs pa T (pr. Gelukpa) n. of
Tibetan sect or monastic order 7, 31,
36-7, 41-3, 66-7, 69, 73, 75, 98, 103,
110-12, 116, 136-7, 139, 142, 145-6,
151-2, 159, 161, 165, 252-3, 259 n.4,
263 n.19, 267 n.9, Figure 12 (136)
dGe rabs bzang = dGongs pa rabs bzang, q.v.
dge rgen T (pr. gêgen) teacher 139, 143
dge shes T 25 alternative spelling for dge
bsha, q.v.

dge slong T (pr. gelong) fully-ordained
monk 111, Figure 10a(131) = bhiktu

dge slong rdo rje 'dzin pa T
'bhiktu-Diamond Holder’ 110
dge snyal T (pr. gtsal) novice 111, 132,
Figure 10a(131) = btsanamgtra

dge snyal rdo rje 'dzin pa T
'btsanamgtra-Diamond Holder’ 110
dgon dpon T monastic official 134, Figure
11b(132-3)
dgon gchi T monastery property 139
dgon gtsang T monastery as a
self-governing entity 160
dgon lag T branch monastery 146, 160
dgon zhi shing T lamas attached to office of
dgon dpon 134
dgangs 'chos T evening period in chos

grea 268 n.13
dGongs 'dag T (pr. Gongdö) n. of Tantric
deity 97
dgangs rgyer T 'mind-treasury' (rNyin ma
pa technical term) 135
dGongs pa rab gsal T (pr. Gongspa
Rapsel) n. of Tibetan monk (C9/10)
17-18, 250, 258 n.4
dgra T (pr. dra) enemy (human or
demonic) 185, 228, 273 n.20, Figure
15c(174-5)
dgra gregs gtsal ba T 'to free (i.e.
destroy) evil spirits’ 150
dgra bla T enemy god 220. Alternative
spelling for dgra bla, q.c.
dgra 'dol T (pr. drandul) class of Bon
deities 218
dgra bla T (pr. drappha) class of deities
('enemy god(s)’); one of the five 'go
ba'i bla, q.v. 166, 169, 187, 189, 193-4,
220, 269 n.18
INDEX

dgun chos chen mo T 'great winter (festival of the) doctrine' 144
dgun gyi rta chowa T hats worn in winter while riding a horse Figure 12(136)
dgyur T 'to be pleased' (especially of deity) 115
d'gyur pa'i rdo rje T (Gyépé Dorje) n. of Tantric deity 98 = Hevajra, q.v.
dhāraṇī S ritual formula 258 n.29 = T gezung. Cf. mantra

S (i) elementary factors of existence 47, 220 (ii) Buddhist Law, teaching 220 = chos (both senses), q.v.
dharmadhētu S infinite potential existentiality 88, 263 n.18 = chos dbyings, q.v.
dharmakāya S body of infinite spiritual potentiality 58, 243 = chos sku, q.v.
Dharmakirti S n. of Indian Buddhist teacher 31, 34
dharmatā S essence of the dharma 56, 220 = chos nyid, q.v.
dhātu S (i) sensory sphere, object of senses 79 = khams (ii), q.v. (ii) = dbyings, q.v.
dhēḥ S Tantric phoneme 95
dhēti-prthivī S n. of Hindu earth-goddess(es) 247

Diamond Body 57, 61, 64, 73, 85, 94, 109, 261 n.6 = rdo rje sku
Diamond Vehicle 49, 52, 76 = Vajrayāna, q.v.
dichotomies, dichotomizing process 47-8, 57, 65, 70-1, 79, 91, 93, 263 n.18, 264 n.28 = rnam par rtag pa, rnam rtag, q.v.
dücka-guru S guru of the initiation 45 Ding = 'Bring, q.v.
ding ri T (pr. Tingri) n. of place in South-West Tibet 87, 250
Diānāga S n. of Indian Buddhist teacher 31, 43
direct transmission, from lama to student 22-3, 26
divination 92, 202-4, 228-9, 231-2, 234-6, 238, 270 n.28, 272-3 n.20
dkar grum T 'three white' (substances) 116
dkar 'gyed T phase of good ritual 91
dkar khrid T meditation technique 265 n.33
dKon mchog grum T (pr. Könchok Sum) 45 = Jewels, Three, q.v.
dkyil 'khor cho ga T mandala ritual 115
dkyil 'khor gyi thig dang ral tsho T construction of mandala 142
dkyil 'khor lha khang T mandala chapel 21
dmog dpung bkyes la dgra dpung thul T 'in fighting the army, to subdue the enemy host', formula describing function of dgra lha 269 n.18

DMag zor ma T (pr. Maksorma) n. of goddess (a protective deity) 203, 268 n.18

DMar Śakyamuni of Töd lung T (pr. Mar Shayamuni of Tölung) n. of Tibetan monk (C9/10) 17
dmar 'gyed T phase of good ritual 91
dmar khrid T meditation technique 265 n.33

dmar smug T dark red 113
dmigs T mental object, visualization 88

dmu T (pr. mu) (i) class of demons 216, 218

(ii) rope of dmu, linking heaven and earth 237, 273 n.20 Cf. dmu thag
dmu bon T class of Bon priests 230

dMu rgyal T (pr. Muygel) n. of father of gSkra rab 241

dmu thag T cord or rope linking heaven and earth 219, 237, 246, 272-3 n.20. Cf. also 225
dmu thag 'dgos pa'i bon pa T class of Bon priests 272 n.20
dgos kyi nger len, dngos nger len T primary cause 60, 107. Cf. rgyu
dngul lo T issue of coinage 159
d'Ngul mkhar T (pr. Ngülkhar) 'silver castle', n. of place in Western Tibet 244, 273 n.25
'tod chags T desire, attachment 51 = S råga
'tod pa'i mchod pa T offering of desirable things 200

Döbkha S mystical poetry of Siddha school 36
don T reality 106, 263 n.19
don dam bden (pa) T absolute truth 67 = S paramätrtha-satya Cf. Truths, Two
Don yod grub pa T (pr. Tönyö Trup-pa) n. of Tantric deity 97 = Amoghasiddhi, q.v. One of the

301
INDEX

Buddhas of the Pentad, q.v.
donations to lamas. Cf. Lamas,
donations to
 donations to
monasteries. Cf.
Monasteries, donations to
Doptradsong* n. of place in gTsang 245
= T rDo brag rGongs*
'dor T (i) to renounce, reject 48-9 cf.
spong
(ii) to detach from, subtract from 65
dpas 'bo T (pr. pawo) 'heroes', a class of
deities 266 n.2

dpal chos T monastic official at bKra shis
iShan po 138

dPal Chu bo ri T (pr. Pel Chubori) 17
dPal dbang T (pr. Pelyang) n. of abbot
of bSam yas (CB) 5-6

dPal gyi rdzong T (pr. Pelgyi Dorje) n. of
Tibetan monk (murderer of gLang mar
dma) (CB) 17-19, 225

dPal 'Khor to bde 'slob T (pr. Pel Khorlo
Dembok) n. of Tantric deity 157
= Šrī-Cakrasaṃvara = Saṃvara, q.v.

dPal Kye rdzong T (pr. Pel Kyedorje) n.
of Tantric deity 148, 150
= Šrī-Hevaraja = Hevajra, q.v.

dPal ldan 'Bras stong T (pr. Pelden
Drépung) n. of stūpa in East India
148 = Šrī-Dhānayakatāka

dPal ldan lha mo T (pr. Pelden Lhamo)
n. of goddess 203 = Šrī-Devī

dPal mgon phyag drug T (pr. Pelgon
Kurshel Shipa) n. of protective deity
268 n.18

Dpal mgon phyag drug T (pr. Pelgon
Chakhadrup) n. of protective deity 268
n.18 = mGon po phyag drug, q.v.

dPal rdo rje 'jigs byed T (pr. Pel Dorje
Jikje) n. of Tantric deity 153
= Šrī-Vajrabhairava = rDo rje 'jigs byed,
q.v.

dPa’o gsum lag (pr. Pao Tsuklak) n. of
Tibetan historian (1504-66), (author
of Text No.85) 2, 8, 259 n.3

dpe T (i) reflection, germinal state 106,
263 n.19
(ii) example or model, archetypal
image 210, 233

dpe 'od gsal T light in its germinal state
56, 61, 106, 108. Cf. 263 n.19

dpon chen T officials during Mongol
period 27

dpyad T to interpret, predict 235

dpyad bstan ka T investigation of omens
228

dpyid chos chen mo T 'great spring dharma'
267 n.12

dpyid chos dang po T 'first spring dharma'
267 n.12

drag, drag po T (pr. trak, trakpo)
'powerful, terrible' (i) magical action
of inspiring terror or of destruction
32, 172, 177, 242. Cf. karma
(ii) terrifying deity, as opposed to
peaceful deity, zhi (iii) 120, 266 n.5.
In this sense = khro (bo) as in zhi khro,
q.v.

drama, Tibetan (a che lha mo) 10

Dran pa Nam mkha’ T (pr. Trenpa
Namkha) n. of Bon teacher 242

drang srong T (i) ascetic 85 = S tsi
(ii) religious teacher of Zhang chung
kings 237

Drang srong bon, drang srong gshen T priests
of sixth Bon vehicle 229-30

'dre T (pr. drep) class of demons 59, 89,
91-2, 164, 175, 183, 187, 190-1, 200-1,
215, 232, 242, 273 n.20

Dreams 45, 56, 98-100, 107-8, 202, 218

cf. rmi lam

dreg T uncleanness, filth 201

dreggs T (pr. dradg) class of demons 89, 92,
166, 201, 243

Drépung = 'Bras stong', q.v.

dri chab T offering of water (representing
perfume) 120

dri za T class of deities 200 = S
gandharva

dril bu T (pr. trilpu) bell 115

Dril bu pa T (pr. Trilpupa) n. of an
Indian Siddha 98 = S Ghanṭa,
Vajragnatha

drug cu (chen mo) T n. of ritual 153, 155

Drung 'khor T circle of officials 207

Drung 'gyi chen mo T heads of Lhasa office
for monastic affairs 139

droa ting T (pr. dra-ting) gong-frame

Figure 4n (118-19)


dTo-mba Shi-lo n. of founder of Moso
religion 274 n.25

’du ba’i gsal dpon chen mo T monastic
official (Derge) 153

'du byed T karmic impulses 97 = S
samkāra. One of the five phyang po, q.v.

’du khang T chapel in monastery 137

302
INDEX

*du phor* T ritual vessel 119
*du shes* T conceptualization 97 = S sanjñā. One of the five phung po, q.v.
*du mdoch* T smoke offering 241
dukkha S suffering 260 n.1
*duś, duś ba* T (pr. duša) monastic rules of discipline 11, 31, 35, 110, 140 = Vinaya, q.v.
*Duś ba* 'od lden T (pr. Dulwa Ōden) n. of text on discipline 259 n.7(ch.2)
dung T (pr. tung) conch, trumpet (general term) 134, Figure 5e(121)
dung chen T (pr. tzungchen) long trumpet Figure 4g(118-19)
dung dkar T (pr. tungkar) conch-trumpet 117, Figure 4c(118-19)
dung dpon T 'trumpet director' (monastic office) 134, Figure 1(114)
dung gi ju thig T kind of divinatory cord 234
dung gos T clothing of the trumpet-player Figure 15c(140-1)
dung g.yog T monastic office 134
*dung phor* T conch-shell bowl (with perfume) 119
dung phreng T ornamental fringe Figure 6c(122-3)
dung zhing T land attached to office of dung dpon 134
dur T tomb, grave 235
dur bon T (i) a phase of Bon ('Bon of funerary practices') 224
(ii) Bon priests concerned with these practices 229, 231, 273 n.20
dur gi zhen 230 = dur bon(ii)
dur khrod T cemetery, place for exposing corpses 89
dus T time 126
dus chen T festival 148, 268 n.14
*Duś gsun mkhyen pa* = rGyal ba Kar ma pa, First, q.v.
*Duś kyi 'phors lo* T (pr. Dūkhi Khorlo) n. of Tantra 73, 75 = Kālacakra(-Tantra), q.v.
dus sten T 'autumn festival' 144
Dwaγs po lha rje = sGam po pa, q.v.
dwaγs zhes T hat of sGam po pa Figure 7e(124-5)
dzim med T without attachment 65
Dzungars 254

Earth, Lords of the (class of deities) 116 = sa bdag, q.v.

*Earth's*, Ten (or Thirteen), stages of attainment of Bodhisattva 50, 52-6, 77, 109, 164 = bhāmi, sa, q.v.
Eastern Tibet 18-19, 213, 240, 269 n.9, 271 n.10, 272 n.14 = mDo khangs. Cf. also A mdos, Khams(i)
Egg, Cosmic 215, 220-1
Elements, Five 62, 84, 175, 220, 242 = ghung po, dhūla, q.v.
Empirical Reality, Empirical Truth, Empirical World 68, 70, 93 = S samṛti-satya, Cf. Truths, Two
Emptiness 69, 264 n.31 = Voidness, sthāyatā, q.v.
Engrams 61, 74, 108 = dag chags, q.v.
Enlightenment, Sudden 13, 32, 83. Cf. Ch'an, geig char
Enlightenment, Thought of 23, 45, 79-82, 110, 117 = byang chub sena, q.v.
Enlightenment, Vehicle of the Thought of 46 = Mahāyāna, q.v.
Enlightenments, Five 78 = ye shes lnga, q.v.
Esoteric Vehicle = Vajrayāna, q.v.
Exorcistic Ritual Cf. Ritual, Exorcistic
Father 63, 79, 81, 87, 217, 219 Cf. yab Festivals 146-56, 170, 210
Folk Religion 16, 51, Chapter 6 passim, 216-17, 233, 246. For definitions, 165, 170-1. Cf. also Lay Buddhism
Frescoes, in temples 22. Cf. Art, Buddhist
Fruit (i.e. result) 52, 54-5, 58, 69, 73-5, 76-7, 79-82, 84, 86, 97-8, 228 = 'bras bu
Fruit, Vehicle(s) of 52, 228, 230
Fu K'ang-an. Chinese general (C18) 254
Ganden = dGa' ldan*, q.v.
Gangs dkar sha med T (pr. Kangkar Shami) n. of goddess 166
Gar babs btsan pa T (pr. Karpab Tsenpa) n. of deity 230
gar lhung 'od T light of green turquoise 237
Garudā Ś mythical bird 237 = mkha' lding, q.v.
ga'u T box for relics etc. 242
geig char T 'at once' 83, 87 Cf. Enlightenment, Sudden

303
 INDEX

"gCod T (pr. chö) Tibetan school of meditation 39, 87-92, 122, 207, 260 n.11, Figure 11g(133), Figure 12f(136)
god pa T 'master of gCod' 92
gdaus ngag T oral instructions 23
gdan gsal T sacred places of Bon 241 cf.
gnas khag, gnas mkhar
gdan sa T chief monastery of a monastic order 137, 145-6, 168, Figure 7(124)
gdan sa gsum T the three main dGe lugs pa monasteries near Lhasa ('Bras spungs, dGa' ldan, Ste ra) 137
gDan sa Thel* T (pr. Densa Thil) 26, 251 Cf. mThil, Thel, Thil

gdan T (pr. dön) state of defilement; class of demons 89, 172-3, 173, 197, 201, 226, 232, 269 n.8, 273 n.20
gdon phyina T ?predictions concerning gdon 270 n.26
gdugs T parasol (temple-ornament) Figure 14g(144)
gDogs ykar mo T (pr. Duk Karmo) n. of protective deity 268 n.18
Ge khod, Ge kod T (pr. kēkho) class of Bon deities 217, 219-20, 226, 241
Also spelled Gi khod. Cf. dBal chen Ge khod
Ge mon T (pr. Kēmūn) n. of early Tibetan king 223. Also called Gri gsum, q.v.
Ge sar T (pr. Kesar) n. of hero of Tibetan epic 207, 232
Gelukpa n. of monastic order = dGe lugs pa, q.v.
generosity, as first of the pāramītā 10 = S dōna
geshe, n. of monastic degree = dge bshes, q.v.
gṣāja S consecrated vessel 270 n.29
gṣaṭṣdapa S n. of ritual 205
Gḥḍrákṣa 50
hi la T magic formula 205
Gi khod T class of Bon deities 217, 241 = Ge khod, q.v.
Gilgit 15, 214, 245, 271 n.4
gLang dar mo T (pr. Langdarma) n. of Tibetan king (C9) 12, 14, 16-19, 40, 175, 225, 250, 269 n.14, 271 n.4. Also called Khṛi bdu dum bṛtsan
glang mo T alpine willow 185
glung kṣīhi T four continents 182
gling T a section of a large monastery 133-4
gLing ras pa Pad ma rdo rje T (pr. Ling Rēpa Pema Dorje) n. of bKa' brag yod pa lama (1128-88) 36
glu T song 240
glu T (pr. lūt, lū) 'ransom'; n. of ritual, and of object used in the ritual for the ransom 176-7, 185-6, 191, 201, 203-6, Figure 15(174), Figure 16(178-9)
gnas T essential point 85
gnas T heaven 223, 234
gnam bon T Bon of heaven, i.e. of sky-worship 218, 246
gnam choi T 'Law of Heaven' 15
gNam gi yī la rgo thag pa T (pr. Nam gi yī lha Gōthukpa) n. of Bon sky-god 218
gnam lcags T ?meteoric iron 238
gnam ldags drag po T ?meteoric iron 186
GNam lde T (pr. Namde) n. of claimant to kingship, C9 250. Also called 'Od snungs
gNam phyi gung rgyal T (pr. Namchi Kunggyel) n. of Bon goddess 216, 218-19. Also called A phyi gung rgyal, A phyi lha mo, q.q.v.
gnam ring T 'heavenly cord' 219 = dnu thag, q.v.
gnas T (i) holding breath 72
(ii) place 126, 191
(iii) duration 260 n.4
gnas byag T (pr. Nepak) 'lords of the place', local deities 157

gnas brtan T (pr. nēpten) Buddhist saints, sixteen or eighteen in number 148 = S arhas, sthavira
gnas gchen T locality and dwelling places 167-8
gnod T (pr. nō) (i) harm, injury 175
(ii) class of demons 216
gnod sbyin T (pr. nōjin) class of demons 89, 191, 243
gnostic traits in Buddhism 50-1, 81, 93, 101
Gnosticism 50-1
gNyag' khris (bstan po) T (pr. Nyatrhi Tsenpo) n. of early Tibetan king 219, 223, 226-7, 236, 273 n.25
gNyag' rings khrag med T (pr. Nyaring Trhame) n. of deity 208
gnyan T (pr. nyen) class of deities 90, 166-7, 173, 175, 211, 218, 247. Also spelled gnyen, q.v.

304
INDEX

Nyang Chen Thang lha T (pr. Nyenchen Thargilha) (i) n. of deity 164, 191, also just Thang lha, 240
(ii) n. of mountain-range* north of Lhasa, the abode of this deity
gyan sa T areas where gyan live 173
gyen T (pr. nyen) class of deities 201, 209, 273 n.20. Also spelled gyen, q.v.
gyen Chen T great helpers 183
gyen khang T store-room 130
gyen pa T monastic office 150-1 (of monastery), 134 (of bla brang), 138, 142
gyis su med T non-dual (Tantras) 73
gyug ma T innate 61
gyug ma'i lus innate body 56, 59, 106, 261 n.6
gyug ma'i riung T innate power of vibration (riung) 56 = gyug riung, q.v.
gyug ma'i sens T innate sens 56, 59, 61, 65, 106-7 = gyug sens, q.v.
gyug riung T innate power of vibration 107-8. Abbreviation of gyug ma'i riung, q.v.
gyug sens T innate sens 108.
Abbreviation of gyug ma'i sens, q.v.
'go ba'i lha T (pr. Gowê Lha) group of five guiding deities 193, 269 n.18. Cf. also 187
'go chu T black jacket worn by god 203
Godan 251
'gong, 'gong po T (pr. gongpo) class of demons 205
gosatsa'nya S connection between guru and disciple 44
Grags pa rgyal mthhan = rJe btsan Grags pa rgyal mthsan, q.v.
grags S planetary spirits; a class of demons 175 = gsa'.
grags ben T class of Bon priests 231
Great Vehicle 45, 49-50, 76, 264 n.20 = Mahâyâna, q.v.
gri T knife, dagger 223, 226
Gri gsum T (pr. Trikum) n. of early Tibetan king (= 'killed by a knife') 223-7, 246, 271 n.4. Also called Ge mnu
grí ri T sacrificial knife 230
gri zhi T (pr. Trishi) dagger-demon, 226
gri T (pr. trip) defilement; also, a class of demons 173, 201
'Gro ba bzang mo T (pr. Drowa Sangmo) n. of heroine of Tibetan narrative and
dance-drama (a che lha mo) 207
'Gro mgon Phag mo gru pa T (pr. Dromgon Phakmotrupa) n. of bKa'
brgyad pa lama (also just Phag mo gru pa) (1110-70) 26, 36, 251. Cf. Phag mo gru pa.
gral T 'liberation', actualization (as a phase in Bon cosmogony) 220
'grang 'jug T transmission of consciousness 36, 101. Cf. 'pha ba.
'grang 'jug ba' 'lebs T one group of Mar pa's students 36
grab ba' 'dzin T one group of Mar pa's students 36
grab mtha' T philosophical system 48
 = S siddhâtâ
grab thob T (pr. trupthoph) Tibetan adherents of Siddha school 23-6, 111
 = siddha (which G.T. uses for both Indian and Tibetan followers of this school)
gral bum T (pr. trulpum) class of demons 200
Grwa Ye shes rgyal mthran T (pr. Trûn Yeshé Gyentsen) n. of Tibetan monk (C10) 256 n.4
grwa ja T college tea 138
grwa lan T monk's vest 113
grwa pa T (pr. trapa) monk (general term for inmates of monasteries) 125, 132, 139
grwa rkyang T ordinary monk (i.e. grwa pa) 139
grwa sa T monastic college 146 cf. grwa tshang
grwa tshang T monastic college 137 cf. grwa sa
grsal T luminosity (Buddhist technical term) 64, 217 cf. Luminosity
grasl ba ye shes T radiant transcendent consciousness 217
gSal snang of sBa T (pr. Selmenj of Ba) n. of Tibetan monk (C8) 2, 5-6. His religious name was Ye shes dbang po (pr. Yeshé Wangpo)
gSang ba stying po T (pr. Sangwa Nyingpo) n. of rNying ma pa 'Tatra 39
gSang ba('i) 'dus pa T (pr. Sangwe Dûpa, Sangdû) n. of Tantric text and of deity 17, 73, 75 = gSang 'dus,
Gahyayama'ga 'Tatra, q.v.
gsal dbang T Initiation of the secret 57, 79 cf. Consecrations, Four
INDEX

gSang 'dus T (pr. Sangdû) n. of Tantric text and deity 98, 112. Abbreviation for gSang ba'i 'dus pa, q.v.
gsang sogs gT (pr. sang-ngak) secret mantras, Tantric formulae 229, 269 n.8

In Buddhist texts, usually a synonym for Tantra, q.v.
gsar ma T 'new'; followers of 'new' Tantras 38, 76. Cf. Tantras, 'old' and 'new'
gsar ma bka' brgyud T 'new bKa' brgyud (pa)’ 259 n.4 = bKa' brgyud pa, here as opposed to the rNying ma pa bKa' brgyud tradition, cf. bKa' brgyud (ii), (iii)
glas khang T sacred place of Bon 188, 217
gnas mkhar T (i) shrine of pho lha on roof 188, 217
(ii) Bon sacred place 217
gser chag shing T golden club or sceptre 243
gser dkris gsum T three gold bands (around hat) 135
gser dkris lela T five gold bands (around hat) 135
gser skyems T libation 228
gser theb T type of hat Figure 11b(132-3)
gser zam T golden bridge 190
gser chyena T type of hat 135, Figure 11a(132-3)
gshen T Bon drum 241
gshed T (pr. she) class of demons (= executioner, torturer) 92, 231
gshed 'dus T ritual performed by gCod pa 92

ghed sgo T door of the god of death 229
gshen T (pr. shen) class of priests or magicians (early period) 227-32, 237, 239, 241, 272 n.12, 273 n.20 and 25
gshen ben T class of Bon priests 231
gShen chen po Lde bo gshung chen T (pr. Shen Chhenpo Dewo Sungchhen) n. of Bon deity 238
gshen gtu T songs of the gshen 229
gshen gnyen T class of Bon exorcists (early period) 232
gshen lha T (pr. shen lha) n. of Bon deity or deities 239. Cf. next entry.
gShen lha 'od dikar T (pr. Shenlha Ökar) 'Shenlha White Light', n. of Bon deity 64, 220, 243, 274 n.27 cf. gShen lha
gShen rab (mi bo) T (pr. Shenrap Miwo) n. of revealer of Bon scriptures 213, 217, 219, 221, 224, 227, 229, 231, 238-40, 272 n.12, 273-4 n.25

gShen rigs T lineage of gshen 241
gshen rigs bzhis T the four classes of gshen 230
gshin chu nag po nga ro can T (pr. Shinchhu Nakpo Ngarochen) 'the howling black river of the dead', n. of river in the underworld 195

gshin pa T deceased 126

GShin rje T (pr. Shinjê) n. of god of the dead 194-5, 268 n.19 = S Yama

GShin rje zams pa T ‘bridge of GShin rje’ 195

GSo byed pa T (pr. Sochepa) n. of Bon god of healing 218

gsol T to present, to offer 271 n.2
gsol 'debs T (pr. söldep) prayer 170
gsol ja T monastery tea 138
gsol kha T prayer 126
gsol phud T offering 269 n.6, Figure 3(116-17)
gson 'dre T (pr. söndre) living demon 187

Gson po'i srog skyobs T to protect the life of the living 228

gson gshin T the living and the dead 228
gsong gshen T class of Bon priests 273 n.20

gsong rdo rje T adamantine state of 'word' plane 261

gsong rten T 'support for verbal body of Buddha' 10, 24. Cf. rten; Body, Speech, Mind
gtam T offering (to demons) 172, 190
gtam T teaching-story 23
gtan thigs kyang de nas byung T formula indicating origin of custom 222

gTang chu (pr. Tangchhu) n. of river in East Tibet 155

gter ma T (pr. terma) 'hidden texts' 38-9, 242, 251, 259 n.4

gter srung T guardians of gter ma 242
gten sron T revealers of gter ma 38, 135
gto T n. of ritual 148, 153, 155, 176-7, 180, 201, 228, Figure 4(118-19), Figure 9(128). Cf. Ritual, Exorcistic
gto chen T 'great gto' 155

gto nag dna zar T n. of gto ritual 186
gto zor T n. of gto ritual 150

gtor bzlag T 'bzlag using gtor ma', n. of ritual 149-50, 152-3 = gtor zdog, q.v.
Cf. Ritual, Exorcistic
gtor ma T (pr. torma) cake used in ritual
115-16, 122, 149, 155, 157, 180, 197,
206, 208, 229, 239, 265 n.34, 266 n.6,
270 n.28, Figure 3 (116), Figure
5d (120-1). gtor ma is used to translate
S bani, q.v. and cf. 206.
gtor zlog T n. of ritual 115, 148
Alternative spelling for gtor bzlog, q.v.
gTrang* T (pr. Tsang) western province of
Central Tibet 17-19, 34, 37, 40, 42,
112, 137. 167, 250, 252-3, 259 n.5,
266 n.2
gTsang, Kings of (or Princes of) 41, 252.
Cf. bSam grub rite, Rulers of, 41
gtiang khrus T illustration 241 Cf. khrus
gtro bo T 'principal' (deity of mandala) 164
gtrod thod T deer-skull used as ritual
vessel 273 n.24
gtum chen T (pr. Tumchhen) class of
deities 205

"gtsun me T yogic technique 98-9. 131
Gu ge* T (pr. Kukê) n. of region in
Western Tibet 20-1, 250

Gu ge, Kings of T 20-1, 25, 250. Cf. also
Ye shes 'od, Byang chub 'od, Mallah
dynasty
Gu ru Chos dbang T (pr. Kuru
Chhöwang) n. of rNying ma pa lama
(1212-73) 39
Gu ru Rin po che T (pr. Kuru Rimpochê)
'Precious Guru', a title of
Padmasambhava, q.v. 106, 148

Guardian Deities. Cf. Deities, Guardian
Guhyasamâja Tantra. S n. of Tantric
text 17, 260 n.3 = gSang ba'i 'das pa,
q.v.

Gulab Singh, Raja 255
gung dphan T second study-period of day
131

Gurnavartta 271 n.4

Gur chu T 'great tent' (epithet of ju thig)
235

Gurkha 254

guru S teacher, especially of Tantric
practice 44. Translated in Tibetan by
bla me, q.v. Cf. Lama

Gurung 273 n.21

Guðri Khan 253
g.yab dmar T ritual implement 122
g.yang dkar po T white yak, domestic yak 168
g.yang T prosperity, increase 200, 228,
273 n.20

g.yang ldon pa't bsen po T class of Ben
priests 272-3 n.20

Gyantse* n. of town in West-Central
Tibet 43, 156, 168, 196, 223, 266 n.2
= rGyel rite*

Gyantse, mchod rten of (also referred to
as 'sku 'bum of Gyantse') 35, 196

g.yas skor T clockwise circumambulation
242
gyer sgo bchi T the four doors of the
ritual songs 228

G. Yo dge byang of Bo dgon T (pr. YO
Gejung of Potong) n. of Tibetan
monk (9/10) 17

g.yu T turquoise 234

g.yu 'brug T turquoise dragon 219

g.yu gar ljung T a kind of green turquoise
238

G. Yu thog pa T (pr. Yuthokpa) n. of
Tibetan Buddhist school 221

g.yang drung T swastika (mainly a Bon
term) 15, 68, 240 = S swastika

g.yang drung bon T priests of sixth Bon
vehicle 229

g.yang drung skad T language of the
swastika 217

'gycar bon T 'modified Bon', third stage of
Bon 224

'Gyur med rnam rgyal T (pr. Gyurmê
Namgyel) n. of Tibetan politician
(d.1750) 254

ge' T (pr. sa) planetary spirits 175 =
gra ha

gecham don T salvation of others 49 cf.
sems rtsa don byed

gecham stong T 'empty of everything else',
a jo nang pa term 68

gch'i T 'foundation' 94, 107 = gch'i dus,
q.v.
gch'i bdeag T (pr. shiptak) local deity 154,
201

gch'i dus T 'foundation phase', meditator
in his normal state 52-3, 56, 85, 106
= gch'i, q.v.

gchis dgon T branch monastery 145-6

gchis ka T landed property of monastery
158

'gZhis kha rite* = Shigatse*, q.v.

'gZheon nu rgyal mthang = Phu chung pa
'gZheon nu rgyal mthang, q.v.
g'ugs T breathing in 72

gzung T text, textual tradition 259 n.4
(as opposed to tradition of oral
instruction)
INDEX

gdzung chen kha guu gsum T 'Thirteen Great Texts' 127

gdzung dgon T state monastery 145-6

gse gtar T (i) necklace-pearls 245
(ii) 'looks', phases of thod rgal meditation 264 n.31

gsum khang pa T monastic official (representative of government) 138-9

gzugs T (pr. suk) form 53, 66, 97, 191 = S rupa. One of the five phung po, q.v.
gzugs can T bodily, material 176
gZugs skyi nyi ma T (pr. Sukyi Nyima) n. of central figure of Tibetan narrative and dance-drama (a che lha ma) 207

gzugs med T immaterial, formless 176
gzung thag T ritual cord 119
gzung T ritual formula 258 n.29 = dhara

Haribhadra. Indian Buddhist teacher (CB)43

hatha-yoga 99

Hayagriva S n. of Tantric deity 273
n.24 = ri'ba mgrin
hells 60, 116

Heruka S n. of Tantric deity 185, 205-6

Hevajra S n. of Tantric deity 27 = Kyen rdzay te, dGyes pa'i rdo rje, dPal Kye rdo rje, q.v.
Hierophant 74 cf. Lama.
Higher Cognition cf. Cognition, Higher hik S Tantric phoneme 100
Hinayana 260 n.1, 262 n.12 = Small Vehicle, Lesser Vehicle, q.v.
Hindu 223-4
Hor T (pr. bor) term used for various ethnic groups, especially the Mongols 17

horse-races 153

hu hu T creative syllables 215
Hua Yen King. Chinese translation of the Avatamsaka Sutra 270 n.20

kham S Tantric phoneme 95, 102, 157, 197

Hunza 214


Huwa shang Mahajuna T/S n. of Chinese teacher in Tibet(CB) 3, 5-6, 13-14, 32, 258 n.32. Sometimes referred to as just Huwa shang

Incarnate Lama. Cf. Lama, Incarnate India, influence of 1-2, 7-8, 15, 21, 30, 75, 103, 160, 163, 172, 209, 214, 237, 248, 271 n.4 and 7

India, Tibetan refugees in 266 n.2, 267 n.9

Indian masters 9

Indrabhūti S n. of Indian king and Siddha 46

Indus Valley 244

Infinite Spiritual Potentiality, Body of 57-8, 65, 67-8, 70, 74, 84-6, 94 = chos sku, q.v. = dharma ma, q.v. Cf.

Bodies, Three

Initiation, Tantric 24, 57-8 = dbang (i) = Investiture, Consecration, q.v.

Investiture 57-8 = dbang (i), q.v. = Initiation, Tantric; Consecration, q.v.

Iranian Peoples, influence of 172; 195, 214, 238, 245, 248 Cf. rTag gcig

Islam 214

Isma'ili sect 214

Iśvara S epithet of Śiva 215 cf. Śiva

ja dgon nang T monastic office 138

ja'i yul T 'rainbow body' 86, 242 cf. also 199, 225

ja'ris T 'rainbow design' Figure 6a(122-3)

ja'da S matter 66 = bum po

'Jam bu gling lte ba T 'navel of the world' 219

'Jam dbyangs T (pr. Jamyang, Jampeyang) Buddhist deity 95 = S Mañjuśrī

'Jam dpal tshe bdag T (pr. Jampe Tsepdak) 'Mañjuśrī as lord of (long) life' 155

Jammu 255

'Jam mgon Mi pham rgya mtsho T (pr. Jamgön Mipham Gyatsho) n. of rNying ma pa lama (1846-1912) 270 n.28

jépa S to pray, to repeat mantras 271 n.2

Japan 4

Jesuits 253-4

Jewels, Three (Buddha, Dharma, Sangha = Buddha, Teaching, Community) 8, 45, 48, 116-17, 137, 149, 157, 169, 183 = dkon mchog grum, q.v.

308
jig rten las ‘das pa (‘i lha) T ‘supramundane deities’ 164
jig rten pa T (i) layman 45, 163 cf.
      Layman, Lay Buddhism, khyim pa, khyim bdag
      (ii) = ‘jig rten pa’i lha, ‘gods of the everyday world’ 163-4
‘jigs byed T (pr. Jigchê) n. of Tantric deity 98, 112 = rDo rje ‘jigs byed, =
      dpal rDo rje ‘jigs byed, qq.v. =
      Vajrahhairava
jñāna-sattva S being created from transcendent consciousness 95 = ye
      shes sens dpa’, q.v.
Jo bo T (pr. Chowo) ‘Lord’; here n. of a
      statue of Śākyamuni 1, 3
Jo bo rje T (pr. Chowo Jê) ‘Noble Lord’,
      epiphlet for Atisa, q.v. 22
Jo bo rje bka’ brgyud T alternative name
      for bKa’ gdogs pa school 22
Jo dar T prayer-flags with the six syllables
      of Jo bo (Avalokiteśvara) 176
Jo ga T (pr. Choka) n. of Tibetan monk,
      (C13)
Jo (mo) man* T (pr. Chomonang,
      Chonang) n. of head monastery of Jo
      ngang pa sect 259 n.8(ch.3)
Jo ngang pa T (pr. Chonangpa) n. of
      Tibetan sect or monastic order 14, 34,
      37, 43, 67-9, 101, 259 n.4 and 8(ch.3),
      263 n.18
jol bon T (i) first stage of Bon 224. Also
      spelled mjol bon
      (ii) class of Bon priests 231 (different
      from mjol bon priests)
ju thig T divinatory cord 228-9, 232,
      234-6, 273 n.20
ju thig skar ba r kyen drug T type of ju thig
      234-5
Jyekundo* n. of town in Eastern Tibet
      19 = Kyer dgon mdo*
ka S Tantric phoneme 100
ka, ka ba T pillars 188, Figure 6(122-3)
ka phan T silk strips on pillars Figure
      6(122)
Kafir general term for non-Islamic
      tribes in Eastern Afghanistan etc. 223
Kagyû-pa n. of monastic order = bKa’
      brgyud pa, q.v.
Kailasa S n. of mountain in W. Tibet
      193, 216, 219, 223, 260 n.10, 271 n.10
      = Ti ze, q.v.
Kālocakra Tantra n. of Tantric text 37,
      148 = ‘dzus kyi ‘khor lo, q.v.
Kalî S n. of Indian goddess 88
Kaliyuga S the present epoch of the
      world’s history 170
kaññamitra S spiritual friend 23, 111,
      207 = dege ba ‘ghes gesen. Cf. also dege shes
      Kamalāśīla S n. of Indian Buddhist
      teacher (C8) 6, 13, 32, 249
Kāpālikā S n. of Śaivaite sect 271 n.4
kar gling T (pr. karling) type of wind
      instrument Figure 4k(118-19)
Kar ma pa T (i) sub-order of bKa’ brgyud
      pa 34, 36-7, 41, 135, 251-3, 259 n.4
      (ii) head lama of this sub-order 135,
      251 = rGyals ba Kar ma pa, q.v.
Kar ma Pa kṣi T/Mongolian 135, 251 =
      rGyals ba Kar ma pa, Second, q.v.
Karchung, Edict of 2
karma S (i) doctrine of causation
      (actions have effects in later lives) 8,
      43, 59, 74-5, 99, 108-9, 150, 164,
      171-2, 176, 194, 196, 198, 200-1 = las.
      Cf. Merit
      (ii) types of magical action, usually
      four in number (zhi, rgyas, dbang, drug)
      32, 164, 172, cf.242 (also = las)
      (iii) n. of the Tantric ‘family’ of
      Amoghasiddhi 265 n.36
Kashmir 15, 21, 69, 214, 223, 250, 259
      n.8, 262 n.14, 271 n.4
Kathmandu, Peace of 254
kha bstan T scriptural recitation 267 n.9
      = chal ton, q.v.
Kha che T (pr. Khachê) 214 = Kashmir,
      q.v.
kha zes T kind of bread 268 n.14
khol T measure 159
Khams T (pr. kham) (i) province of
      Eastern Tibet 19, 137, 170, 188, 199,
      253, 258 n.4. Cf. Eastern Tibet
      (ii) sensory sphere, object of senses
      79, 197, 266 n.42 = dba’i
Khang chen nas T (pr. Khangchen-nê)
      Tibetan politician (d. 1727) 254
khang tekan T hostel (in monastery) 137
      khar tag T (pr. kharnga) gong Figure
      4d(118-19)
Khasia tribe 20
K’hor dKon mchog rgyal po T (Khôn
      Kônchhok Gyelpo) n. of Tibetan
      lama (1034-1102), founder of Sa skye
      monastery 250
INDEX

Khrom pa skyes = Ma zhang Khrom pa skyes, q.v.
'khruul T illusion 83 cf. 'khruul snang
'khruul snang T illusory appearance 68, 84 cf. 'khruul, snang
khrus T ablation, lustration 175 cf. gtsang khrus
khrus bon T class of Bon priests 230
khav ra T type of bread 268 n.14
khypad par can T special (of shes rab) 63
'khyer bon T 'deviating Bon', the second stage of Bon 223
khyim bdag T layman 130 cf. khyim pa, 'jig rten pa, Layman
khyim lha T (pr. chhim lha) house-god 187-8 = phug lha, q.v.
khyim pa T layman 110 cf. khyim bdag, 'jig rten pa, Layman
khyim pa ra tye 'dezin pa T 'layman-Diamond Holder' 110
khyim phyag T predictions about house 204, 270 n.28
khyang T (pr. chhung) n. of mythical bird 168, 218, 235, 237-8, 243, 245, 273 n.24, 274 n.25
khyang chen T 'great khyung' 243-4
Khyung lung T (pr. Chhunglung) n. of region in West Tibet 244, 274 n.25
Kings of Tibet. Cf. Tibet, Kings of; also individual names of kings.
klog T to recite 87
klong T rNyung ma pa and Bon term for absolute existentiality 87, 219
kLong chen pa (kLong chen rab 'byams pa) T (pr. Longchenpa, Longchen Rabjampa) n. of rNyung ma pa lama (1308-63) 39, 126, 267 n.7
klong sde T rNyung ma pa division of teachings on klong 87
klu T (pr. lu) water-spirits 16, 149, 172, 191, 200-1, 209, 216, 222, 224-5, 237, 247, 259 n.9, 269 n.7, 269 n.8.
Equated by the Tibetans with Snag, cf.222
kLu 'bas T n. of text (No.86) 222
kLu mes T (pr. Lumê) n. of monk (c.950-1025) 250, 258 n.6
Kong chu, Kong jo = Strong bstan sgam po, Chinese wife of, q.v.
kriyê(-tntara) S (i) lowest Tantra class of 'new' system 72
(ii) lowest Tantra class (fourth vehicle) of rNyung ma pa system 76-7 =

Khrum T (pr. trhom) the Byzantine Empire, Anatolia 271 n.7
Khrom T (pr. trhidel) transverse flute Figure 41(118-19)
khrugs chod T (pr. trhekchhö) meditation technique 85, 87, 131
khris T throne 143
Khri bsu dam btsan T (pr. Trhidu Tumtsen) 250 = gLang dar ma, q.v.
khris bon T class of Bon priests 230
Khri 'tsho srong btsan T (pr. Trhido Songtseten) n. of king (C9) 249
Khri gtsug lde btsan T (pr. Trhitsuk Detsen) n. of king (C9) 250 = Ral pa con, q.v.
Khi khang rgyal po T (pr. Trhkhum Gyelpo) n. of creator in Bon cosmogony 215
Khris lde T (pr. Trhidel) n. of claimant to kingship (C9) 250 = Yam btsen
Khris lde gtsug btsan T (pr. Trhidel Tsuktsen) n. of king (C8) 2, 249. Also called Mes ag tsham
Khris lde srong btsan T (pr. Trhidel Songtseten) n. of king (C8-9) 2, 6, 249.
Also called Sod na legs
Khris pa, Khris rin po che = dGa' ldon khris pa, q.v.
khris sde T districts of Zhang zhung 237
Khris srong lde btsan T (pr. Trhisong Detsen) n. of king (C8) 2-4, 6-9, 13-14, 21, 32, 38-9, 41, 153, 160, 230
Khris yer la sje T (pr. Trhiwer La-jê) n. of king of Zhang zhung 237
khris skor T districts of Tibet during Mongol period; myriarchies 27, 40
Khrö rgyal T (pr. Trhogyel) n. of deity 197, 270 n.24, Figure 9k(128-9)
Khrö rgyal bkags thagbs 'dul T epithet of deity 197
Khrum T (pr. trhidel) the Byzantine Empire, Anatolia 271 n.7
INDEX

Lahul 267 n.9
lam T ‘path’ (to Enlightenment) 48, 52, 56
lam bsten T to show the path 183
lam dus T phase of the path 52, 56
lam phywa T predictions concerning journeys (?) 270 n.28
Lam rin chen mtsa T (pr. Lamrim)
Chhenmo n. of treatise by Tsong kha pa (Text No.93) 37, 142-3, 145, 254
Lama 22-4, 26, 44-5. The Tibetan translation for Sku, q.v. Cf. also following entries, and ma, ma,
Hierophant, stob dpon, safrācārya, kalīshā-mitra
Lama, Incarnate 41-2, 134-5 cf. sprul sku
Lama and Student, nature of relationship 22-3, 26, 44-5
Lamas, donations to 26
Lamas, wandering 10, 113, 156 cf.
sngags pa, bandhe
lam chags T karmic debt 181
lam chags song, du len sbyang T ‘the karmic
debt is gone, the debt is cleared’ 181
lam dga T (pr. lena) n. of script 242, 274 n.26
Landowners 27 cf. Aristocracy
Langdarma n. of Tibetan king = gLang
dar ma, q.v.
las T (pr. la) action, karma 59 cf. karma
Las skar ma sha stam T n. of text 259
n.7(ch.2)
las sde T important offices 139
las sbs T karmic force 75 cf. karma
Law, Buddhist 47 cf. dharma(ii)
Lay Buddhism, relationship with monastic Buddhism cf. Buddhism, relationship between lay and
monastic forms
Layman 45 cf. ‘jig rten pa, khyim bdag, khyim pa
lengs ri T ‘iron mountains’ (i) border of phang kheb Figure 9d(128)
(ii) wall around cho grwa 143
leam T beam 189
lCang la can T (pr. Changlochen) n. of paradise of Phyag na rdo rje 95
lce T (i) tongue, pennant Figure 14b(144)
(ii) n. of lama = lce btsun Skes rab
’byung gnas (pr. Chetsün Sherap
Jungne) (C11) 34
lde ba T (pr. dewo) n. of Bon deity 238
INDEX

"lde'o T (pr. deu) (i) class of priests, early period 232, 238
(ii) riddles 238
(iii) element in names of kings 273 n.23
ldob ldog T class of monks 139
ldog T 'resalvar' 89
Legs, Six (pr. lek) a group of early kings 226
Leh n. of town in Ladakh 244
Le'u bden ma T (pr. Leu Döna) n. of text 170
lha (pr. lha) god (general term) 59, 92, 167, 170, 187-8, 190-1, 200-3, 209-11, 215-16, 225, 234-5, 269 n.18, 273 n.20 cf. Deities, and names of individual gods and classes of gods, e.g. chos skyong, dmor lha, etc.
lha 'bhang, lha bvan T servants attached to monasteries 10, 257 n.27
lha bris T painting 142
lha bskyed T evocation of oneself as deity 204 = lha bskyed, q.v.
lha bris T lamps 148 cf. mar me, chos me
lha bris T (pr. lhaptse) stone heaps dedicated to local deities 210, 245
lha 'cham T sacred dances in monasteries 150-1, Figure 9f(128-9)
Lha chen (po) T 'great god' 243-4 = Mahâdeva, q.v.
lha goi T rituals to local deities 170
lha goi T kind of mandala 235
lha choi T term for Buddhism in folk texts 269 n.5
lha gyag T divine yak 270 n.28 cf. svad kyi gyag po dkar po
lha khang T temple, chapel 20-1, 24, 35, 176
lha khang nying rgyan T interior ornaments of temple Figure 6(122)
lha khang sku dkar goi T offering of repainting temples and images 176
lha klong bskyed T sudden evocation of oneself as deity 95
lha mo T (pr. lhamo) goddess (general term) 201 cf. Deities, and names of individual goddesses and classes of goddesses e.g. dkar gyi, sman
lha pa T person possessed by god; medium 203, 209, 247
lha ram(s) pa T n. of monastic degree cf. dGe bshes lha ram(s) pa
lha rgyal po T 'the gods are victorious' (ritual formula) 234
Lha ri gyang tho T (pr. Lhari Gyantso) n. of mountain in rKang po 219, 226
lha rigs T families of gods 240
lha ritsi name of seventh Bon vehicle (in Zhang zhung language) 272 n.15
Lha sa = Lhasa, q.v. Also cf. Ra sa.
lha shog T heaven paper 242
lha srim sde bskyed T eight divisions of lha and srim 247
lha tho T stone heaps dedicated to local deities 245 = lha btsas, q.v.
Lha tho the ri T (pr. Lhatho Thorï) n. of early king 1, 223
lha yi sde T the lha as a class 191
lha mthong T (pr. lhakthong) (meditation of) 'higher vision' 50, 56, 60 = sras'i yon
Lhajang Khan 253-4
lhang e rig byed rkyen T contributory cause 60, 107 cf. rkyen
lhang e skyes T innate, born together with 193 = lhan skyes, q.v.
lhang skyes T innate, born together with 65 Abbreviation for lhan e skyes, q.v.
lhan bskyed T evocation of oneself as deity 94 = lha bskyed, q.v. Cf. bskyed rim
lhan skyes T born as a god 209
Lhasa* 112, 138, 142, 159, 219, 244, 250, 253-6, 266 n.2
lhan bzad T monk's bowl Figure 10a(131)
Lhun po ri T (pr. Lhunpotse) n. of place 112
Li-chiang n. of place 274 n.24
Liberation 47, 115 = lha pa, rnam par lha pa, q.v.
Libraries, royal 8
Light 63-7, 73, 81, 84, 93-4, 98, 100, 158, 214, 220-2, 225 cf. Luminosity, 'od rgyal
Lights, 'Mother' and 'Son' 74, 86
Limiting state 23, 47, 54, 64-5, 70-2, 109 = mthar thugs, q.v.
lng ma T image destroyed in exorcistic ritual 152, 155, 185-6, 211, Figure 15c(174-5)
INDEX

lungs gsung rdzogs kyi sku T (pr. longchöku, longchö dzok-kyi ku) body of co-fruition 53, 58, 74, 220, 260 n.2 = lungs sku = snyab khab dgea = Co-fruition, Body of, q.v. Cf. Bodies, Three

la bstan T from S 'translator' 7-8, 22, 26, Figure 8a(127), Figure 11f(133) lta T view, philosophical system 48 cf. yang dag lta, grub mtha'

litas T omens 202 cf. phya, Divination lting bsangs T ritual of confession of sins 266 n.5

Lu i pa T from S n of Indian yogin 98
Lug lha bal chen T (pr. Lukhi Waclchen) 'Great Woolly Sheep-God' n. of primal sheep in Bon cosmogony 234 Luminosity 64, 70, 86, 94 = gral, q.v. Cf. also Light, 'od gral lung T verbal (textual) teaching 44-5, 48 Luristan 245 lus T 'body' 108, 269 n.12 lus dsten T isolation of the body, isolation on the physical plane 56, 108, 261 n.8, 263 n.19

lus kyi gsal T 'ransom of body' Figure 19(184-5)
lus ngag yid T Tantric triad 57 = Body, Speech, Mind, q.v. Cf. sku grang thugs.

Lus rgyag grang du bshes tshis ma T (pr. Lusok Sangdu Porrwema) n. of goddess invoked in gCod 88

ma T 'Mother' (tantras) 73 cf. 87. Abbreviation for ma rgyad. Cf. also Mother.

Ma geig dpal lha mo T (pr. Machik Pé Lhamo) n. of protective goddess of Lhasa 169

Ma geig lab (sgron ma) T (pr. Machik Lapdrönma) n. of Tibetan woman teacher (1055-1145) of gCod school 39, 87, 250, 259 n.4

ma gtsang ma spyod T pure way of life 229

ma mo T (pr. mamo) n. of a group of goddesses 209 cf. following entry ma mo mchad gyu T (pr. mamo chhégu) n. of a group of goddesses ('the nine ma mo sisters' 166 cf. preceding entry

Ma geig dpal lha mo T (pr. Machik Pé Lhamo) n. of Tibetan woman teacher (1055-1145) of gCod school 39, 87, 250, 259 n.4

Ma geig lab (sgron ma) T (pr. Machik Lapdrönma) n. of Tibetan woman teacher (1055-1145) of gCod school 39, 87, 250, 259 n.4

Ma geig dpal lha mo T (pr. Machik Pé Lhamo) n. of Tibetan woman teacher (1055-1145) of gCod school 39, 87, 250, 259 n.4
INDEX

Mahādeva S 'great god'; usually an epithet of Śiva 243-4 = lha chen po
Mahākāla S n. of protective deity 148 = mgon po, q.v.
Mahāmāyā S n. of scripture 163
Mahāmudrā S n. of Buddhist meditation teaching 34-5, 43, 71, 242 = pīyag nga chen mo, pīyag chen, q.v.v.
Mahāparinirvāṇa Sūtra S n. of scripture 269 n.14
mahāsukha S great bliss 80 = bde chen
Mahāyāna S Great Vehicle
(characterized, as opposed to the Hinayāna, by the desire to liberate all beings from suffering) 19, 44, 46, 49, 59, 63, 67, 76, 110, 163, 196, 257
n.21, 264 n.20 = Great Vehicle, q.v.
= theg pa chen po, theg chen = Bodhisattvas, Vehicle of, q.v. Often refers to teachings of the Sūtras as opposed to those of the Tantras (cf. 51-2); in this sense synonymous with Pāramitāyāna (cf. Pāramitās, Vehicle of the; phar phyin)
Maitreya S n. of future Buddha, reputed author of Abhisamayālākāra and other texts 127, 152 = byams pa makara, five 17, 258 n.1
Malla dynasty 20-1
mar chad T downwards 167
mar ngag T oral instruction (as opposed to textual instruction, gzhung)
259 n.4
mar ngag sde T Nyifying ma pa division of teachings through mar ngag 87
mar S mind as organ of apprehension 55-6 = yid, q.v.
Manasarovar* S n. of lake near Mount Kailāsa* 219, 223, 274 n.25 = ma pham mtsho*
Manchus 254
mangala S diagrammatic arrangement of deities 35, 78-81, 96-7, 112, 115, 119, 123, 125, 132, 142, 148, 150, 157, 164, 197, 234, 236, 259 n.11, 261 n.11, 265 n.35, 266 n.42, 272 n.16, Figure 14(14) = T dkyil 'khor
Mandāravī S n. of consort of Padmasambhava 148
Meng T (pr. mang) n. of family in royal period 4
Meng ja T tea at collective rituals 142
Meng.pa rje T (pr. Mangpojê) n. of early king 226
Mang srong mang brisum T (pr. Mangsong Mangtsen) n. of king (G7) 249
mog-stūpa 196 (i.e. wall with inscriptions such as the mantra om mañi padme hūṃ, q.v.)
Manichaean religion 15, 271 n.5 -
Mañjuśrī S n. of Buddhist deity 95 = T 'Jam dpal dbyangs, 'Jam dbyangs mantra S ritual formula 49-50, 54, 79, 96, 111, 131, 157, 170, 264 n.23 = sngags, q.v.
Mantra Vehicle 55 = Tantra, Vajrayāna, q.v.
mar T butter 158
mar me T lamp 117, 119, 159, 169 cf. chos me, lha bshes
mar me snang gsal T offering-lamp 119
Mar pa Chos kyi blo gras (Mar pa lotsova) T (pr. Marpa Chhökyi Lodrö) n. of Tibetan lama (d. 1098), originator of bKa' brgyud pa 18, 22-3, 26, 36, 98, 251
Mārā S 'death'; a demon 87, 147
Equated with T bās, q.v.
mārya S 'killer' 185
Matrix 63, 68, 96 cf. Mother, yon mārj S illusion 65, 90, 265 n.37 = sgyu ma. Cf. also cho 'phral
māyā-body 53-4, 56-61, 71-3, 105, 261 n.6, 263, n.19, 265 n.37 and 38 = sgyu las, sgyu ma'i sk'u, q.v.v.
mchad T brothers 240
mChims T (pr. Chhim) n. of family in royal period 3
mChims phu, mChims phug T (pr. Chhimphu) 9, 257 n.24
mchod T (pr. chhö) offering; liturgical act in general 116, 123, 169, 266 n.5. Abbreviation for mchod pa, q.v. = S pāja
mchod gnas T family chaplain 132
mchod g.yog T sacrificial assistant 230
mchod pa T (pr. chhöpa) offering; liturgical act in general 95, 115-17, 149, 266 n.5 = mchod, q.v. = S pāja
mchod phul T liturgical act 267 n.9
mchod pa'i lha and mchod pa'i lha mo T (chhöpê lha, chhöpê lhamo) offering gods and goddesses 22, 105
mchod rdzas T cult substances 123
mchod rol T liturgical music 119
mchod rten T (pr. chhörten) type of religious construction 35, 79-80, 104, 147, 176, 186, 196, 219 cf. 259 n.11, 264 n.26 = stūpa, q.v.

314
mbod thig T ampulla for offerings 269 n.6, Figure 3(116-17)
mbod yon T offering of water 119
mde’ dar T arrow used in divinatory ritual 236
mde’ stong rgya T notch of arrow Figure 16c(178)
mdangs T radiance of person in good health 193
mde lha T arrow-point Figure 16c(178)
mdo T (pr. Do) class of scriptures 31, 35, 112, Figure 4(118) = Sūtra, q.v.
mdo khams T (pr. Dokham) Eastern Tibet (A mdo* and Khams*) 240
mdos T n. of ritual 176-7, 181-3, 201, 206, 233, 269 n.12 and 13, Figure 15(174-5)
mdun bskyed T evocation (of god) in front of oneself 95
m'dzad pa bchug gyis T Twelve Acts of the historical Buddha 147, 227
mdzo T cow-yak hybrid 154, 158-9, 205, 238
mdzo ka T ‘mdzo-pillar’ 154
mDzin lnga T ‘Five Treasuries’ (Bon texts) 228
me khrid T a meditation technique 265 n.33
me long T mirror 120, 203, Figure 5e(121). Cf. mirror
me zhang T ritual performed by good pa 92
Means 10, 32, 47, 52, 63, 73, 78, 105 = dba’ = chab, q.v.
Means, Vehicle of the 52, a synonym for Vajrayāna, q.v.
med pa T Non-Being 215
Meditation chapter 4, passim; cf. sgam, sgrub thabs, ldag mthang, zhi gnas, etc.
Meditation-cell 9 = sgrub khang
Merit, accumulation of 24-5, 44, 46, 115, 229 cf. dge ba chos zwal, karma
mgar pa T smiths 173
mgon khang T chapel of protective deities
Figure 4(118-19)
mgon po T (pr. gompo) class of gods 77, 116-17, 148 cf. Mahākāla; Deities, Protective
mGo’ po brgyud T (pr. Gompo Pernak) n. of protective deity 268 n.18
gros T ‘feast’ (type of ritual) 117, 119
gros chas T ritual objects 119
gnar lha T (pr. gurhla) class of deities 200
Mi bskyed pa T (pr. Michöpa) n. of Tantric deity 97 = Aṣṭobhya, q.v.
One of the Buddha’s of the Pentad, q.v.
Mi bskyed rdo rje (Aṣṭobhyavajra), statue of 1
mi chen T (i) monastic office 134
(ii) lords 207 cf. Aristocracy, mi drag
mi chos T folk religion (but see text) 170, 268-9 n.5
mi dpon T monastic official 134
mi drag T lords 134 cf. Aristocracy; mi chen
mi gurang T impurity 173
mi giang pa’i rabs T impure food 173
mi giug T servants of mi chen(i) 134
mi giug mda’ T ‘unswerving arrow’ 229
Mi la rabs pa T (pr. Milarepa) n. of ōK’a’ brgyud pa lama and poet (1040-1123)
26, 36, 251, Figure 7e(124-5)
mi mthun chen T men of great magical powers 230 cf. mthun
mi mthun T unfavourable 175
Mi nyag sGom rin T (pr. Minyak Gomrin) n. of ōK’a’ brgyud pa lama (C12) 251
Mi pham rgya mtho T n. of lama = ‘Jam mgon Mi pham rgya mtho, q.v.
mi ser T peasants 158
mi slob (lam) T ‘path of the non-learner’ (i.e. who has no more to learn) 50, 61
cf. Paths, Five
mi slob pa’i zung ’jug T ‘convergence of those who have no more to learn’ 61
mi snying T human heart 208
mig T eye 245
mig goz T ‘One-Eyed’ (divine epithet) 166
Mila Repa, Milarépa = Mi la rabs pa, q.v.
milk 116, Figure 3(116-17)
Mind, Purification of 23 = blo phyong
‘Mind Only’ School = Cittamatra, q.v.
mig phyong bvū T board with name 197
Ming Dynasty 28
ming the T list of names 126 (cf. chos the) Ministers of Tibetan kings 3
mirror 167, 265 n.33 cf. me long
Missionaries, Christian 253-4
mjol bon T (i) alternative spelling for 'jol bon (ii), first stage of Bon 224
(ii) class of Bon priests 231 (different from 'jol bon (ii))

mka'gro ma T (pr. khandroma) class of female deities 259 n.7 and 9(ch.3), 266 n.42 = S dākini

mka'lding T (pr. khanding) n. of legendary bird 218, 237 = Garuda

mkyan po T (pr. khenpo) (i) abbot 9, 125, 138, Figure 7c,h(124-5), Figure 11d(132-3) cf. Abbots
(ii) 'instructor' in monastic ordination 17

mkyar T castle 200 (= pho la mkhar, q.v.), 235

Mkhas grub rje, Mkhas grub dGe legs dpal bzang T (pr. Khé-trup Jé) n. of dGe lugs pa lama (1385-1483) 37, 42, 103, 145

mktres pa'i dri chab T offering representing bile 122

mNgag 'ri* T (pr. Ngari) Western Tibet (q.v.) 137

mNgag 'ri khang thon T monastic hostel for Western Tibetan visitors 137

mnyal thang T majestats, power of king 223, 236, 246-7

mngar gyam T 'three sweet' (substances) 116

mngon byang (sku) T body of Enlightenment (Bon) 243

mNgön (par) mdzod T (pr. Dzō, Ngönpar Drō) n. of text 140, 259 n.7(ch.2) = Abbidharmakosā

mngon par sangs rgyas T fully-accomplished Buddha 239

mNgön rtags rgyen T (pr. Ngöntok Gyen) n. of text 112, 142 = Abhisamayālaṃkāra

mnyes T contented 176

mo T (i) 'female', as in mo good, etc.
(ii) 'divination' 203, 232 (cf. mo lha (ii))

mo good T female gCod 39 cf. gCod

mo glud T 'female ransom' Figure 15a(174)

mo lha T (pr. molha) (i) god of women, god of the female line 187-8, 269 n.18. One of the 'ge bsai lha, q.v.
(ii) divinatory god 203

mo pa T soothsayer, diviner 234

mo ris gzig gos can T drawing of a woman wearing leopard skin Figure 16(178)

Moa T (pr. môn) n. for countries to south and south-west of Tibet 242

Monasteries, 4, 9, 20-1. 25-8, chapter 5 passim. Cf. names of individual monasteries

Monasteries, colleges for teaching 9 cf. chos grwa, bshad grwa, sgrub grwa

Monasteries, donations to 10, 25

Monasteries, economic aspects 9-12, 25, 130, 134, 137-9, 146, 158-160

Monasteries, political and legal aspects 8-10, 12, 27, 40-2, 138, 160-2

Monasteries, servants attached to 10

Monastic Celibacy cf. Celibacy, Monastic

Monastic orders 33-43. Also cf. names of individual orders or sects

Monastic ordinations cf. Ordinations, Monastic

Mongols 27, 34, 40-1, 165, 251-3, 255

Monks, meditating 9, 156-8 cf. sgom chen; sgrub grwa

Monks, wandering 9-10 = bandhe, bandhyas

tor pa T faith 17 = S adhimanī
tos pa n. of people (= Na-Khi) 274 n.25
Mother 63, 79, 81, 87-8, 217, 219. Cf. yam, Matrix, ma rgyud

mthar thug T 'limiting state' 23, 47, 54, 65 cf. Limiting State

mThil T (pr. Thil) n. of monastery 250-1 = gDan sa Thel*, q.v.

mTho gling* T (pr. Tholing) n. of monastery in Western Tibet 21 = Tholing, q.v.
mtho rde'u T arrow made from meteoric iron 186

mtho rts thom skas T epitaph of Mount Kailāśa 219

mthog T to see 66

mthog lam T path of vision 50 cf. Paths, Five

mtho T magical power 24, 168, 210, 212, 223, 247 cf. following entry

mtho dubs T magical power 168 cf. preceding entry

mthas pa 'byor T connection 107

mthas po Tho T 'retreat-heaps' (of stone) 157

mthban chos T evening period in chos grwa 268 n.13

mthban mchog T without own true nature 63

mthban nyid (i) logic 31, 43, 112, 142 = nyāpa. Cf. Logic, study of
INDEX

(ii) characteristic sign 65 = lakṣaṇa

mitsan thus T fourth study-period of day 131

mitsa T lake Figure 17(180)

mTsür phu T (pr. Tshurphu) n. of head monastery of kar ma po 26, 37, 146, 251

Mu ne btsan po T (pr. Muene Tsenpo) n. of king (CB) 249

Mu uer drkar po T (pr. Muer Karpo)
‘White Mu uer’, group of six Bon deities 234 cf. A ti mu uer

mudrā S ‘seal’ (Buddhist technical term)

(i) = Paredra, q.v. 79, 258 n.1
(ii) = phyag rgya, q.v.

Mālasāvīśāvādīns n. of Indian Buddhist school 111

mun mitsams T ‘dark retreat’ 158

mun pa T darkness 273 n.20

Murder, Buddhist justification of 19, 186

Mustang n. of region in present-day northern Nepal 213 = bLo

Mya kha nag po T (pr. Nyelwa Nakpo) n. of deity or principle of negation in Bon thought 214 cf. nyam rje, gnod yab, bi Kad med ‘bum nag

Myang T (pr. Nyang) n. of region in Tibet 168 (also spelled Nyang)

Myang chung T n. of text (No.4) 223

Myang rdo T (pr. Nyang Ro) n. region in Tibet 223, 226

Myang Ting nge ’dzin T (pr. Nyang Ting-ngé dzin) n. of Tibetan minister (CB) 6, 14, 39, 249

myong grol T n. of ritual 122

myariarchies 27, 40 = khri skor

Nag po pa T (pr. Nakpopa) n. of Indian yogin 98 = S Kṛṣṇa

nag rtis T Chinese astrology 172 = rtis nag, q.v.

Nag tsho lotsawa T (pr. Naktso lotsawa) n. of monk (C11) 250

gāya S water-spirits in serpent form 222

equated to T klu, q.v.

Nāgarjuna S n. of Indian Buddhist teacher (?C2) 8, 14, 25, 31, 43, 49, 55, 127, 140

Nako n. of a temple in Western Tibet 250

Nālandā n. of Indian Buddhist monastic university 21

nam mkha’i T ‘sky’; = thread-cross 182, 269 n.13, Figure 15a(174), Figure 18(182)

nam mkha’i lag pa gnyis T ‘the two hands of the nam mkha’i’ Figure 18(182)

nam mkha’i rab ’byar T a type of hat Figure 11a(132-3)

Nam mkha’i snying po from gNabs T (pr. Namkha Nyingpo from Nup) n. of Tibetan monk (CB) 15

nang dbystings T interior sphere of the existential 86 cf. dbystings

nang pa T ‘insiders’, i.e. Buddhists 111

nang rig (pa) T inner intelligence 85, 264 n.28 and 31 cf. rig (pa)

nang rten T branch in which phyag lha resides 189

Nāropa S n. of Indian Buddhist teacher (C10) 26, 36, 98-9, 265 n.37

Nārapā, Six Laws of 36, 98 cf. chas drug

Nepal 15, 20-1, 254-5, 267 n.9, 273 n.19

Nepalese Princess = Srong btsan sgam po, Nepalese wife of, q.v.

Nestorianism 15

Nethang n. of monastery 22 = sNyis thang’, q.v.

New Year Festival 147-56, 177, 208, 211, 272 n.14 = lo gsar, q.v.

nge ra ra T sound emitted by Gri gum’s corpse 226

nge rgyal T ‘pride’; the conviction that one is the deity 96

ngag T word, speech 85 cf. also Body, Speech, Mind

ngag dgen T isolation of the word 56, 108, 261 n.8, 263 n.19

ngag thigs gsum T word of three levels (Bon term) 241

317
INDEX

ngar glad T image of person to be ransomed 177, 183 cf. following entry ngar mi T image of person to be ransomed 177 cf. preceding entry Ngar pa thang T (pr. Ngarpa Thang) n. of place 226-7
nges par 'byung T 'decision' i.e. to renounce worldly existence 49, 61
ngo bo T true nature, essence 56, 59, 61, 66, 67
ngo bo ge 'g T identical nature 107
ngo bo nyid (kyi sku) T (pr. ngowonyi kyi ku) body in se, body of true own-nature 58, 82, 243, 263 n.18 = svabhāvatākāya
ngo sprod T finding again, recognition 85
Ngor* T (pr. Ngor) n. of monastery in gTsang 37
Ngor (pa) T (pr. Ngorpa) n. of sub-order of Sa skyes pa 37, 112, 150, 259 n.4, 266 n.5, Figure 8a(127)
Ngor bla ma 197 = Kun dga’ bzang po, q.v. ngor zhwa T 'Ngor pa hat' Figure 8a(127)
Ngul chu T (pr. Ngul chu) n. of river near Derge 155
nimshiṅkṣa S physical body of Buddha 58, 243 = sprul sku, q.v. Cf. Bodies, Three
nirākāra S Buddhist technical term = release from suffering 48, 71, 83, 93, 126, 147, 170, 196
niśpāṭisŚ Ś daily divine service 199
Nobles, Tibetan cf. Aristocracy; mi drag nas T to destroy, overcome 185
Nor lha T (pr. Norha) n. of god of wealth 116 = S Kubera
nyi S 'man' 185, 197
nir T from S ritual syllable 185, 197
sub T to disintegrate 191
Nyam rje T (pr. Nyamjé) deity or principle of negation in Bon thought 234-5 cf. bsKal med 'bum nag, gnod yab, Myal ba nag po
nyams bkhas T religious practice 143
nyams len T experience, religious practice 65, 143, 261 n.11
nyams pa T injured, damaged 192
Nyang ral Nyi ma 'od zer T (pr. Nyangrê Nyima Öser) n. of rNying ma palama (1136-1203) 39, 251
nyipör S logic 31 = mitshan nyid, q.v. Cf. Logic, study of nye bar spyod pa T ritual implements 265 n.5
nyer thob T abbreviation for nye bar thob pa 'nearly attained' (?) 62
nyi ma T sun Figure 17(180)
nyi zhwa T sun-hat Figure 11f(133)
nyin chos T day period in chos grwa 268 n.13
Nyinmapa, n. of Tibetan sect = rNyin ma po, q.v.
nyon mong T defilements 47, 59, 87, 152 = sktela
nyon mong T can T contaminated (of shes rab) 62
nyon mong mam par shes pa T contaminated perception (sijthana) 61

'o bon T class of Bon priests 230
'O de gang rgyal* T (pr. O-dé Kung-gyel) n. of mountain in Central Tibet and of associated deity 218, 226-7
Orgyan giug po T (pr. Orgyen Lingpa) n. of rNyin ma po lama (C14) 38
'Od dpag med T (pr. Öpamé) n. of Tantric god 42, 54, 97 = Amitābha, q.v. One of the Buddhas of the Pentad, q.v.
'od gsal T (pr. ösel) 'clear light' (i) Buddhist technical term 32, 54, 58, 60, 62, 64, 66, 73-4, 93, 98, 100-1, 106, 108-9, 159 cf. don gyi 'od gsal, dpe 'od gsal (ii) n. of a heaven 239 = S Ābhāsvara 'od gsal chen po T 'great clear light' 85 'od gsal lha T gods of 'od gsal heaven 239
'Od gsungs T (pr. Ösung) n. of claimant to kingship (C9) 250. Also called gNam lde
'od zer T shining rays of light 64, 84
'Od zer Idan T (pr. Öserden) n. of positive deity or principle in Bon thought 215 cf. Shangs po yab strid, Ye rje, Ye smon rgyal po
'od zer shugs T light-ray power 64
Offering Goddesses = mchod pa' i lha ma, q.v.
Offerings cf. mchod pa
Offerings, Filthy 17, 122, Figure 5d(120-1)
'Og gi don (po) T n. of group of early kings 223
'Og mün T (pr. Omin) n. of heaven 77-8, 239 = S Akanishtā
Peace treaties, rituals accompanying 15, 239
Pentad, Five Buddhas of 57, 77-8, 84, 97, 208, Figure 9a(128) cf. 264 n.22, 265 n.36, 266 n.42 = Vairocana, Amitābha, Ratnasambhava, Amoghasiddhi, Aksobhya cf. rigs lnga Perfections = pāramitā, q.v.
pha mes T fathers and grandfathers, paternal ancestors 269 n.18
pha (rgyud) T ‘Father Tantras’ 73 cf. 87, cf. Father
Pha dam pa sangs rgyas, Dom pa sangs rgyas T (pr. Pha Tampa Sangye) n. of Indian teacher (d.1117), founder of Zhi byed pa and gCod schools 39, 250, 259 n.4, 260 n.10
pha rol tu phyin pa T perfection, pāramitā 23 (here meaning Prajñāpāramitā) = phar phyin, pāramitā, q.v.
Phag mo gru pa T (pr. Phakmomtrupa) (i) n. of ruling dynasty of Tibet (G14-16) 27, 38, 40-1, 251, 253. Cf. Byang chub rgyal mtshan, rLungs (ii) n. of sub-order of bKa’ bsgyud pa 221, Figure 7i(124-5) (iii) n. of founder of this sub-order 26, 36 = 'Gro mgon Phag mo gru pa, q.v.
Phags pa Blo gros rgyal mtshan T (pr. Phakpa Lodrö Gyentsen) n. of So skya pa lama (1235-80) 1277, 34, 251
phan T cloth strips Figure 6(122)
phan yed yum T beneficent mother (epithet of Ben deity) 215 = Chu leam rgyal mo, q.v.
phan iie T cloth strips 122
phan yob T beneficent father (epithet of Ben deity) 215 cf. Shangs pa yob stiid 'Phan yul T (pr. Phenyul) n. of region 273 n.25
phan 'khab T spindle-nail Figure 16e(178)
phan khek T part of mong dpa’s costume Figure 9d,k(128-9)
phan 'khor T spindle-ring Figure 16c(178)
phan tshal T banner (temple-ornament) Figure 14e(144)
phan yu T spindle-shaft Figure 16e(178)
phangs len T funerary priests (early period) 229, 231
phar phyin T (pr. pharchhin) (i) the six virtues or pāramitā of the Bodhisattva path 10 abbreviation of pha rol tu phyin pa, q.v. = pāramitā, q.v. (ii) sometimes used for the teachings on the last of these (= Prajñāpāramitā, q.v.) 23, 39, 49, 53, 55, 87, 108, 112, 140
phar phyin vehicle 73 = Pāramitās, Vehicle of; Sūtra teachings, qq.v.
'pha ba T yogic technique 98-101 cf.
'grong 'jug
pho brang sde T monastic office at 'Bras spungs 138
pho gcod T ‘male gCod’ 39 cf. gCod
pho glad T ‘male ransom’ Figure 15a(174)
pho lha T (pr. pholha) male god, god of the male line 187-9, 200, 269 n.18. One of the ‘go ba’i lha, q.v.
pho lha mchog T castle of the pho lha (shrine on roof-top) 188
Pho lha nas bSod nams stobs rgyas T (pr. Pholhanē Sīnam Topgye) n. of ruler of Tibet (lived 1689-1747) 254
pho riis stag gos can T drawing of man wearing tiger skin Figure 16(178)
phags ras (pa) T monks supported by monastery 114, 128
phar pa T bowl 191
phra T fine, subtle 50, 66 = phra pa, q.v.
phra ba T less important (of deities) 167
phra mo T (i) less important (of deities) 167 (ii) fine, subtle 56 (referring to phra mo'i lur, q.v.)
phra mo('i lur) T subtle body 56
phra mo('i) sems T subtle sems 56
phra pa T fine, subtle 56 = phra, q.v.
phrin las T efficacy, activity 75, 242 ‘Phrub gsten T priests of third Ben vehicle 228, 230, 273 n.20
'Phrub snang T (pr. Trhûlnang) n. of temple 1-2
Phu chang pa gZhan nu rgyal mtshan T (pr. Phunchungpa Shôn-nu Gyentsen) n. of bKa’ gdam pa lama (1031-1100) 35
phud phor T offering-cup 269 n.6, Figure 3(116-17)
phud rgod T offering of chang 172
phug lha T (pr. phulkha) house-deity 187-9 = mo lha, khyim lha, qq.v.
phun sum tshogs lnga T five favourable situations 126
INDEX

Phyang po T components of person 55, 59, 79, 97, 197, 266 n.42 = skandha, q.v.
See following entry

preceding entry

Phur ba T (pr. phurwu, phurpa) (i) n. of magical instrument 268 n.16, Figure
15d(174-5)
(ii) n. of Tantric deity and associated ritual cycle 150, 268 n.16 cf. Phur pa
bkha' bsgyad

Phur chen T n. of ritual 150

Phur chung T n. of ritual 150

Phur ma T temple ornament Figure
6d(122-3)

Phur mang T temple ornament Figure
6a, b(122-3)

Phur pa bkha' bsgyad T n. of group of Tantric deities 97

Phye (also spelled Phywa) T (pr. chha)
(i) good fortune, blessing, prediction 200, 204, 228, 272 n.17
(ii) n. of a class of gods 272 n.17

Phye gshen T priests of the first Ben vehicle 228, 230, 232, 273 n.20

Phye g.yang dkar T (pr. Chha Yangkar) n. of diviner in Ben cosmogony 235

Phyag cha T symbols 243

Phyag chen T (pr. chhakgyen) a class of teachings 34 abbreviation for phyag
rgya chen mo, q.v. = Mahāmudrā, q.v.

Phyag dpe ba T literate monks 140

Phyag len T religious practice 261 n.11

(organonic form of lag len)

Phyag rtags T monastic official 134, 138, 142

Phyag na rdo rje T (pr. Chhana Dorje) n. of Tantric deity 95 = S Vajrapāni

Phyag rgya T (pr. chhakgya) T 'seal' (Buddhist technical term)
(i) = Paredra, q.v. consort of deity, female consort in Tantric practice 79
(ii) ritual gesture 96, 114

= mādrā, q.v. (both senses). See also following entry

Phyag rgya chen mo, Phyag rgya chen po T (pr. chhakgya chhenmo, chhenpo) ‘Great Seal’, a class of teachings 71, 131, 242 = phyag chen, Mahāmudrā, q.q.v.

Phyag skor T ceremonies accompanied by hand-gestures 207 n.9

Phyag tshal T homage, prostration 149

Phye ma T ornamental parasol Figure 6c(122-3)

Phye mbar T flour mixed with butter 203

Phyis chab T water given to monks at end of ritual 138

Phyi dar T ‘later diffusion’ 19 = Buddhism, Second Diffusion in Tibet, q.v. Also spelled phyi dar = ‘general diffusion’, q.v.

Phyi dbyings T exterior sphere of the existential 86 cf. dbyings

Phyi mig ma lta' chig T ‘do not look back’ 183

Phyi tags giang T Tantric triad 175 = Outer, Inner, Secret, q.v.

Phyen ma T ‘outsiders’, i.e. non-Buddhists 111

Phyi rgyal T external world 83 (as going on outside the mind

Phyi snyod T external world 215 cf. snyod, snyod bcud

Phyi thun T third study period of the day 131

Phying chtra T felt hat worn by some Tibetan deities 167

Phyog las nang rgyal T (pr. Chhoklê
Namgyel) n. of fo nang pa lama (1306-86), founder of fo nang
monastery (not the same as the founder of the Bo dbang ma, q.v.) 259
n.8(ch.3)

Phyog nags T ‘black quarter’ 172

Phyog sngan T ‘evil quarter’ 172

Phyog srid med T ‘indifference’ 92

Phyog stua T (pr. chhuklha) god of herds 200

Phyog stua span deun T (pr. Chhuklha Pûn Dûn) n. of a group of deities 166, 205

Phyus a alternative spelling for phyia, q.v.

Pistis Sophia 51

Po ti bis ru T (pr. Poti Seru) n. of historical text (No.88), a chronicle of the rlongs family, q.v. 232

Po tsu T (pr. Poto) n. of a monastery 35

Po to pa mhor chen gsal T (pr. Potopha Rinchen Sel) n. of bKa' gdam pa lama
(d.1105) 23, 35

Postures, Three 85

Potala T from S n. of hill in Lhasa on which Dalai Lama’s palace stands 218
INDEX

Poverty, Monastic 11
pra T n. of ritual 203-4, 209, 270 n.28
pra bren T ‘support of the pra’, human
medium for god 203 cf. lha pa
pra mikan T performer of pra ritual 203
prajñā S (i) ‘higher cognition’ 10, 32, 48,
63 = Cognition, Higher, q.v. = shes
rab, q.v.
(ii) Sometimes used for
Prajñāpāramitā, q.v. 43, 87
Prajñāpāramitā S ‘perfection of higher
cognition’. One of the pāramitā; also,
a class of scriptures containing
teachings on this topic 13, 23, 32,
49-50, 55, 63, 87, 89, 112, 140, 258
n.29 cf. prajñā(ii), pāramitā(ii), pha rol
tu phyin pa, phar phyin(ii), shes rab phar
phyin
Pramāṇavārttika S n. of book on logic by
Dharmakīrti 34
prāṇa S breath, vibratory power 56, 63,
261 n.6, 262 n.16 cf. riṅg, dbugs.
prāṇāyāma S breath-control 75
Prasangika S n. of Buddhist
philosophical school, a subdivision of
Mādhyamika 33
pratimokṣa S rules of monastic
discipline 45, 110 = so ther, q.v. Cf.
Vinaya
Pratimokṣa Vows 45
pratītya-samutpāda S law of moral
causation 8 = T rten ‘brel
Pratyekabuddha, vehicle of 76, 257
n.21, 264 n.20
Protection, as a purpose for ritual 25,
149-155, 161-2 cf. Ritual, Exorcistic
Protective Deities Cf. Deities, Protective
Pa knang T (pr. Purang) n. of region in
Western Tibet 20
paṇḍita S a class of Hindu scriptures 271
n.4
Pure Lands 60 = zhiṅ khams
Purities, Four 52-3
Qarluq, n. of a Turkic people 17
Qoṣot Mongols 41, 253-4
ra ba T hedge, fence 180
rab T higher 62-3
rab ’byung T monk 45 cf. grwa pa; dge
slung
rab ’byung ches T ordained monk’s
equipment Figure 10(131)
rab ’byung sdom slar phul T to renounce
monastic vows 110 = sdom phul, q.v.
Rab gsal of ’Gros Tseg T (pr. Raps’é of
Tsong) n. of Tibetan monk (C9)
17-18
Radiant Mind cf. ’od gsal
Rāhu S n. of a ‘planet’ (the ascending
node of the moon’s orbit) 164
rakta T from S blood 120, Figure
3(116-17), Figure 5b(120-1)
ral gri rtsi guší T two-pointed sword
Figure 17(180)
Ra mo che T (pr. Ramoche’) n. of temple
1-2
Ral pa can T (pr. Rêpachen) n. of king
(C9) 11, 14, 239, 250. Also called Khri
gtug lae bṛtṣan
Ra sa T old name of Lhasa 2
rang T coarse, gross 50, 66 abbreviations
for rang pa, q.v.
rang lus T material body, physical body
261 n.6 abbreviation of rang pa ’i lus
rang pa T coarse, gross 85 = rang, q.v.
rang pa ’i lus T material body, physical
body 56 = rang lus, q.v.
Rama Prasad n. of Indian mystic 88
rang don T one’s own salvation 49
rang bzhiṅ gnas T to rest in its own
essential nature 66
rang ga ma T class of monks 9
rang ldan n. of fifth Bum vehicle (Zhang
chung language) 272 n.15
rang stong T empty in itself (jo rang pa
term) 68
Ras chung rDo rje grags pa T (pr. Rêchung
Dorje Trakpa) n. of Ka’ brgyud pa
lama (1084-1161) 36, Figure
7i(124-5)
ras pa T (pr. rêpa) class of Tantric
adepts dressed in white 136
ratna S ‘jewel’, n. of the Tantric ‘family’
of Ratnasambhava 265 n.36
Ratnasambhava S n. of Tantric deity
97, 264 n.22, 265 n.36 = Rin chen
’byung ldan. One of the Buddhas of the
Pentad, q.v.
ra do lha T rock-images of deities 176
ra do pha wong T (pr. Do Phawang) n. of
rock near Derge 155
ra do rje T (pr. dorje) ‘diamond’;
‘thunderbolt’; an important Tantric
symbol
(i) as part of various technical terms
and names of deities, indicative of the
INDEX

'adamantine state' 105, 165, 204, 261 n.8; cf. rDo rje 'chang, rDo rje sems dpa', etc.
(ii) n. of a ritual implement 115, 119-20, 122, 132, 197, 266 n.3, Figure 2(115), Figure 5h(128-9)
= S sajra (both senses)
rDo rje brag* T (pr. Dorjetrak) n. of a
rNying ma pa monastery 135, 146
rDo rje 'chang T (pr. Dorje Chharg) n. of
Tantric deity 78, 99-100 = Vajradhara, q.v.

rDo rje dpal gyi yum T (pr. Dorje Pégyiyum) n. of goddess 166

rDo rje 'dzin T 'Possessor of the Diamond' 110

rDo rje gcod pa T n. of text ('Diamond Sūtra', Vajracchedika Prajñāpāramitā) 8, 176
rDo rje gdon T 'Vajra Throne' = Bodhgaya in India 39
rDo rje gsar T to brandish the rDo rje 197
rDo rje gur T n. of a Tantric text 103

rDo rje 'jigs byed T (pr. Dorje Jikchê) n.
of a Tantric deity 73, 75, 95, 153, 155
= Vajrabhairava, q.v.

rDo rje phag mo T (pr. Dorje Phakmo) n.
of a Tantric goddess 100 = S Vajravārāhi

rDo rje rnal 'byor ma T (pr. Dorje
Naljorna) n. of Tantric goddess 97-8
= S Vajrayogini

rDo rje sems dpa'T (pr. Dorje Sempa) n.
of Tantric deity 157 = S Vajrasattva
rDo rje ska T 'diamond body',
'sajra-body' 57, 64, 109, 261 n.6 = Diamond Body, q.v.

rDo rje slob dpon T Tantric master 132,
134, 260 n.3, Figure 1(114) = vajrākāya

rDo rje sogs pa T 'diamond vehicle' 49 =
Vajrayāna, q.v.

rDo rje ye shes T diamond consciousness
198

rDo sgra T carrying away of stones 201
rDo srum T a kind of white stone Figure
15d(174-5)

rDoa T terracotta 116
rDoa sku T terracotta image 169

rDzas T ritual substances 123, 182

rDzas mchog T best of offerings 208

rDzogs chen T (or. Dzokchhen) Tibetan
Tantric tradition associated with

rNying ma pa 6, 14, 34, 39, 82, 85, 87,
214, 219, 242, 243, 251

rDzogs chen pa T followers of rDzogs chen
73

rDzogs rim T (pr. dzokrim) 'method of
achievement', one of the two main
aspects of Tantric practice (cf. bskyed
rim) 56, 58, 60, 65, 74, 108, 263 n.19
= S tspansa skra

rDzong dpon T governor, prefect of
district 40, 252

rDzu 'phurul T 'miracle', a phase in Bon
cosmogony 220

rDzu 'phurul la (chen) T great god of
magical emanation (an epithet of Kw
byi mang skê) 243

rebirth 41, 75 cf. reincarnation
Refuge, taking of 48-9, 117, 149, 157, 169
reincarnation 41-2 cf. rebirth; death,
process of; Lama, Incarnate
Relative Truth. Cf. Truth, Relative;
Truths, Two
Reting. n. of monastery 19, 26, 250 =
Rwa sgren, q.v.
Reting, abbot of 256
rgod 'dul T (pr. gödül) class of Bon
deities 218
rgya T India (rgya gser) or China (rgya
nag) 242

rGya bstan Ra mo che T (pr. Gyatap
Ramoche) n. of place in Lhasa 112 =
Ra mo che, q.v.
rgya bsgr 'Chinese Consort' = Srong btsan
zgem po, Chinese wife of, q.v.
rgya dngos T (pr. gyeling)shawm 117,
134, Figure 4(118-19), Figure
5a,b(120-1), Figure 13(140-1)
rgya riis T Indian astrology 172 = riis
dkar, q.v.
rgya skor T stars 243
rgya ston T Chinese tiger 219
rgyas bsod pa T 'those who live apart';
monks not supported by monastery
114, 130
rgyas rten T support 192
rgyas dpun T 'shawm director', a
monastic office 134, Figure 1
(114)
rgyas gos T 'shawm-player's dress'
Figure 15b(140-1)
rgyas ching T land attached to the office
of rgyas dpun 134

323
INDEX

gyang chos T ‘shawn-player’s hat’ Figure 13a(140-1)
gyal ba T ‘victor’ (= S. jina) 252 = gyal ba rin po che, title of Dalai Lama, q.v.
gyal ba gshed rab T (pr. Gyelwla Shenrap) 238. Epithet of gShen rab mi bo, q.v.
gyal ba Kar ma pa T (Gyelwa Karmapa) n. of the first Tibetan series of incarnate lamas, the head lamas of the Kar ma pa order 135, 251. Cf. following entries. Sometimes called just Kar ma pa, as in text. Also cf. Zhuna nag.
gyal ba Kar ma pa. First, Chos ‘dzin dge phel Dus gsum mkhyen pa (pr. Chhöndzin Gempel Tüsum Chhenpa) (1110-93) 36, 135, 251, 159 n.7 (ch.3)
gyal ba Kar ma pa, Second, Kar ma pa kshi (pr. Karma Pakshi) (1204-83) 135, 251
gyal ba (rin po che) T (pr. Gyelwa Rimpoche), usual Tibetan title for the Dalai Lama, q.v. 232
gyal bu Mu khya’id ’dzin T (pr. Gyelwbu Muchhüdzin) 190 = S Nimipndhara
gsal chen T (pr. gyelchen) ‘great kings’; class of protective deities 157, 243. Cf. 268 n.21, and following entry

gsal chen bczi T (pr. gyelchen shi) ‘four great kings’; protective deities 191 cf. preceding entry
gsal kham pa T the whole people 207
gsal mtshan T banner (temple ornament) Figure 14e(144)

gsal po T (pr. gyelpo) ‘kings’, a class of deities 175
gsal po ’sde mu rje T ‘Mu rje of the class of rGyal po dieties’ (or ‘Mu rje and the class of rGyal po dieties’?) 191
gsal rabs T (i) genealogies of dynasties and families 207
(ii) n. of a text 230
gsal nga T (pr. gyel-nga) gong Figure 4d(118-19)

gsal rite T N. of town = Gyangtse*, q.v.
gsal tshab T representative, regent (epithet of gShen rab mi bo) 239
gsal tshab Dar ma rin chen, gSal tshab rje T (pr. Gyelthap Tarma Kinchen, Gyeltshap Je) n. of dGe lugs pa lama (1364-1432) 37

gyang ba T ritual object Figure 19(184-5)

gyang chags T ‘far-reaching’, epithet of ‘lamp of water’ 264 n.31

gyas T ‘increase’; magical action of increasing wealth, merit, etc. 32, 172, 242. Cf. karma(ii)
gru T primary cause 83, 173, 228 cf. also dngos nyer len

gyu bon T Bon teachings of the cause phase 274 n.25. Cf. 228

gyu mtshan gyi ‘rid’ T the third aspect of being in Bon doctrine 215

gyu ne T (pr. Gyuné) n. of monastery in Eastern Tibet 92

gyud T (pr. gyü) (i) class of Buddhist scriptures 31, 33, 35, 49, 148 = Tantra, q.v.
(ii) psychic continuum 66, 68 = sambhava

gyud gser gyi T ‘the two Tantra schools’ (of the dGe lugs pa) 112

gyud gser ma T ‘new Tantra’ 33 cf.

Tantras, ‘old’ and ‘new’; gser ma

gyud sde sbyi rnam bsad T ‘explanation of features of Tantras as a class’, a S skya pa discipline 267 n.7

gyud smad (grwa tshang) T (pr. Gyümé Tratshang) ‘Lower Tantric College’; n. of a dGe lugs pa monastery in Lhasa 112-13

gyud stod (grwa tshang) T (pr. Gyütö Tratshang) ‘Upper Tantric College’; n. of a dGe lugs pa monastery in Lhasa 112-13

rhetoric 34
ri bo T ‘mountain’ Figure 17(180)
ri khrod T ‘hermitage’ 132, 157 cf. also sgrub gnas
ri khrod pa T hermits 156
ri la me rgyab T lighting fires on mountains 173

Ri rab T (pr. Rirap) Mount Meru (central mountain of Buddhist cosmology) 182

rig T pure intelligence 48 abbreviation for rig pa, q.v. = S vidyā

rig che T ‘great (test of) intelligence’ 143

rig ’dzin T possessor of magical knowledge 242 = S vidyādha

rig ’dzin sgyi zhua T Tantric lama’s hat Figure 7b(124-5)

rig grwa T ‘wisdom courses’ 268 n.14

rig pa T (i) pure intelligence 82, 86, 264 n.28, 265 n.31 = rig, q.v. Cf. nang rig pa
INDEX

(ii) one of the five (or more) branches of knowledge 142, Figure 7d(124-5)

Rig ral (bCom ldan Rig pa'i ral gri) T (pr. Rikrê) n. of a lama (C13) 18

rigs T 'family' (literal or metaphorical) 97, 231

rigs bzhis T 'four classes' (of gshen) 230

rigs lugs T 'five families' (of Tantric deities) 97, Figure 9a(128-9) cf.

Pentad, Five Buddhas of

ril bu T pill 122

ril 'deg T a meditation technique 102

ril pa stü nyi blugs T ritual vessel 119, Figure 5a(120-1)

rim gro T a class of rituals, also called sku rim, q.v. 115

rim gzig T gradual, by stages 83

Rin chen 'byung ldan T (pr. Rinchen Jungden) n. of a Tantric deity 97 = Ratnasambhava, q.v., one of the Buddhas of the Pentad, q.v.

Rin chen bce gpo T (pr. Rinchen Sangpo) n. of Tibetan lama and translator (958-1055) 18-19, 21, 25, 33, 38, 250, 268 n.3

Rin chen gter mdo T (pr. Rinchen Terdzö) n. of a collection of gter ma ritual texts 268 n.22

Rin po che T (pr. rimpochê) 'precious', a title of respect for high lamas, especially incarnate lamas (cf. rGyal ba rin po che, Pīcā chen rin po che, etc.)

Rin spungs * (pr. Rimpung) capital of the Rin spungs pa (q.v.) until 1435.

Rin spungs pa (pr. Rimpung-pa) n. of ruling dynasty (Cl 5) 252 cf. Rin spungs, bSam grub rite

Ritual, Exorcistic 7-8, 12, 24, 92, 106, 115, 148-53, 155-6, 172, 176-86, 188, 211-16, 230, 233, 245, 247, Figure 4(118-19), Figure 96(128-9). Also cf. names of rituals, e.g. gto, gdo zor, gter bzlag, bzlag

tje btsan bsdod nam tse mdo T (pr. Jetsün Sōnam Tsemo) n. of Sa skya pa lama (1142-82) 34, 65

tje btsan Grags pa rgyal mtshan T (pr. Jetsün Trakpa Gyentshen) n. of Sa skya pa lama (1147-1216) 34

tjes gzhi T a meditation technique 102

rkang T leg, thighbone 122

rkang geig T 'One-Legged' (divine epithet) 166

rkang gling T (pr. kangling) trumpet made of human thighbone (or of metal) 89, 91-2, Figure 4i(118-19)

rkang phug T full prostration 157

rKong (rje) dkar po T (pr. Kongje Karpo) n. of early king 226

rKong po * T (pr. Kongsupa) n. of region in South-Eastern Tibet 219, 226

rkyi dar T a temple-ornament Figure 14a(144)

rkyang T wild ass 166

rkyang ma T left-hand channel 72 cf. nādi

rkyang mo T female wild ass 208

rkyen T contributory cause 83, 173 cf.

dan cig byed rkyen

rkyen ngag T causes and occasions of misfortune 155

rkyen sel T n. of ritual to banish causes of harm 157

rLad btsan T class of Bön priests 230

rLangs T (pr. Lang) family name of the Phag mo gru pa kings 251

rLion tshogs T 'wet tablets' of monks 268 n.17

rLung T (pr. lung) breath, vibrant power 56, 59-60, 63-4, 72, 75, 85-6, 106-8, 175, 260 n.4, 261 n.16 = prāna, q.v.

rMa chu * T (pr. Machhu) n. of a river in North-Eastern Tibet 17

rma dpod T (pr. Mapön) god of horses 200

rma po T (pr. Mapo) n. of deity 230

rma rigs T the family of the rma gods 240

rmi lam T 'dream' 96 cf. Dreams

rnal 'byor T yoga 72 (here = rnal 'byor rgyud, yoga-tantra, q.v.)

rnal 'byor pa T 'yogin' (i) practitioner of yoga 53, 91, 157

(ii) as title of bKa' gmdams pa masters 24

rnal 'byor rgyud T the third Tantra class of the 'new' system 72, 103, 260 n.3 = yoga-tantra, q.v.

rNam mkhyen rgyal ba gShen rab mchog T 'the all-knowing conqueror, the excellent gShen rab' (epithet of gShen rab) 239

rnam par rig T dichotomizing process 47 = rnam rig, q.v. = Sātākāsa cf.

Dichotomizing Process

rnam (par) shes (pa) T (pr. namshê) consciousness, conscious principle, modes of sensory experience 60, 97,
INDEX

107, 152, 192, 198 = S sijnāna. One of the five phung pa, q.v.

rNam par snang mdzad T (pr. Nampar Nangdze) n. of Tantric deity 50, 96-7, 197 = Valocana, q.v. One of the Buddhas of the Pentad, q.v.

rnam pa T liberation 47 = S simskta cf. rnam thar

rNam rgyal ma T (pr. Namgyelma) n. of a Buddhist goddess 126

rnam rtoy T dichotomizing process, discursive cognition 65, 87.

Abbreviation for rnam par rtoy pa, q.v. = S sikalpa. Cf. Dichotomizing Process

rnam thos chos dbyings su grol T ‘liberate consciousness in the realm of absolute existentiality’ 186

rnam thar T ‘liberation’; biography of holy persons, as a description of the process of liberation 207 abbreviation for rnam par thar pa, q.v.

rungs T (pr. ngas) drum (general term) 117, 206, 241

rungs chen T (pr. ngachhen) ‘large drum’ Figure 4b(118)

rungs chung T (pr. ngachhung) ‘small drum’ Figure 4c(118-19)

rungs grol T rows of monks beating drums 119

rungs T reward offering, recompense 197.

Also spelled drungs, q.v.

rNgag lotsoa T (pr. Ngok lotsawa) n. of Tibetan lama and translator (1059-1109) 18

rNyung ma pa T (pr. Nyingmapa) n. of Tibetan sect or monastic order 10, 31, 38-9, 42-3, 75-87, 97, 103, 110-11, 113-14, 116, 126-7, 130-1, 135, 138-9, 146, 148, 155, 155-7, 194-6, 219, 242, 259-60 n.9, 262 n.15, 267 n.7, 8 and 9, Figure 4(118-19), Figure 7 (124-5), Figure 12(136) cf. also rDzogs chen

rNyung ma(‘i) rgyud ’bum T (pr. Nyingmê Gytübum) n. of rNyung ma pa Tantra collection 38-9

do gis T ‘of the same essence’ 263 n.18

do mo T n. of right-hand channel 72 cf. nøti

rol dpon T ‘director of music’ (monastic grade) 132, 134, Figure 1(114)

rol mo T (pr. rûmo) ‘large cymbals’ Figure 4h(118-19) also = ‘liturgical music’ (general)

Rong gi fo mo kha rag T (pr. Rong-gi Chomo Kharak) n. of goddess 166

rta gdon T ornament for lama’s horse 135

rta glud T ransom of horse 205

rTa khyung ‘bar ba T (pr. Tachhung Barwa) n. of deity 273 n.24

rta lha T (pr. talha) god of horses 201.

Also called rga dpon

rTa mngri T (pr. Tandrin) n. of Tantric deity 273 n.24 = Hayagriva

rtag bstan g.yung drung T fo nang pa term for being 68

rtag (rhyad) T ‘eight signs’ (of death) 62, 108

rtag pa gnyis pa T a Sa skya pa discipline 267 n.7

ten T ‘support’, ‘receptacle’ (of the sacred) 10, 24, 123

ten brel T karmic relationship 169 (The primary meaning of this term is prāṇīya-samuddāda, q.v.)

ten-bten T ‘support’-‘what is supported’ 203

rtags T to comprehend 66

rtsa T ‘channels in body’ 56, 72, 85, 265 n.31 = nøti, q.v., especially 262 n.16

rtsa chings T band for base Figure 128-9

rtsa rlung T ‘channels and breath’ 85 cf. rtsa, rlung

rtsa rlung phrub ’khor T yogic exercises and breath control 131

rtsal T free activity 84

rtsang T a kind of wood (thorn or bramble) 181

rtsa drung T Lhasa government official 138, Figure 11b(132-3)

rTse lde T (pr. Tsé Dê) n. of king of West Tibet 250

rTse thang = Taethang, q.v.

rtsöö T ribs of a parasol 219

rTtis dar T astrology and astronomy (Indian system) 142 = rgya rtis, q.v.

rtis nag T astrology and astronomy (Chinese system) 142 = nag rtis, q.v.

rtsod grwa T college for disputation (in dGe legs pa monastery) 137 = chos grwa, q.v.

rüpa S ‘form’ 53 = gzugs, q.v. One of the five phung pa, q.v.

rus T bone 197
INDEX

rus rgyan T bone-ornament Figure 9i(128-9)
rus sbral T tortoise 219
Russia 255

rea llo T horns 237
Riwa sryengs T (pr. Reting, q.v.) n. of dKa’
gdams pa monastery 19, 26, 146, 250

sa T ‘earth’ (i) stages of attainment of Bodhisattva 55 = sbumi; Earths, Ten, q.v.
(ii) one of the three divisions of existence 223
sa brtag T (pr. saptak) class of Tibetan local deities 16, 149, 166, 170, 175, 200-1, 209, 211, 247 = Earth, Lords of the, q.v.
Sa bla dog rnam T (pr. Sala Dokrum) n. of Bon earth-god 218
sa bo T generative syllable 95 = S bja
sa brko T digging the earth 201
Sa lu'i lhang pa T n. of Buddhist scripture 8
Sa pa T 251 = Sa skyi phanrtsa, q.v.
Sa rgyal dong gi sbral mo T (pr. Sagyel Dong-gi Welmo) n. of Bon earth-goddess 218
Sa skyi * T (pr. Sakya) n. of head monastery of Sa skyi pa 26, 82, 146, 160, 250
Sa skyi pa T (pr. Sakya-pa) n. of Tibetan sect or monastic order 26-7, 31, 34-5, 37-8, 40, 43, 65-6, 70, 73, 97, 110, 112, 126-7, 146, 148, 153, 155, 221, 232, 250-2, 259 n.4, 263 n.17 and 19, 266 n.5, 267 n.7, 268 n.18, Figure 8(127), Figure 11e(133), Figure 12d,e(136)
Sa skyi Panrtsa Kun dga’ rgyal mtsan T (Sakya Pendita Kunjega Gyentsen) n. of Sa skyi pa lama (1182-1251) 34, 126-7, 251
Sa yi lha ‘od T (pr. Sayi Lha-ö) n. of Bon earth-god 218
sa chama T ‘Sa skyi pa hat’ Figure 8a-c(127)
Sacri fer es, Animal 15, 169, 230-1, 239, 273 n.24
sad mi T ‘men on trial’ (the first seven Tibetan monks) 15
Sad na legs = Khri lde srong btsan Sad na legs, q.v.
Sadakṣara S n. of a form of Avalokiteśvara, q.v. 170

sādhana S Tantric ritual for evocation of deity 32-3 = sgrub thabs
sādhu S Indian holy man 260 n.10
Śaivite schools of India and Kashmir 13, 44, 69, 81, 101, 214, 219, 223, 244, 258 n.1, 260 n.10, 265 n.32, 271 n.4 and 9, 272 n.19. Cf. also Śiva
śakti S divine power; female consort of Hindu Tantric deities 238 n.1
Śākya seng ge T (pr. Shakya Seng-gê), ‘Lion of the Sakyas’, an epithet of Padmasambhava, q.v. 148
Śākya yon tan of ‘Dar T (Sakya Yönten of Dar) n. of a Tibetan monk (C9/10) 18
Śākyamuni S n. of the historical Buddha 50, 57-8, 106, 147, 152, 239
Śākyamuni, statue of = fo bo, q.v. 1
Sakya-pa, n. of monastic order = Sa skyi pa, q.v.
samādhi S concentration, ‘syntensity’ 77, 91, cf. 264 n.21 = T ting nge ‘dzin samādhi-sattna S being created from syntensity 95 = ting nge ‘dzin sems dpa’, q.v.
Samantabhadra S n. of Tantric deity 50 = Kun tu bzang pa, q.v.
samatha S ‘meditation of peaceful detachment’ 56, 60 = bzhin gsar, q.v.
samaya-sattna S being evoked through vow 95 = dam tshig sems dpa’, q.v.
sambhogakāya S ‘body of co-fruition’ 58, 220, 243, 260 n.2 = longs sku; longs skyod sku; Co-Fruition, Body of, q.v.
Cf. Bodies, Three
Sāṅkhya S n. of Hindu philosophical school 68
sampradāya S lineage of teachings 44
samāsā S the process of ordinary existence (as opposed to nirādga) 59, 61, 71-2, 75, 82-4, 89, 93-4, 98, 170, 260 n.12
samskāra S conditioned 67
Samvara S n. of Tantric deity 243 = (Śrī)-Cakrasamvara; bde mchog; Khro lo bde mchog; dPal ‘Khro lo bde mchog, q.v.
samgruti-saśya S = Truth, Conventional; Truth, Relative
Samyê n. of monastery = bSam-yas, q.v.
sangs rgyas T (pr. sang-gyê) Buddha; state of Enlightenment 68; cf. Buddhahood
INDEX

Sangs rgyas rgya mtsho T (pr. Sang-gye Gyatso) n. of regent for Fifth Dalai Lama (lived 1652-1705) 253
Sang sli T n. of Chinese Buddhist teacher (CB) 2-3, 5, 8
Sāntarakṣita S (i) n. of Indian Buddhist teacher (CB) 4-7, 12-13, 32, 249
(ii) an epithet of Padmasambhava, q.v. 148
Sassanid kings 238, 244
 săstra S treatise 22 = bkstan bcos, q.v.
satteen-loka S world of living beings 215
sBa bzhad T (pr. Bashê) n. of Tibetan historical work (Text No.111) 3, 7, 259 n.7 (ch.2)
sBa gSal smang = gSal smang of sBa, q.v.
sba le T collar Figure 9f(128-9)
sbot mgos T ‘frog’s head’ Figure 17 (180)
sBar gras rlung T n. (pr. Barsê Ngam) n. of Bon deity 230
sba phag T (buphak) n. of wind instrument Figure 4m(118-19)
sbrub chad T (pr. bupchhel) large cymbals Figure 4h(118-19)
sbyon ba’i yo byad T ritual ingredients for purification 197
sbyin T gift 116
sbyin bdag T (i) donor 10 = S dānapati
(ii) commissioner of ritual 202, 211
sbyin sreg T fire-offering Figure 9i(128-9)
= S homa
sbyon T purification 74
sbyongs stigs T objects to be purified 197
sbyor lam T ‘path of practice’ 49-50 cf.
Paths, Five
scapegoat 177 cf. also glad
Schools of Tibetan Buddhism 33-43;
chapter 4, passim. Also see names of individuals schools or sects
sde srid T regent 42, 253
sde T’ bowl 191
sde gzhub sbyangs T cleansing of bad karma 196
sdon (pa) T vows 45, 116 cf. Vows
sdon phul T to renounce vows 136 cf. rab gsum sdon sbar phul
St Bon T Bon of the region of St, royal period 272 n.14
St ra T (pr. Sera) n. of a dGe legs pa monastery near Lhasa 137-9, 142, 146, 158, 162, 252, 267 n.9, 268 n.14
Semen, equated with byang chub sems (bodhicitta) 79-82, 100
Semjä n. of town in present-day Nepal 20
sems T (pr. sem) ‘mind’, ‘spirit’; an important Buddhist technical term
31-3, 54, 56, 59-61, 63-73, 76, 80-83, 85-7, 93-4, 98, 100, 106-8, 158, 259
n.1, 260 n.10 (ch.3) and n.4 (ch.4), 261
n.6, 7, 8 and 11, 262 n.16, 264 n.29
and 31, 266 n.42, 269 n.12, 274 n.30;
also see Preface = chita, q.v.
sems byang T ‘mental (or psychic) states and reactions’ 61-2, 64, 66 = S caitya, caitya
sems can don byed T ‘activity for the welfare of (all) living beings’ 46 cf. gzhan don
sems dden T ‘isolation of sems’ 108, 261
n.8, 263 n.19
sems gtal T ‘luminous thinking energy’ 66
sems la gdon sems T ‘(their) mind is contaminated’ 164
sems sde T rNyings ma pa division of teachings on sems 87
sems shin tu phra mo T extremely subtle
sems 56
sems tsam (pa) T ‘mind-only’ philosophical school of Indian Buddhism 31, 259 n.1 = Cittamatra, q.v.
ser pra T prediction using finger-nails
204
Seng ge gdong ma T (pr. Seng-gê Dongma) n. of goddess, a protective deity 268 n.18
Seng ge rDzong* T (pr. Seng-gê Dzong) n. of place 225, 245
seng ras kha khrig T a meditation technique 265 n.33
Senge Dzong = Seng ge rDzong*, q.v.
ser khrig T a meditation technique 265 n.33
Sexual Practices and Symbolism 8, 17, 79-82, 103-5 cf. Tantras, Literal and Esoteric Interpretations
sGam po pa T (pr. Gam-po) n. of bKa’ brgyud pa lama (1079-1153), author of Text No.116; also called Dwags po lha rje (pr. Takpo Lha-je) 26, 36, 126, 251
Figure 7e(124-5)
sgo bzhi T ‘four doors’ (Bon scriptures) 228
sgom T meditation 48, 56, 72, 75, 77, 131 = bhāvanā
INDEX

gsom chen T 'great meditators' 9, 207 cf.
Monks, Meditating
gsom lam T 'path of meditation' 50 cf.
Paths, Five
gsra rig T grammar 142
gsro bzhis T flur pennons of arrow Figure
16c(178)
gsro g.yab T 'fly-whisk of (owl) feathers'
Figure 15d(174-5)
sGrol ma T (pr. Drölma) n. of Buddhist
goddess 106, 125, 266 n.43 = Tārā,
q.v.
sGrol ma dkar po T (pr. Drölma Karpo)
'White Tārā', a form of the goddess
Tārā (sGrol ma) 126
sGrol ma dkyil 'khor T maṇḍola of Tārā 125
sgrub T (i) inner experiences and
mystical attainments (from Tantric
practice) 113 = S siddhi
(ii) Tantric ritual for evocation of
deity 125, 209. Abbreviation for sgrub
thabs, q.v. = S sādhana
sgrub bla T Tantric lama 111, 132, Figure
7b,i(124-5)
sgrub chen T n. of ritual 150
sgrub dpön T director of studies in sgrub
grwa 130-2
sgrub gnar T hermitage 168 cf. ri khrod
sgrub grwa T school for Tantric practice
114, 130, 137, 157, 269 n.6, Figure
7(124)

sgrub g.yag T meditation's attendant 157
sgrub khang T meditation-cell 9
sgrub mezhod T type of ritual 115, 132
sgrub pa' chas T lama's equipment Figure
13(140-1)
sgrub rten T support of the ritual 203
sgrub thabs T Tantric ritual for evocation of
deity 32-3 = sādhana
sgrub zhwa T Tantric lama's hat Figure
7i(124-5)

gsrong (pa) T epic bard 207, 222, 223-2
gsyul T 'māyā-body' (q.v.) 53, 56-61,
73, 85, 94, 98, 105, 108-9, 261 n.6, 265
n.37 = sgyu ma'i sku, q.v.
ngsul pa'i ye shes T 'transcendent
cognition of the māyā-body' 61 =
gsul ye shes, q.v.
gsul ye Shes pa' mo T 'subtle māyā-body' 61,
cf. 108 (subtle māyā-body)
gsul ye shes T 'transcendent cognition
of the māyā-body' 108 =
gsul pa'i ye

shes
INDEX

Shes rab rgyal mtshan T (pr. Sherap Gyentsen) n. of Tibetan lama (1292-1361), founder of Jo nang pa school 37
Sherab Seng ge T (pr. Sherap Seng-gê) n. of dGe lugs pa lama (C15) 112
Shes rab Skyi dbang T ‘lamp of higher cognition’ 264 n.31
Shes rab ye shes Skyi dbang T ‘initiation of transcendent consciousness through higher cognition’ 57-8, 79 cf.
Consecration, Four 187
Shigatse n. of town in West-Central Tibet 213, 252, 266 n.2 = gZhis kha rtsi  
Shin tu dpal pa’i lus T most subtle body 56 = gnyug ma’i lus, q.v.
Shin tu dpal pa’i sams T most subtle sams 56 = gnyug ma’i sams, q.v.
Shin tu styon mod T ‘emanationless in the highest degree’ 79
Shing byang T wooden board Figure 16(178)
Shing gagn rang T ‘whatever kind of wood’ Figure 19(184)
Tso T dice 190, 203 = shava
Tso khel T type of hat Figure 115(133)
Shang bu’y dbyang T paper fringes Figure 18(182)
Shang pa T juniper-wood 169
Shawa T dice 190 = zha, q.v.
Shawa chen T high score on dice 190
Shawa chung T low score on dice 190
Siddha T Tantric adept, adherent of Siddha schools (cf. next entry) 111, 242
Siddha Schools of Indian Buddhism 6, 12-14, 26, 35-6. Cf. siddha, grub thob
Sikkim* 255-6, 267 n.9 = T’Bras ljongs*
Siksho-guru S ‘guru of the teachings’ 45
Sil ma T local rulers in early Tibet 216
Sil myan T (pr. silyen) cymbals 117, 266 n.5, Figure 4a(118)
Silk Routes 15
Simla Conference 255
Siva n. of Indian deity 44, 243, 271 n.9 cf. Saivite Colleges; Lâvara
Skam tshogs T ‘dry gathering’ of monks 268 n.17
Skandha S the five components of the person 79, cf. 84 = phung po, phung po lnga
Skar rgyal T (pr. Kargyel) n. of a klu 268 n.3
Sku T ‘body’ (honoriﬁc form); physical form of the deity 57, 123, 263 n.18 = S kya. Cf. Bodies, Three; Body, Speech, Mind
Sku ‘bum’ T (pr. Kumbum*) (i) n. of dGe lugs pa monastery in A mdo, 254
(ii) = sku ‘bum mchod rten, cf. following entry 196
Sku ‘bum (mchod rten) T ‘100,000-image stupa’ 104, 196
Sku dag pa zung ‘jig T convergence of pure body 61 cf. Convergence; zung ‘jig
Sku gshen T (i) royal priest (early period) 231, 237
(ii) gshen of body plane 273 n.20
Sku giang thugs T ‘body, speech, mind’ (honoriﬁc forms), Tantric triad 10, 57, 261 n.8, 273 n.20 cf. Body, Speech, Mind; lus ngag yid (non-honoriﬁc form)
Sku ‘gyed T ritual presentation to monks 160, 268 n.17
Sku ‘phreng bar ma chod T ‘uninterrupted sequence of incarnations’ 135
Sku rdo rje T adamantine state of body plane 261
Sku rim T (i) class of rituals 115, 126, 132
(ii) evening period in chos grwa 268 n.13
Sku rten T ‘support’ for physical body of Buddha, e.g. image, 10, 24; cf. rtan; sku giang thugs
Sku thang T scroll painting 22 honoriﬁc form of thang ka, q.v.
Sku thugs gnis su mod T ‘non-duality of physical and mental planes’ 53
Sku tshab T ‘representative’, title of various monastic ofﬁces
(i) government representative at Se ra 138
(ii) ofﬁcial in charge of monastery land 158
Sku pa T thread Figure 16e(178)
Skye pa T light-coloured 113
Skeya che T (pr. Kyapchhe) n. of monastery in East Tibet 92
Skeya ‘gro T Refuge, Taking of (q.v.) 149, 157
Skye ’chi T birth and death 87
Skye mod T ‘without the born’ (method of assessment) 159

330
skye mched T (the six) senses 79, 197 = őyatanā
skyed med klong T 'realm without birth' 217
skyebs T drink-offering 269 n.6 cf. gser
skyebs
skyes bu lung btsan T (pr. Kyebu Lungtsen) n. of deity 191
skyid lde Nyi ma mgon T (pr. Kyide Nyima Gön) n. of king (C9) 250
skyod ston bSod nams bla ma T (pr. Kyuton Sōnam Lama) n. of Tibetan lama (C11-12) of gCads school 39
skyang (byed) T 'acts as protector, patron' 168, 238
skyang chen T lords 207 cf. Aristocracy; mi chen; mi drag
skyor dpon T supervisor of studies (in monastery) 125, 130
skyor skyang T to practice texts 126
slob T to learn 75
slob dpon T teacher 17, 119, Figure 5a(120-1) = Sādārāya, q.v. Cf. also rdzogs chos dpon
smad T lower 112
smad las T n. of ritual 150
smag gsob T class of Bon priests 231
slob rgyer T teacher 126
Small Vehicle 11 = Hingyāna, q.v.
sman T (pr. men) (i) medicinal herbs 116, 152, 216, 230
(ii) n. of class of goddesses 191, 200-1, 230 cf. smang 'bru, sman kyi sde, srid pa'i
sman
sman bstan T class of Bon priests 230
sman btsun T (pr. mentsun) class of goddesses 204
sman kyi sde T 'the sman goddesses as a group' 191
sman mo gNam phyi gung rgyal T (pr. Menmo Namchhi Gung-gyal) n. of goddess 216 = gNam phyi gung rgyal, q.v.
sman rig T medicine (as a branch of knowledge) 142
sman rgyub T n. of ritual 122
sMan yul T (pr. Menyül) n. of region 273 n.25
sMin gro lling T (pr. Mintröl-ling) n. of rNyting mo pa monastery 135, 145-6
sman lam T (i) vow, solemn promise 126, 187
(ii) annual festival at Lhasa 142-3,
147, 149, 151-3, 268 n.17 = sMon lam chen mo, q.v.
sMon lam chen mo T n. of annual festival at Lhasa 149 cf. preceding entry.
Smīrti S n. of teacher from Nepal (C9-10) 19
sNa nem T (pr. Nanam) n. of family in royal period 3
sna tshogs gshen T a class of Bon priests 273 n.20 = sna tshogs po'i bon po, q.v.
sna tshogs po'i bon po T a class of Bon priests 272 n.20 = sna tshogs gshen, q.v.
snal ma T wool threads Figure 16c(178)
smang, smang ba T 'appearance', 'apparent world' 52-3, 62, 71, 86, 264 n.30 cf.
Truths, Two; smang srid
sNang ba 'dod idam T (pr. Nagwā Őden) n. of creator in Bon cosmogony 215
sngag chen T apparent object 83
sngag gshen T priests of second Bon vehicle 228, 230, 273 n.20
sngag idam fourth Bon vehicle (Zhang zhung language) 272 n.15
sngag rgyi T 'family of the apparent world' (gods of this world as opposed to the gods of heaven) 167 = btsan, q.v.
sngag srid T apparent world 212, 215, 219, 243
sngag srid bstan T priests of ninth Bon vehicle 230
sngag srid kyi legs nyis 'sbar ba'i me long T 'mirror showing good and evil in the world' 203
sNang srid sens can yod pa dga ba'i bdag po T epiphany of the positive deity or principle in Bon thought 215 cf. Shanga pa yeb srid, Ye smang rgyal po, Ye nye
sngang yul T the apparent as object 86
sNar thang T (pr. Narthang) n. of monastery 35
snga dar T earlier diffusio 19, 250 = Buddhism, first diffusio of, q.v.
snga chab T water offered to monks at start of ritual 138
snga phyi bar gcaw T 'before, after, between' 142
snga thu 'tan T first study-period of the day 131
sngags T (i) ritual formula, mantra (q.v.) 45, 54
(ii) also used as synonym for Tantra, q.v. 23, 49-50, 52-3, 55, 101, 103, 111-12
331
spyi the n. of third Bon vehicle (Zhang zhong language) 272 n.15
spyi zur T monastic official 134
spyod T (i) action, mode of conduct 48 (ii) = spyod rgu, cf. next entry 72
spyod rgyud T n. of second 'Tantra class ('new' system) 72, 103, 260 n.3 = cariyā-tantra, q.v.
śramaṇera S novice 111 = dge tshul, q.v.
sras T son (honorific term), spiritual son 160 cf. yab sras, thugs sras
Śrāvaka, Vehicle of 76, 257 n.21, 264 n.20. One of the two Hinayāna vehicles.
Śrāvasti S n. of town in India. Miracle of, 147, 151
sri T (pr. si) a class of demons 216, 218 Śrī-Dhānyakaṭaka S n. of place in East India 148 = dPal ldan 'Bras sgongs
srid T 'worldly existence' 48, 138, 142, 219, 221-2
srid gaden T priests of the fourth Bon vehicle 228, 230, 273 n.30
srid kyi gyag po dkar po T 'White Yak of Existence' 220 cf. lha gyag
srid mo T (pr. simo) class of female demons 218
Srid pa rgyal mo T (pr. Sidpā Gye Molmo) n. of Bon goddess 274 n.27
Srid pa'i chags pa'i lha dgu T (pr. Sidpē Chakpē lha gu) class of nine Bon gods 218
srid pa'i ming sring T (pr. Sidpē Mingsing) class of eighteen Bon deities 216
srid pa'i smon T (pr. Sidpē Men) (i) epithet of gNam phyi gung rgyal, q.v., 216, 219 (ii) class of goddesses 240 cf. smon
srid phyis T predictions concerning birth of a son 204, 270 n.28
Srid rje 'brang dkar T (pr. Sidjē Drangkar) n. of Bon deity 216
srid zhi T 'worldly existence (samsāra) and peaceful detachment' 48, 71-2
srid zhi gnyis mtha' dang bral T 'separate from the extremes of worldly existence and peaceful detachment' 48 cf. srid zhi
srt T (pr. sin) a class of demons 91, 164, 203, 215, 232, 235
srt mo T (pr. sinmo) a class of female demons 168
srod T darkness 273 n.20
srog T vital spirit 187, 192-3
srog bdag T (pr. sozidak) a class of deities 166
srog gcod T 'destroyer of life' (divine epithet) 166
srog lha T (pr. soklha) 'god of the vital spirit' 265 n.18. One of the 'go ba'i lha, q.v.
srog bshu T n. of ritual 190
srog ni the ste T 'the srog is the duration of life' 192
srog phyis T predictions about life 204
srog sra T liberation of animals intended for death 176
srog snying rgya' brus so bsen T syllables enclosing essence of god's power 240. Cf. 168. See also sro sbar.
Srong btsan sgam po, Srong btsan T (pr. Songtsen Gampo) n. of Tibetan king (C7) 1-3, 168, 222-3, 225, 227, 237, 244, 249, 257 n.1 and 3
Srong btsan sgam po, ancestors of 3, 222-7 cf. also Lha tho the ri, gNya' kāri btsan po
Srong btsan sgam po, Chinese wife of (Wên-ch'êng) 1-2, 249
Srong btsan sgam po, Nepalese wife of 1-2
srong T (pr. sung) protective deities 200 abbreviation for srong me, q.v.
srong bya T person to be protected in ritual 177
srong ma T (pr. sungma) protective deities 91, 166, 173, 180, 189, 206 cf. srong; Deities, Protective
sTag brag, Abbot of 256 = Taktra Rimpoché, q.v.
STag geig T (pr. Tasi) Iran, Islamic world 214, 239, 271 n.4 and 7, 273 n.25
STag geig gi ras ma T 'Persian cloth' 92
STag lang* T (pr. Taklung) n. of head monastery of STag lang pa 36
STag lang bkra shis dpal T (pr. Taklung Trashipel) n. of STag lung pa lama (1142-1210) 36
STag lang pa T (pr. Taklungpa) n. of a bkra shis dpal pa suborder 36, 259 n.4
stag pa T birch 168
stag sham thabs T tiger-skin jacket 228
stod T upper (especially 'upper Tibet', i.e. Western Tibet) 112, 218
stod kyi steng T group of early kings 223
stod las T n. of ritual 150
INDEX

ston phyug rgyud rgyal po T 'old Upper Tantra' 112
ston po T teacher 126, 147, 274 n.25 (In Buddhist texts, usually = Sakyamuni, q.v.; in Bon writings = gShen rab)
ston T 'void' 217 abbreviation for stong po, q.v.
stong bcos chen mo T n. of festival 148
ston po T 'void' 31-2, 47-8, 53, 65, 86 = stong, snying, void, q.q.v. Cf. stong pa nyid
ston po nyid T 'voidness' 54, 64, 197, 209 = snyingtul = voidness, q.v. Cf. stong po
stupa S a kind of religious construction 24, 104, 147, 259 n.11, 264 n.26, 269 n.9 = mchod rten, q.v.
Subject-Object Dichotomy. Cf. dichotomizing process
Suffering, Liberation from 43, 47, 87. Cf. dukka
saffiren, sufferrmenta Latin 'incense-offering' 169, 199-200, 241, 268 n.4. Cf. bangs
Sukhāvatī S n. of a paradise 54 = bDe ba
Sum pa T (pr. Sumpa) 214, 271 n.7, 272 n.14
sūrya S 'void' 31 = stong po, void, q.q.v. Cf. also stong pa nyid; voidness
sūrakṣaṇa S 'sun-stone' 238
sūtra S a class of scripture 31, 35, Figure 4(118) = sūtra, q.v. Cf. next entry
Sūtras, teachings of (as contrasted with Tantras) 9, 23, 33, 51-2, 112. Cf. also Prajñāpāramitā; Mahāyāna
svabhāvika S 'body in se' 243 = Body in se; ngo bo nyid kyi sku, q.v.
svastika S svastikā 15, 68, 217, 229, 240, 243 = gyang drungs, q.v.
Śvātantra S n. of Buddhist philosophical school; subdivision of Mādhyamika 33
Swat 29, 38, 163, 186, 244, 271 n.4
Tabo n. of temple in Western Tibet 250
Taktra Rimpoche n. of lama, Regent of Tibet (1941-50) 162, 256
Tantra S a class of scripture 31-2, 35, 43, chapter 4 passim, 146, 163, 172, 194, 196, 202, 206, 209-10, 247, 261 n.11, 269 n.6, 272 n.19, Figure 4(118) = rgyud, q.v. Cf. Vajrayāna; and following entries
Tantra, four classes ('new' system) 71-3, 262 n.15
Tantra, six classes (rNyung ma pa system) 77-81, 262 n.15
Tantra, literal and esoteric interpretations 16-17, 20, 24
Tantras, 'old' and 'new' 33, 38-9, 76, 259 n.9 (ch.3) cf. rnying ma 'rgya 'bum
Tantras, teachings of (as contrasted with Sūtras) 8-9, 23-6, 33, 35, 50-109, 112, 145
Tantras, Vehicle of 264 n.20 = Vajrayāna, q.v.
Tantric deities cf. Deities, Tantric
Tantric Initiation cf. Initiation, Tantric
Tantric Masters, Indian 7
Tantric vows cf. Vows, Tantric
Taosim 167, 270 n.20
Tārā S n. of Buddhist goddess 22, 106, 125 = sgrub ma, q.v.
Tārānātha T from S n. of jo nang pa lama (b.1575) 37, 259 n.3
tathāgata S 'thus-gone' = Buddha (i) Buddha 198
(ii) n. of Tantric 'family' of Vairocana 265 n.36
tathāgatagarbha S essence of the tathāgata (Buddhist technical term) 37, 67-8, 101 = bde bar ga’ghes pa’i snying po, Buddha-Nature, q.v.
Tattvastāngaroha S n. of Tantric text 35 taxation 27
tea 122, 130, 138, Figure 3(116-17) teaching-stories, use of 23, 207
teja S heat, radiance 193
thab lha T (pr. thaplung) god of the hearth 173, 187, 189
thabs T (pr. thap) means, method 10, 32, 73, 78, 105, 219 = sgo ba, q.v. = Means, q.v.
thabs sgron T clockwise circumambulation 243
than T drought 204
thang T scroll 38
thang ka T Buddhist scroll-painting 22, 169
Thang lha T (pr. Thanglha) n. of deity 240 = gNyan chen thang lha, q.v.
thang yig T (i) 'scroll' 38
(ii) = Pad ma thang yig, q.v. 168, 257 n.26
thar lam T path of liberation 89
thar po T liberation 47
theb skyu T shape made from tsamba 177, 183

334
INDEX

theg chen T Mahāyāna (q.v.) 49
theg pa rim pa dge T series of nine vehicles 76
Thel T (pr. Thil) n. of monastery 26, 250
= gDan sa Thel, mThil, Thel, q.q.v.
the’ur T (pr. the’urang) class of deities 191, 216
the’urang rgyang gceg T (pr. Theurang Kangchik) n. of deity 166
thig le T ‘point’, ‘drop’ (Buddhist technical term) 60, 80, 86, 100, 102, 107, 262 n.16, 263 n.19, 264 n.31 = S bindu
Thil T (pr. Thil) n. of monastery 26 = gDan sa Thel, mThil, Thel, q.q.v.
thim T (i) reabsorption 71
(ii) breathing out 72
tho the n. of first Bon vehicle (Zhang zhung language) 272 n.15
thod pa T skull 181
thod rgyal T a meditation technique 85-7.
Cb. 264 n.31
thog rdo’u T ‘heaven-stones’ 245
thogs bras T ‘invoking contact’ 90
Tholing n. of temple in Western Tibet 250 = mTha’ gling’, q.q.v.
Thon mi Sambhota T (pr. Thömmi Sambhota) n. of minister of Srong btsan sgam po (C7) 249
thor T to hear, to listen 66, 267 n.10
Thought of Enlightenment cf.
Enlightenment, Thought of Three Bodies cf. Bodies, Three
Three Jewels cf. Jewels, Three
thug T ritual device on roof 188, Figure 14a (144)
thug pa T soup 130
thugs T honorific form of sêms; Buddhist technical term 55, 67, 73, 75, 198, 242
cf. sku gsung thugs
thugs dag T ‘pure consciousness’ 61
thugs dam T honorific form of gyi dam, q.q.v.
Figure 3 (116-17)
thugs dam chaw mo T hat for guardian deities Figure 3 (116-17)
thugs gcchen T class of Bon priests 273 n.20
thugs rdo rje T adamantine state of sêms 261 n.9
thugs rten T ‘support’ for mental body of Buddha 10, 24 cf. rten; sku gsung thugs thugs sras T spiritual son 44
thun T study-period 131
thun mông T ‘ordinary’ (teachings) 53 = Sutra teachings (as opposed to Tantra), q.q.v.
thun mông ma yin pa T ‘non-ordinary’ (teachings, state) 60, 73 = Tantra teachings (as opposed to Sutra), q.q.v.
Ti se’ T (pr. Tisê) n. of mountain in Western Tibet 193, 216-17, 219-20, 226, 240, 271 n.9 = Kailāsa*
Ti-Shiib, Chinese title (‘Imperial Preceptor’) 251
til lo T food for demons 177
Tilopä T from S n. of Indian Buddhist teacher (C10-11) 26
ting lo T food for demons 177, 197
ting nge ’dzins sems dpa’ T being created from synenstas 95-6 = samādhi-satta, q.q.v.
ting thag T (pr. tingshak) small cymbals 117, 120, 266 n.5, Figure 5a c(120-1)
Translations of Buddhist works into Tibetan 8, 21, 29, 250 cf. lotasna
Trashilhunpo n. of monastery = bKa’ shis lhaun po*, q.q.v.
Trisong Detsen, n. of king = Khri srong lde brtson, q.q.v.
Truth, Absolute 68, 70-1, 262 n.16 = Truth, Ultimate; den dam bden pa, q.q.v.
= S paramārtha-satya. Cf. Truths, Two
Truth, Conventional 23, 69-70 = Truth, Relative; kun rtsobs gyi bden pa;
Empirical Reality, q.q.v. = S samārti-satya. Cf. Truths, Two
Truth, Relative 68, 70-1, 262 n.16 = Truth, Conventional, q.q.v.
Truth, Ultimate 23 = Truth, Absolute, q.q.v.
Truths, Two: Conventional (or Relative) and Ultimate (or Absolute) 23, 69-70, 77, 93, 262 n.16
tsamba barley-flour 92, 116, 130, 177,
180-1, 183, 185, 190-1, 206, 208, 239,
265 n.34, 268 n.14, 273 n.24, Figure 15a,b (174-5)
Tsan du dang ngu T (pr. Tsentu Hang-ngu) n. of teacher from Nepal
23
Tséchhang n. of place 43 = rThe thang
Tshe rgyag ram pa T n. of plant 185
Tshed ma T logic 140 cf. Logic, mitshen nyid, q.q.v.
Tshed ma rgyas pa’i gter T (pr. Tshêma Rikpê Ter) n. of book on logic by S skyabs pa’i mchog po 34
INDEX

tshad med byin T four immeasurable meditations 149 = Sāramāṇa
Tshad med 'dod Idan T (pr. Tahêmē Ōden) n. of Bon deity 217
Tshel T (pr. Tshel) n. of monastery 26-7, 161, 251
?tshams bon T n. of class of Bon priests 230
tshan T group of topics used in classifying teachings 23
Tshan ja T monastery hostel tea 138
tshang rigs T the family of heavenly gods 167 = lha, q.v.
Tshang po T (pr. Tshangpa) = Hindu Brähmā (i) as a Buddhist deity 205 (ii) as a Bon deity, equated to Shangs po yab srid, q.v. 215
Tshe ba byed T to torment, torture 231
Tshe ling T (pr. tsheptak) 'lord of life'; n. of deity 155. Cf., Jam dpal Tshe lnga
Tshe lnga lha khang T n. of temple 155
Tshe dpag med T (pr. Tshepame) n. of Tantric deity 126 = Amitāyus, Amitāyuh, q.v.
Tshe khang T n. of ritual 192
Tshe lha rnam gsum T 'ceremony of' the three gods of long life 126
Tshe ring T long life 172
Tshe thar T liberation of animals intended for death 176, 191
Tshechen n. of place 223
Tshe ching nag po T black thorny shrub 180
Tshe srong T (pr. Tshēpong) n. of family in royal period 3
Tshig byun grol 'debs T n. of prayer 170
Tshig gi dbang T 'initiation through the word' 58 cf. Consecrations, Four
Tshil chen gyi sgra T melted fat incense 122
Tshims T satiated 176
Tshi'u dam T (pr. Tshiumar) n. of deity 166
'Tsha T life, livelihood 232
'Tsha rin T (land as) 'support for livelihood' 158
Tshog ram(s) pa T n. of monastic degree = dGe bshes tshog ram(s) pa, q.v.
Tshogs T communal ritual performance 132 abbreviation for tshogs pa, q.v.
Tshogs chen T (i) morning assembly 134 (ii) main chapel of large dGe lugs pa monastery 137 (iii) collective property of monastery 137
Tshogs lam T path of accumulation. 49 cf.
Paths, Five
Tshogs mchod T n. of monthly monastic ritual 140
Tshogs pa T communal ritual performance Figure 4(118) = tshogs, q.v.
Tshom bu'i dkyil 'khor T type of mandala 119
Tshon ma lugs dkyis T five-coloured ring Figure 16c(178)
Tshong T trade 159
Tshor T sensory perception 97 = S sadanā. One of the five phung po, q.v.
Tsang kha* T (pr. Tsongkha) n. of a region in North-Eastern Tibet 19
Tsang kha pa bLo gros grags pa T (pr. Tsongkhapa Lotrō Trakpa) n. of Tibetan lama (1357-1410), founder of thedGe lugs pa sect 34, 36-7, 43, 112, 136, 142-3, 145, 151, 232, 254, 263 n.17
T'u-yū-hun. n. of area in present North-Eastern Tibet(? 249 = A zha
Tung yar mu khrod T? T (pr. Tūnyar Mūtrūhō) n. of king of Zhang zhung 217
Tun-huang, documents found at 14, 227, 229, 232, 270 n.23 cf. Turkestan
Turkestan, documents found in 10 cf.
Tun-huang
Turkestan, expulsion of Tibetans from 19, 249-50
Turner, Samuel 254

Urgyen pa T (pr. Urgyenpa) n. of Tibetan lama (C13) 186
Uddiyana S place-name 29, 38, 163 = Swat
Uighurs 271 n.5
Ultimate Truth cf. Truth, Ultimate upa-yoga(-tantra) S second Tantra class (fifth vehicle) ofrNyung ma pa system 76-8
upāsaka S lay disciple 17, 46, 111 = dge bsnyen, q.v.
apāya S means, method 10, 32 = thabs, Means, q.q.v.
Urama S n. of a country 271 n.4
vaśīrāja T from S n. of a precious stone 238, 242
Vairocana S (i) n. of Tantric deity 35, 50, 97, 197, 264 n.22, 265 n.36 = rNam pa rsnang mdzad, q.v. One of the Buddhas of the Pentad, q.v. Also cf. Kun rig
INDEX

(ii) n. of a Tibetan monk (C8) 3, 6, 19
vajra S (i) tantric symbol 204 = rdo rje, q.v.
(ii) n. of the Tantric 'family' of Aksobhya 265 n.36
Vajrabhairava = rDo rje ‘jigs byed, ‘jigs byed, dPal rdo rje ‘jigs byed, qq.v.
vajrācārya S Tantric master 132, 134, 260 n.3
Vajracheydika Prajñāpāramitā S n. of Buddhist scripture 269 n.11 = rdo rje gcod pa, q.v.
Vajradhara S n. of Tantric deity 265 n.36 = rDo rje ‘thang, q.v.
Vajrāsana S‘Vajra Throne’ = Bodhgaya in India 39
Vajrasattva = rDo rje sems dpa’, q.v.
Vasubandhu S n. of Indian Buddhist teacher (?C6) 31, 260 n.1
Vehicles, Three 264 n.20
Vehicles, Nine (Bon) 228-30, 272 n.15
Vehicles, Nine (rNyung ma pa) 76-81
vīśūditī S liturgical act 169 = cha ga, q.v.
vīpādhāra S possessors of magical knowledge 242 = rig ’dzin
sīlānas S modes of sensory experience, consciousness 192 = rnam par shes pa, q.v.
Vikramaśīla S n. of Buddhist monastic university in India 250
Vimala, Vimalamitra S n. of Indian teacher (C8) 39, 135
siṇāyanā S ‘meditation of higher vision’ 56, 60 = thag mthong, q.v.
Viśvantara n. of past incarnation of Buddha 10, 207
Void 32, 47-9, 63, 86, 93, 96, 220, 262 n.16, 265 n.31, 266 n.5, 269 n.8 = sgrub pa, stong pa, q.v. Cf. Voidness
Void-Light, identity of ’od gsal and stong pa nyid 54, 81, 84, 93
Voidness 23, 32-3, 63-5, 67, 70-1, 75, 80-2, 84, 86, 93, 259 n.2 = sbyed pa = stong pa nyid, q.v. = Emptiness, q.v. Cf. Void

Vows 45-6, 108, 110, 116 Cf. sdam pa.
The three sets of vows are Pratimokṣa, Bodhicitta (byang chub sdom) and Tantric
Vows, Tantric 45, 108, 110 = sgags sdom
Vulture Peak, in India 50

Wang, Chinese title 254
Wên-ch'êng 2, 249 = Srong btsan sgam po, Chinese wife of, q.v.
Western Tibet 20-2, 25, 35, 137, 146, 245, 250-1, 253, 271 n.4 and 10, 272 n.14

ya bsdud kyi sde T the ya bsdud group (of demons) 191
yab T father 63, 79 cf. Father
yab stas T father and son (honorific terms) 44 cf. stas, thags stas
yab stas sgam T ‘father and (two) sons, the three’ i.e. Tsong kha pa, rGyal tshab rje and mkhas grub rje, qq.v. 37
yab yun T ‘father and mother’, male and female deities in union 99, 105
Yam shud dmar T (pr. Yamshumar) n. of deity 166
Yama S n. of god of the dead 268 n.19 = gShin rje, q.v.
yan lag T (i) part, section, as in the seven-part offering ritual (yan lag bstan pa) 149
(yii) accessory, component of ritual 180
yang dag lta T correct view 49
Yang dag rgyal po T (pr. Yangdak Gyelpo) n. of primal Bon deity 214 cf. sNiang ba ’od ldan
yang dpun T monastic official 133
yang rtse name of eighth Bon vehicle (Zhang zhung language) 272 n.15
yang the name of second Bon vehicle (Zhang zhung language) 272 n.15
Yar klungs T (pr. Yarlung) n. of valley in Central Tibet 38, 219, 225-6, 250
Yar mo thang T (pr. Yarmothang) n. of region 273 n.25
yas T n. of ritual 176-7, 205, 273 n.20
Yatung n. of place 256
ye gshen bon T priests of eighth Bon vehicle 229-30, 273 n.20
Ye gshen gugs phud T (pr. Yeshen Tukphu) n. of Bon deity 274 n.27
INDEX

ye nyid stong pa 'T infinite potential
existentiality 219-20 Cf. dbyas, stong pa
Ye rje T (pr. Ye Jc) positive principle in
Bon thought 234-5 Cf. Ye smon rgyal po, Shangs po yab srid
ye shes T (pr. yeshê) transcendent
consciousness, transcendent cognition
53, 56, 58-9, 61, 64-5, 79, 85, 93, 98,
108-9, 219 = S.jêna. Cf. following
entries
ye shes chen po T great transcendent
consciousness 82
Ye shes dkar mo T (pr. Yeshê Welmo) n. of
Bon goddess 242
Ye shes ldan po T (pr. Yeshê Wangpo) =
gSal snang of sBa, q.v.
ye shes kyi me T fire of ye shes, q.v. 152
ye shes lha T gods emanated from ye shes
54, 78-9 = ye shes sems dpa'
ye shes lha bDud 'dul dzang ba drag chen T
(pr. Yeshê Lha Düdül Sangwa
Trakchen) n. of Bon deity 220
Ye shes lha chen T epithet of A ti mu ter
243
ye shes lha mo T goddesses emanated from
ye shes 54
ye shes lung T five forms of transcendent
consciousness 64, 84 =
Enlightenments, Five, q.v.
ye shes lugs T body of transcendent
cognition 59-60, 94, 108 abbreviation
for ye shes pa'i lugs
Ye shes 'od T (pr. Yeshê Ō) n. of king of
Gu ge and West Tibet (C10) 21, 250
ye shes pa'i lugs T body of transcendent
cognition 56 = ye shes lugs, q.v.
ye shes sems dpa'T being emanated from ye
shes 95-6 = jêna-sattva, q.v. = ye shes lha, q.v.
ye shes skor T anticlockwise
circumambulation 243
ye shes skus T body of transcendent
cognition (honorable form) 261 n.6 Cf.
ye shes pa'i lugs, ye shes lugs
Ye smon rgyal po T (pr. Yemôn Gyelpo) n.
of positive deity or principle in Bon
thought 201, 221, 234-5 Cf. Ye rje,
Shangs po yab srid
ye srid T Bon term for being in itself215
'Yellow Sect' 37 = dGe legs pa, q.v.
Yer pa T (pr. Yerpā) n. of hermitage near
Gyantse 156
yi dam, yi dam lha T guardian deity 97-8,
112, 114-15, 157, 169-70, 180, Figure
3 (116) = Deities, Guardian; thugs dam,
q.q.v. Corresponds to S.ṣiṣadeśatā
Yi ge pa T (pr. Yigēpa) the Bon god of
writing 218
Yi king n. of Chinese text on divination
( = I Ching) 202
yid T mind as organ of apperception
55-6, 58, 61 = manas
yid lus T body of mental cognition 56,
59-60, 73, 99, 107, 261 n.6
yid rnam par shes pa T faculty of perception
60
Yig tuhang T Lhasa Government office for
monastic affairs 139
yo T to go astray 191
yod pa T Being 215
Yod ri T (pr. Yōri) Mountain of Being
234-5
yoga S(i) general term for meditation
techniques, especially those involving
control of breathing 25, 35, 43, 75, 80,
85, 98-101, 113, 131, 158, 175 = rnal
'byor
(ii) = yoga-tantra, cf. next entry 72
yoga-(tantra) S (i) third Tantra class of
'new' system 72 = rnal 'byor rgyud, q.v.
(ii) third Tantra class (sixth vehicle)
of rNying ma pa system 76-8
yogin S performer of yoga 53-4, 65, 71, 75,
91, 108 = rnal 'byor pa, q.v.
yon chab T offering-water 169
Young husband, Colonel 255
Yu ma Mi bskyed rdo rje T (pr. Yumo
Michô Dorje) n. of Tibetanlama
(C12-13) 259 n.8 (ch.3)
Yüan Dynasty (Mongol Emperors of
China) 27-8, 40
yul T (i) object 64, 83
(ii) land, country 269 n.12
yul can T subject 64, 83
yul gebi bdag T (pr. yulshiptak) local
deity 191 cf. yul lha, gebi bdag
yul lha T (pr. yûl-lha) local god 149, 269
n.18. One of the 'go ba lha, q.v.
yum T 'mother' (honorable term) 63, 79 cf.
Mother, Matrix, yab yum
Yum brten T (pr. Yumten) n. of claimant
to kingship (C9) 250. Also called Krik
ide
yangs kar T white mustard-seed 197 and
cf. next entry

338
INDEX

yungs kar gyi sgang bu T box with white mustard seed. Figure 18(182), Figure 19(184-5)
zab gsal gnyis med T non-duality of the profound and the luminous 64
zab mo dog snang T ‘profound and clear’, one of the three divisions of the rNying ma pa teachings 259 n.4
zag bka’ T contaminated 59
zag med T free from contamination 59
zag med ye shes T uncontaminated transcendent consciousness 53
Zahor, King of 148
Zangs dkar T (pr. Sangkar) n. of region in Western Tibet 20
zas sna T (offering of) assorted foods 120
zas thab can T burnt foods 173
Zha lu T (pr. Shalu) n. of head monastery of Zha lu pa, q.v. 26, 34-5
Zha lu pa T (pr. Shalu-pa) n. of Tibetan Buddhist school 35, 43 also called Bu legs pa, Bu pa, q.v.
zhal kshal T washing face (of deity) 119
zhal ksil T offering of water to wash face of deity 119
zhal don T scriptural recitation 115, 138
  = zhal ton = kha bton, q.v.
zhal gdams T oral instruction by lama 23 = gdams ngag
zhal ngo T (i) monastic official in charge of discipline 138-9
  (ii) monk who acts as city magistrate of Lhasa during smon lam 153
zhal sred pa’i bon po T class of Bon priests 273 n.20
zhal ton T scriptural recitation 115 =
  zhal don, kha bton, q.v.
zhat zas T food-offering 117, 120, 122
zhang, zhbang bton T ‘mother’s brother-minister’; ministers in royal period belonging to lineages giving wives to kings 3
zhang lha T (pr. shanglha) god of the mother’s brother, i.e. of the mother’s lineage 187, 269 n.18. One of the ‘gya ba’y lha, q.v.
Zhang Rin po che (pr. Shang Rimpochen) n. of dBa’ bgyud pa lama (C12) 251
Zhang zhung T (pr. Zhangshu) ancient name of a region (cf. 214) 193, 214,
  217-20, 237, 240, 242, 249, 271 n.3 and
  n.7, 272 n.14 and 15, 273-4 n.25
Zhang zhung bon ri T epithet of Mount Kailasa, q.v. 219
Zhang zhung srid pa’i rgyal po Khri wer la rje (Shangshung sidpd gceypo Thriwer Larjê) n. of king of Zhang zhung 237
Zhang zhung theg pa T names of nine Bon vehicles (theg po) in Zhang zhung language 272 n.15
zech sdu T evil disposition 205
zhi, zhi ba T (i) magical action of calming offended deities 32, 172, 176, 200, 242
  (ii) state of peaceful detachment attained in meditation (cf. zhi gnas, srid zhi) 48
  (iii) peaceful, serene deity, as opposed to drong or khro bo 120, 266 n.5 cf. zhi khro
Zhi byed (pa) T (pr. Shichêpa) n. of Tibetan Buddhist school 34, 39, 259
  n.4, 260 n.11
zhi gnas T (pr. shinê) meditation to attain peaceful detachment 50, 56, 60
  = Samatha
zhi khro T (pr. Shitro) cycle of peaceful and fear-inspiring deities 196 cf. zhi ba
  (iii), khro bo
zhing chen lphags T human skin 186
zhing khams T pure lands, paradises 60
zhing lha T (pr. shinglha) god of the fields 166, 200, 205
zhogs chos T morning period in chos gsum 268 n.13
zhu bon T class of Bon priests 230
zhu chen T liquid from decomposing corpse 120
zhu chen kyi mar me T lamp with zhin chen 122
zhwa gyu la T type of hat Figure 11c(133)
zhwa khra T type of hat Figure 11c(132-3)
zhwa mo T hat 132
zhwa mo na ring T type of hat 135 = paq zhwa, q.v.
zhwa dmar T ‘red hat’ (i) hat worn by an important Kar ma pa incarnation series known as the Zhwa dmar Kar ma pa 37,
  Figure 7g(124-5)
  (ii) followers of this lama 37, 259
  n.7(ch.3), abbreviation for zhwa dmar pa
Zhwa dmar Kar ma pa, Fifth (dKos mchog yez lag, pr. Shamar Karmapa
Könchhok Yenlak, 1525-83) 252

339
zhwa nag T 'black hat' (i) hat worn by rGyal ba Kar ma pa, q.v. 37, 259 n.7 (ch.3), Figure 7f(124-5) (ii) followers of rGyal ba Kar ma pa 37, 259 n.7(ch.3), abbreviation for Zhwa nag po (iii) hat worn by segags po Figure 9f(128) zla ba T moon Figure 17(180) Zla ba mgon po T (pr. Dawa Gompo) n. of Kashmiri teacher (C12) 259 n.8(ch.3) cf. 262 n.14 = Candranātha zlo T to pray, to murmur 271 n.2 = S jāpa Zorawar Singh 255 zung 'jug T coincidence, convergence (Buddhist technical term) 53, 57-8, 61, 65 cf. also Convergence Zurvanism 214-15
Religions — Tibet
Tibet — Religions